RAM

2016

RAM TRUCK
1500/2500/3500

OWNER'S MANUAL

VEHICLES SOLD IN CANADA

With respect to any Vehicles Sold in Canada, the name FCA US LLC shall be deemed to be deleted and the name FCA Canada Inc. used in substitution therefore.

DRIVING AND ALCOHOL

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents.

Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend, or use public transportation.

WARNING!

Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower, and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this manual that are not on this vehicle.

FCA US LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

Copyright © 2016 FCA US LLC

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE
1	INTRODUCTION	3
2	THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE	9
3	UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE	123
4	UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL	287
5	STARTING AND OPERATING	471
6	WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES	737
7	MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE	801
8	MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES	887
9	IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE	897
10	INDEX	909

INTRODUCTION

CONTENTS

- INTRODUCTION 4
- HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL 4
- WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS 6
- VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS 6
- VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER 6
- VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS 7

INTRODUCTION

Congratulations on selecting your new FCA US LLC vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality - all essentials that are traditional to our vehicles.

This Owner's Manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your vehicle. It is supplemented by Warranty Information, and various customer-oriented documents. Please take the time to read these publications carefully. Following the instructions and recommendations in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

If applicable, refer to the Diesel Supplement for diesel related information.

NOTE: After reviewing the owner information, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient referencing and remain with the vehicle when sold.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine MOPAR® parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the Table of Contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

Since the specification of your vehicle depends on the items of equipment ordered, certain descriptions and illustrations may differ from your vehicle's equipment.

The detailed index at the back of this Owner's Manual contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this Owner's Manual:

WATER IN FUEL
REAR WINDOW WIPER
WINDSHIELD WIPER INTERMITTENT
EXTERIOR BULB FAILURE
HIGH BEAM
TURN SIGNALS
UPPER AIR OUTLET
HEATED SEAT LOW
DOOR LOCK
ADJUSTABLE PEDALS
ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL
ESP BAS
ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM / BRAKE ASSIST SYSTEM
FUEL
REAR WINDOW INTERMITTENT WIPER
WINDSHIELD WASHER
MASTER LIGHTING SWITCH
LOW BEAM
KEY ACTIVATE (POWER OUTLET)
UPPER AND LOWER AIR OUTLET
HEATED SEAT HIGH
WINDOW LIFT
TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR
HILL DESCENT CONTROL
BRAKE
BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE
FUEL FILL SIDE
REAR WINDOW WASHER
WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID LEVEL
DOME LIGHT
FRONT FOG LIGHT
HOOD RELEASE
LOWER AIR OUTLET
RECIRCULATION
CONVERTIBLE 4 WINDOW DOWN
ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL
AWD!
ALL WHEEL DRIVE
ABS
FAILURE OF ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM
ENGINE OIL
REAR WINDOW DEFROST
WINDSHIELD, ELECTRICALLY HEATED
PARK LIGHTS
REAR FOG LAMP
LIFTGATE RELEASE AND LIFTGATE OPEN
DEFROST AND LOWER AIR OUTLET
VENTILATING FAN
WINDOW LOCK
ELECTRONIC THROTTLE CONTROL
4WD!
FOUR WHEEL DRIVE
BRAKE
BRAKE SYSTEM WARNING PARKING BRAKE
BATTERY CHARGING
HEATED MIRROR
WINDSHIELD DEFROST
INSTRUMENT PANEL ILLUMINATION
SEAT BELT
SLIDING DOOR
TRUNK / DECK RELEASE
AIR CONDITIONING
CHILD SEAT TETHER ANCHOR
VOICE RECOGNITION BUTTON
WARNING
TOW/ HAUL
TOW / HAUL
GLOW PLUG
POWER STEERING FLUID
WINDSHIELD WIPER AND WASHER
SIDE AIRBAG
AIRBAG
SLIDING DOOR
EMERGENCY RELEASE HANDLE
LIGHTER
LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHER FOR CHILDREN (LATCH)
UCONNECT™ BUTTON
HAZARD
4 LOW
FOUR WHEEL DRIVE LOW
MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LIGHT
TRANS OIL TEMP
ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE
SRS AIRBAG
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
DOOR AJAR
CONVERTIBLE TOP DOWN
CONVERTIBLE TOP UP
HORN
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL ISO
A/C PUSH
AIR CONDITIONER
OFF
ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL OFF

010533317

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This Owner's Manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures that could result in a collision, bodily injury and/or death. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire Owner's Manual, you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper manufacturers/body builders. Refer to the Warranty Information book, Section 2.1.C. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

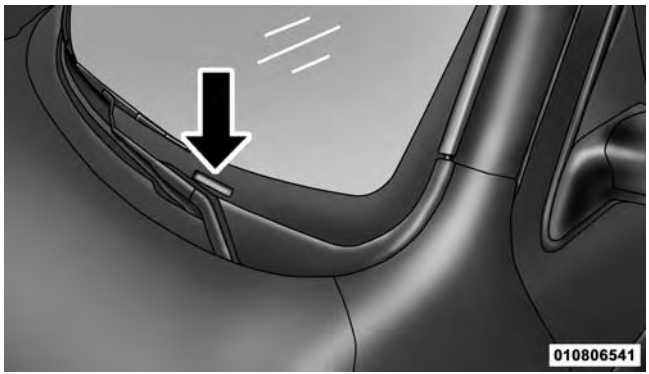
Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builders Guide refer to: www.rambodybuilder.com. This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel, visible through the windshield. This number also appears on the vehicle

frame and underbody as well as the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration and title.



Vehicle Identification Number

NOTE: It is illegal to remove or alter the VIN.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

WARNING!

Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

■ A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS 12
- □ Ignition Node Module (IGNM) 12
- □ Keyless Push Button Ignition — If Equipped . . .13
- □ RKE Key Fobs. 14
- □ Removing RKE Key Fob From Ignition 16
- □ Key-In-Ignition Reminder 18
- □ General Information 19

■ SENTRY KEY 19
- □ Replacement RKE Key Fobs 20
- □ Customer RKE Key Fob Programming 21
- □ General Information 21

■ VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM 22
- □ Rearming Of The System 22
- □ To Arm The System. 22
- □ To Disarm The System. 23
- □ Security System Manual Override. 24

■ ILLUMINATED APPROACH 24

■ REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE) 25
- □ Remote Unlock The Doors 27
- □ To Lock The Doors 28

- □ Sound Horn With Remote Key Lock 28
- □ Using The Panic Alarm 29
- □ RKE Air Suspension (Remote Lowering Of The Vehicle) — If Equipped 29
- □ Programming Additional RKE Key Fobs 30
- □ RKE Key Fob Battery Replacement 31
- □ General Information 34

■ REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED .34

- □ How To Use Remote Start 35
- □ Remote Start Abort Message 36
- □ To Enter Remote Start Mode. 36
- □ To Exit Remote Start Mode Without Driving The Vehicle 37
- □ To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive The Vehicle 37
- □ Remote Start Comfort Systems — If Equipped . .37
- □ General Information 38

■ DOOR LOCKS 38

- □ Manual Door Locks. 38
- □ Power Door Locks — If Equipped 40
- □ Child-Protection Door Lock 42

■ KEYLESS ENTER-N-GO — PASSIVE ENTRY 43

- □ General Information 47

■ WINDOWS 48

- □ Power Windows — If Equipped 48
- □ Wind Buffeting 51

■ OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS 52
- □ Important Safety Precautions 52
- □ Seat Belt Systems 53
- □ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 70
- □ Child Restraints 84
- □ Transporting Pets 116

■ ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS . . .116

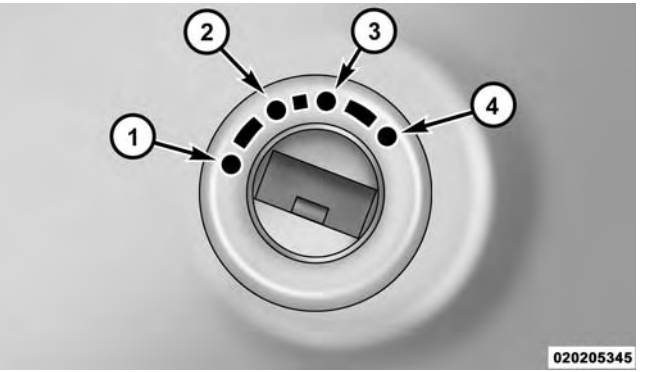
■ SAFETY TIPS 117
- □ Transporting Passengers 117
- □ Exhaust Gas 118
- □ Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle 119
- □ Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle 121

A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

Your vehicle uses either a key start ignition system or keyless ignition system. The key start ignition system consists of a either a bladed key with an immobilizer chip in it, or a Key Fob with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob and an Ignition Node Module (IGNM). The keyless ignition system consists of a RKE Key Fob and a Keyless Push Button Ignition.

Ignition Node Module (IGNM)

The Ignition Node Module (IGNM) operates similar to an ignition switch. It has four operating positions, three with detents and one that is spring-loaded. The detent positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The START position is a spring-loaded momentary contact position. When released from the START position, the switch automatically returns to the ON/RUN position.



Ignition Module

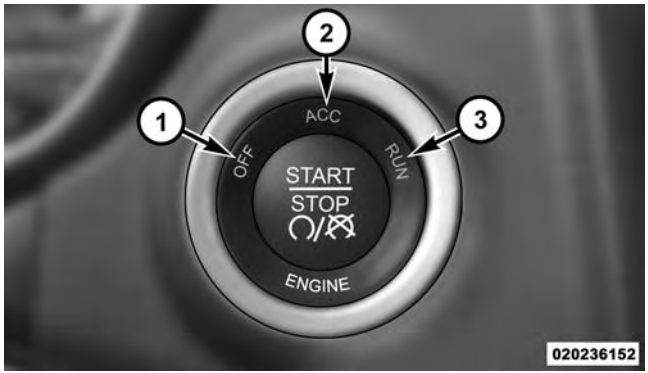
1 — OFF
2 — ACC (ACCESSORY)
3 — ON/RUN
4 — START

Keyless Push Button Ignition — If Equipped

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob is in the passenger compartment.

The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions; three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate.

NOTE: In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the RKE Key Fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the Key Fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button, with your foot applied on the brake pedal, and push to operate the ignition switch.



Keyless Push Button Ignition

1 — OFF
2 — ACC (ACCESSORY)
3 — ON/RUN

RKE Key Fobs

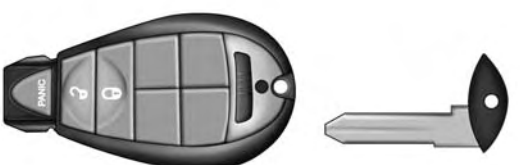
RKE Key Fob — If Equipped

The RKE Key Fob operates the ignition switch. Insert the square end of the RKE Key Fob into the ignition switch located on the instrument panel and rotate to the desired position. It also contains the RKE Key Fob and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the RKE Key Fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the RKE Key Fob go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch at the top of the RKE Key Fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

NOTE: When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Insert the RKE Key Fob into the ignition and place the ignition in the ON/RUN mode to disarm the security system.



Emergency Key Removal

RKE Key Fob — If Equipped

This Keyless Push Button Ignition RKE Key Fob allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the RKE Key Fob is in the passenger compartment. The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions, three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate. It also contains the RKE Key Fob and an emergency key, which stores in the rear of the RKE Key Fob.

The emergency key allows for entry into the vehicle should the battery in the vehicle or the RKE Key Fob go dead. You can keep the emergency key with you when valet parking.

To remove the emergency key, slide the mechanical latch on the backside of the RKE Key Fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.

NOTE: When using the emergency key to gain access to your vehicle, be aware that the security alarm may be triggered. Insert the RKE Key Fob into the ignition and place the ignition in the ON/RUN mode to disarm the security system.

RKE Key Fob Emergency Key

NOTE: You can insert the double-sided emergency key into the door lock cylinder with either side up.

Removing RKE Key Fob From Ignition

Key Fob With Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob (IGNM)

Place the gear selector in PARK (if equipped with an automatic transmission). Turn the RKE Key Fob to the OFF position and then remove the RKE Key Fob.

NOTE:

- The power window switches, radio, power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position. Opening either front door will cancel this feature. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

CAUTION!

- **If your vehicle battery becomes low or dead, your RKE Key Fob will become locked in the ignition.**
- **Do not attempt to remove the RKE Key Fob while in this condition, damage could occur to the RKE Key Fob or ignition module. Only remove the emergency key for locking and unlocking the doors.**
- **Leave the RKE Key Fob in the ignition and either:**
  - **Jump Start the vehicle.**
  - **Charge the battery.**

WARNING!

- **Before exiting a vehicle, always shift the automatic transmission into PARK or the manual transmission into REVERSE, apply the parking brake, turn the vehicle OFF, remove the RKE Key Fob from the ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in "OFF" mode, remove the RKE Key Fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.**
- **Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **Do not leave the RKE Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**
- **Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.**

CAUTION!

An unlocked vehicle is an invitation. Always remove the RKE Key from the ignition and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

Key-In-Ignition Reminder

Opening the driver's door when the Key Fob is in the ignition and the ignition switch position is OFF or ACC, a chime will sound to remind you to remove the Key Fob.

NOTE:

- "Keyed" Ignition systems will chime in OFF or ACC when the driver door is open.
- "Keyless" Ignition systems will chime in ACC or RUN when the driver door is open.
- If equipped with Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID), the EVIC or DID will display "Key In Ignition."

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

SENTRY KEY

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses a RKE Key Fob, an Ignition Node Module, Keyless Push Button Ignition and a RF receiver to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only RKE Key Fobs that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will not allow the engine to crank if an invalid RKE Key Fob is used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two seconds if an invalid RKE Key Fob is used to start the engine.

NOTE: A RKE Key Fob that has not been programmed is also considered an invalid key.

During normal operation, after placing the keyless ignition in the ON/RUN position, the Vehicle Security Light will turn on for three seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid RKE Key Fob to try to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible by an authorized dealer.

CAUTION!

The Sentry Key Immobilizer system is not compatible with some aftermarket remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.

All of the RKE Key Fobs provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

Replacement RKE Key Fobs

NOTE: Only RKE Key Fobs that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a RKE Key Fob is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

CAUTION!

- **Always remove the RKE Key Fobs from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.**
- **For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, always remember to place the ignition in the OFF position.**

NOTE: Duplication of RKE Key Fobs may be performed at an authorized dealer. This procedure consists of programming a blank RKE Key Fob to the vehicle electronics. A blank RKE Key Fob is one that has never been programmed.

When having the Sentry Key Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to an authorized dealer.

Customer RKE Key Fob Programming

Programming RKE Key Fobs may be performed at an authorized dealer.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM

The Vehicle Security Alarm monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the Vehicle Security Alarm is activated, interior switches for door locks are disabled. The system provides both audible and visible signals for the first three minutes the horn will sound and the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals will flash and Vehicle Security Light will flash repeatedly. For an additional 15 minutes only, the headlights will turn on, the park lamps and/or turn signals, and Vehicle Security Light will flash.

Rearming Of The System

The Vehicle Security Alarm will rearm itself after the 15 additional minutes of headlights and Vehicle Security Light flashing, if the system has not been disabled. If the condition which initiated the alarm is still present, the system will ignore that condition and monitor the remaining doors and ignition.

To Arm The System

Follow these steps to arm the Vehicle Security Alarm:

1. Remove the key from the ignition system (refer to ″Starting Procedures″ in ″Starting And Operating″ for further information).
   - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, make sure the vehicle ignition system is ″OFF.″
   - For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, make sure the vehicle ignition system is ″OFF″ and the key is physically removed from the ignition.
2. Perform one of the following methods to lock the vehicle:
   - Push LOCK button on the interior power door lock switch with the driver and/or passenger door open.

- Push the LOCK button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid Key Fob available in the same exterior zone (refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information).
- Push the LOCK button on the RKE Key Fob.

3. If any doors are open, close them.

The Vehicle Security Alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the RKE Key Fob to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the Vehicle Security Light, in the instrument panel cluster, will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the Vehicle Security Light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

To Disarm The System

The Vehicle Security Alarm can be disarmed using any of the following methods:

1. Push the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob.
2. Grasp the Passive Entry Unlock Door Handle with a valid RKE Key Fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passive entry door handle (if equipped, refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information).
3. Cycle the ignition out of the OFF position.
   - For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition, push the Keyless Ignition START STOP button (requires at least one valid RKE Key Fob in the vehicle).
   - For vehicles not equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, insert a valid key into the ignition switch and turn the key to the ON position.

The Vehicle Security Alarm is designed to protect your vehicle. However, you can create conditions where the system will give you a false alarm. If one of the previously described arming sequences has occurred, the Vehicle Security Alarm will arm regardless of whether you are in the vehicle or not. If you remain in the vehicle and open a door, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm.

If the Vehicle Security Alarm is armed and the battery becomes disconnected, the Vehicle Security Alarm will remain armed when the battery is reconnected; the exterior lights will flash, and the horn will sound. If this occurs, disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm.

Security System Manual Override

The Vehicle Security Alarm will not arm if you lock the doors using the manual door lock plunger.

ILLUMINATED APPROACH

The courtesy lights will turn on when you use the RKE Key Fob to unlock the doors or open any door.

This feature also turns on the approach lighting in the outside mirrors (if equipped). Refer to “Mirrors” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

The lights will fade to off after approximately 30 seconds, or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned to ON/RUN from the OFF position.

The front courtesy overhead console and door courtesy lights will not turn off if the dimmer control is in the “Dome ON” position (rotate horizontal thumb wheel on the bottom of the switch to the far right detent position).

The illuminated entry system will not operate if the dimmer control is in the "Dome OFF" position (rotate horizontal thumb wheel on the bottom of the switch to the far left detent position).

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors, they can be turned off by using the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) controls (if NOT equipped with a touchscreen radio) or the Uconnect radio (if equipped with a touchscreen radio). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)," "Driver Information Display (DID)," or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY (RKE)

The RKE system allows you to lock or unlock all doors, tailgate, and the RamBox (if equipped) as well as activate the Panic Alarm from distances up to approximately 66 ft (20 m) using a RKE Key Fob with integrated key. The RKE Key Fob does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system. Push and release the LOCK button on the RKE Key Fob to lock all doors, the tailgate and the RamBox (if equipped). The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

NOTE: Inserting the RKE Key Fob with integrated key into the ignition switch disables the system from responding to any button pushes from that RKE Key Fob. Driving at speeds 5 MPH (8 km/h) and above disables the system from responding to all RKE Key Fob buttons for all RKE Key Fobs.

020207434

RKE Key Fob With Integrated Key

0202005004

Passive Entry RKE Key Fob

Remote Unlock The Doors

Push and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob once to unlock the driver's door. Push the unlock button twice within five seconds to unlock all doors, the tailgate and the RamBox (if equipped). The turn signal lights will flash to acknowledge the unlock signal. The illuminated entry system will also turn on.

NOTE: The EVIC/DID or Uconnect Settings are setup for driver door first, otherwise this will unlock all doors.

Remote Key Unlock, Driver Door/All Doors First

This feature lets you program the system to unlock either the driver's door or all doors on the first push of the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/ Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: Pushing the LOCK button on the RKE Key Fob while you are inside the vehicle will activate the Vehicle Security Alarm System. Opening a door with the Vehicle Security Alarm System activated will cause the alarm to sound. Push the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Vehicle Security Alarm System.

Flash Lamps With Remote Key Lock

This feature will cause the turn signal lights to flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the RKE Key Fob. This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

To Lock The Doors

Push and release the LOCK button on the RKE Key Fob to lock all doors, the tailgate and the RamBox (if equipped). The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.

Sound Horn With Remote Key Lock

This feature will cause the horn to chirp when the doors are locked with the RKE Key Fob. This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: Pushing the LOCK button on the RKE Key Fob while you are in the vehicle will activate the Vehicle Security Alarm System. Opening a door with the Vehicle Security Alarm System activated will cause the alarm to sound. Push the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Vehicle Security Alarm System.

Using The Panic Alarm

To turn the Panic Alarm feature ON or OFF, push and hold the PANIC button on the RKE Key Fob for at least one second and release. When the Panic Alarm is on, the headlights will turn on, the park lights will flash, the horn will pulse on and off, and the turn signal lights will flash.

The Panic Alarm will stay on for three minutes unless you turn it off by either pushing the PANIC button a second time or drive the vehicle at a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h) or greater.

NOTE:

- The interior lights will turn off if you turn the ignition switch to the ACC or ON/RUN position while the Panic Alarm is activated. However, the exterior lights and horn will remain on.
- You may need to be less than 35 ft (11 m) from the vehicle when using the RKE Key Fob to turn off the Panic Alarm due to the radio frequency noises emitted by the system.

RKE Air Suspension (Remote Lowering Of The Vehicle) — If Equipped

For easy entry and loading, your vehicle can be lowered by pushing the RKE Key Fob air suspension lowering button two times. When RKE Key Fob lowering is requested, the vehicle

will send a series of chirps and flashes to alert the customer that the operation has begun and will continue these alerts until it successfully lowers.

The following conditions must be met for the vehicle to lower remotely:

- The vehicle must not already be in Entry/Exit (Park) ride height.
- The vehicle battery must be fully charged.
- All doors must be closed.
- The RKE Key Fob/RKE Key Fob integrated key must be out of the vehicle.

Cancelling Remote Lowering

Vehicle lowering can be cancelled at anytime. When vehicle lowering is cancelled, the vehicle will raise up to the next defined level and lock out the remote lowering feature until the ignition has been cycled ON/OFF.

To cancel vehicle lowering, push the RKE Key Fob air suspension lowering button one time during the lowering process. When vehicle lowering is cancelled, the horn will chirp two times and the turn signal lamps will flash four times. Once raising is completed, the horn will chirp one time.

NOTE: Refer to "Air Suspension System" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

Programming Additional RKE Key Fobs

If you do not have a programmed RKE Key Fob, contact your authorized dealer for details.

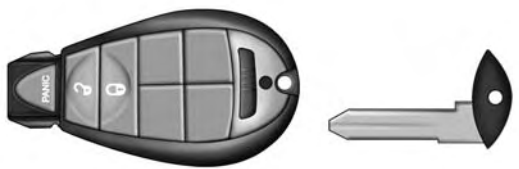
RKE Key Fob Battery Replacement

The recommended replacement battery is one CR2032 battery.

NOTE:

- Perchlorate Material — special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate
- Do not touch the battery terminals that are on the back housing or the printed circuit board.

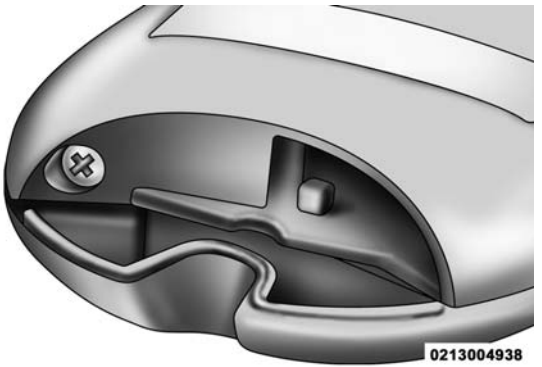
1. Remove the emergency key by sliding the mechanical latch on the back of the RKE Key Fob sideways with your thumb and then pull the key out with your other hand.



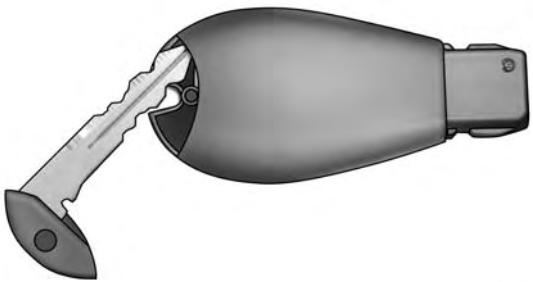
Emergency Key Removal

Emergency Key Removal

2. Separating RKE Key Fob halves requires screw removal – if equipped, and gently prying the two halves of the RKE Key Fob apart. Make sure not to damage the seal during removal.



Remove Screw From RKE Key Fob Case



Separating RKE Key Fob Case

Separating RKE Key Fob Case

3. Remove the battery by turning the back cover over (battery facing downward) and tapping it lightly on a solid surface such as a table or similar, then replace the battery. When replacing the battery, match the + sign on the battery to the + sign on the inside of the battery clip, located on the back cover. Avoid touching the

new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.

4. To assemble the RKE Key Fob case, snap the two halves together, reposition and secure the screw as shown in step #2 for removal.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

This system uses the RKE Key Fob to start the engine conveniently from outside the vehicle while still maintaining security. The system has a range of approximately 300 ft (91 m).

NOTE:

- The vehicle must be equipped with an automatic transmission to be equipped with Remote Start.
- Obstructions between the vehicle and the RKE Key Fob may reduce this range.

How To Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:

- Gear selector in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed
- HAZARD switch off
- BRAKE switch inactive (brake pedal not pushed)
- Ignition key removed from ignition switch
- Battery at an acceptable charge level
- RKE PANIC button not pushed
- Fuel meets minimum requirement
- System not disabled from previous remote start event
- Vehicle security alarm not active

WARNING!

- **Do not start or run an engine in a closed garage or confined area. Exhaust gas contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause serious injury or death when inhaled.**
- **Keep RKE Key Fobs away from children. Operation of the Remote Start System, windows, door locks or other controls could cause serious injury or death.**

Remote Start Abort Message

The following messages will display in the EVIC/DID if the vehicle fails to remote start or exits remote start prematurely:

- Remote Start Cancelled — Door Open
- Remote Start Cancelled — Hood Open
- Remote Start Cancelled — Fuel Low
- Remote Start Cancelled — System Fault
- Remote Start Disabled — Start Vehicle to Reset

The EVIC/DID message stays active until the ignition is turned to the ON/RUN position.

To Enter Remote Start Mode

Push and release the REMOTE START button on the RKE Key Fob twice within five seconds. The parking lights will flash, vehicle doors will lock, and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Once the vehicle has started, the engine will run for 15 minutes.

NOTE:

- If your power door locks were unlocked, Remote Start will automatically lock the doors.
- If an engine fault is present or fuel level is low, the vehicle will start and then shut down in 10 seconds.
- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the RKE Key Fob. However, the

ignition must be placed in the ON/RUN position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

To Exit Remote Start Mode Without Driving The Vehicle

Push and release the REMOTE START button one time or allow the engine to run for the entire 15-minute cycle.

NOTE: To avoid unintentional shut downs, the system will disable the one time push of the REMOTE START button for two seconds after receiving a valid Remote Start request.

To Exit Remote Start Mode And Drive The Vehicle

Before the end of the 15-minute cycle, push and release the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob to unlock the doors and disarm the Vehicle Security Alarm System (if equipped). Then, prior to the end of the 15-minute cycle, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

Remote Start Comfort Systems — If Equipped

When Remote Start is activated, the heated steering wheel and driver heated seat features will automatically turn on in cold weather. In warm weather, the driver vented seat feature will automatically turn on when the remote start is activated. These features will stay on through the duration of Remote Start or until the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN position.

The Remote Start Comfort System can be activated and deactivated through the Uconnect System. Refer to "Customer Programmable Features" in "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information on Remote Start Comfort System operation.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

DOOR LOCKS

Manual Door Locks

Front and rear doors may be locked by moving the lock knob down or unlocked by moving the lock knob up.

Door Lock Knob

Front doors may be opened with the inside door handle without lifting the lock knob.

Doors locked before closing will remain locked when closed.

The emergency key will unlock the driver door lock on your vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.**
- **For personal security and safety in the event of an collision, lock the vehicle doors as you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Before exiting a vehicle, always shift the automatic transmission into PARK or the manual transmission into REVERSE, apply the parking brake, turn the vehicle OFF, remove the RKE Key Fob from the ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in "OFF" mode, remove the RKE Key Fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.**
- **Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.**

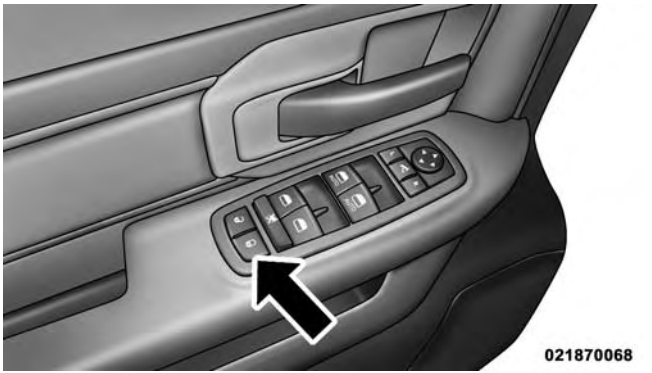
(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Do not leave the RKE Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

Power Door Locks — If Equipped

A power door LOCK switches are on each front door trim panel. Use this switch to lock or unlock the doors.



Power Door Lock Switch Location

If you push the power door LOCK switch while the RKE Key Fob is in the ignition, and any front door is open, the power locks will not operate. This prevents you from accidentally locking your RKE Key Fob in the vehicle. Removing the RKE Key Fob or closing the door will allow the locks to operate. A chime will

sound if the RKE Key Fob is in the ignition switch and a door is open, as a reminder to remove the RKE Key Fob.

Automatic Door Locks — If Equipped

The auto door lock feature default condition is enabled. When enabled, the door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). The auto door lock feature can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer. The auto door lock feature is enabled/disabled in the Uconnect Settings.

Automatic Doors Unlock — If Equipped

This feature unlocks all of the doors of the vehicle when either front door is opened. This will occur only after the vehicle has been shifted into the PARK position after the vehicle has been driven (shifted out of PARK and all doors closed).

Automatic Doors Unlock Programming — If Equipped

The Automatic Doors Unlock feature can be enabled or disabled as follows:

- For vehicles not equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- For vehicles equipped with a touchscreen radio, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: Use the Auto Unlock Doors feature in accordance with local laws.

Child-Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors (if equipped) of your vehicle have the Child-Protection Door Lock system.

Child-Protection Door Lock Location

To use the system, open each rear door, use a flat blade screwdriver (or emergency key) and rotate the dial to engage and disengage the Child-Protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.

Child Lock Control

WARNING!

Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the Child-Protection locks are engaged.

NOTE:

- After setting the Child-Protection Door Lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.
- For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the UNLOCK position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

KEYLESS ENTER-N-GO — PASSIVE ENTRY

The Passive Entry system is an enhancement to the vehicle's Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system and a feature of Keyless Enter-N-Go. Refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go" in "Starting And Operating" for further information. This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) without having to push the RKE Key Fob lock or unlock buttons.

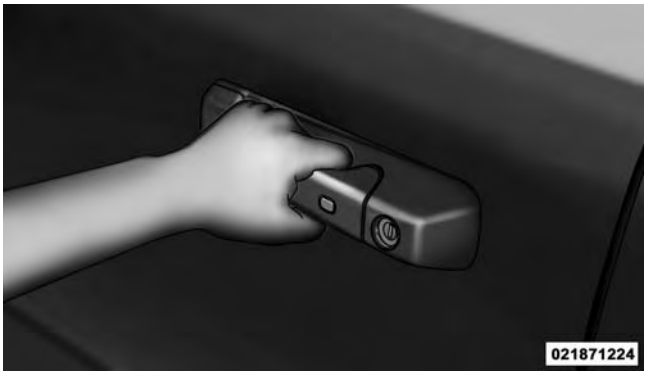
NOTE:

- Passive Entry may be programmed ON/OFF. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If wearing gloves on your hands, or if it has been raining on the Passive Entry door handle, the unlock sensitivity can be affected, resulting in a slower response time.

- If the vehicle is unlocked by Passive Entry and no door is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle will re-lock and if equipped will arm the security alarm.
- The vehicles security alarm can be armed/disarmed by pushing the passive entry key fob lock/unlock buttons (if equipped).

To Unlock From The Driver's Side:

With a valid Passive Entry RKE Key Fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver door handle, grab the front driver door handle to unlock the driver's door automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.



Grab The Door Handle To Unlock

NOTE: If "Unlock All Doors 1st Press" is programmed, all doors will unlock when you grab hold of the front driver's door handle. To select between "Unlock Driver Door 1st Press" and "Unlock All Doors 1st Press," refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

To Unlock From The Passenger Side:

With a valid Passive Entry RKE Key Fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passenger door handle, grab the front passenger door handle to unlock all doors automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.

NOTE: All doors will unlock when the front passenger door handle is grabbed regardless of the driver's door unlock preference setting ("Unlock Driver Door 1st Press" or "Unlock All Doors 1st Press").

Preventing Inadvertent Locking Of Passive Entry RKE Key Fob In Vehicle:

To minimize the possibility of unintentionally locking a Passive Entry RKE Key Fob inside your vehicle, the Passive Entry system is equipped with an automatic door unlock feature which will function if the ignition switch is in the OFF position.

If one of the vehicle doors is open and the door panel switch is used to lock the vehicle, once all open doors have been closed the vehicle checks the inside and outside of the vehicle for any valid Passive Entry RKE Key Fobs. If one of the vehicle's Passive Entry RKE Key Fobs is detected inside the vehicle, and no other valid Passive Entry RKE Key Fobs are detected outside the vehicle, the Passive Entry System automatically unlocks all vehicle doors and chirps the horn three times (on the third attempt ALL doors will lock and the Passive Entry RKE Key Fob can be locked in the vehicle).

To Lock The Vehicle's Doors:

With one of the vehicle's Passive Entry RKE Key Fobs within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver or passenger front door handles, push the door handle LOCK button to lock all doors.

Push The Door Handle Button To Lock

Do NOT grab the door handle when pushing the door handle lock button. This could unlock the door(s).

Do NOT Grab The Door Handle When Locking

NOTE:

- After pushing the door handle LOCK button, you must wait two seconds before you can lock or unlock the doors, using either Passive Entry door handle. This is done to allow you to check if the vehicle is locked by pulling the door handle, without the vehicle reacting and unlocking.
- The Passive Entry system will not operate if the RKE Key Fob battery is dead.

The vehicle doors can also be locked by using the RKE Key Fob lock button or the lock button located on the vehicle's interior door panel.

General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

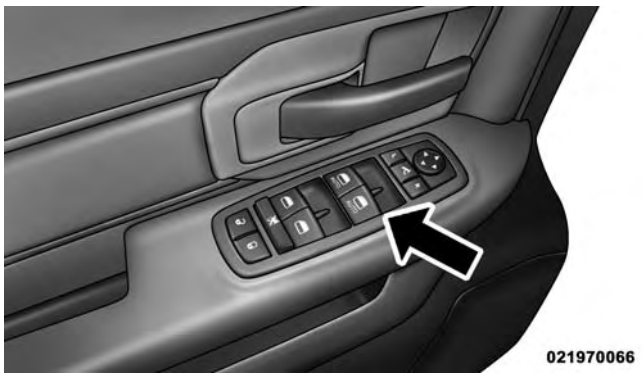
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

WINDOWS

Power Windows — If Equipped



Power Window Switches

The power window controls located on the driver's door trim panel have UP-DOWN switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the front passenger door for passenger window control and on the rear doors of the Quad Cab and Crew Cab models. The windows will operate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC position, and for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or until a front door is opened.

NOTE: The Key Off Power Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF. This feature is cancelled when either front door is opened.

WARNING!

Never leave children unattended in a vehicle. Do not leave the RKE Key Fob in or near the vehicle or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the windows while operating the power window switches. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.

Auto-Down

Both the driver and front passenger window switch have an Auto-Down feature. Push the window AUTO switch past the first detent, release, and the window will go down automatically. To cancel the Auto-Down movement, operate the AUTO switch in either the up or down direction and release the switch.

To stop the window from going all the way down during the Auto-Down operation, pull up on the switch AUTO briefly.

To open the window part way, push to the AUTO switch to the first detent and release it when you want the window to stop.

Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection (4-Door Models Driver And Front Passenger Door Only) — If Equipped

Pull the window AUTO switch fully upward to the second detent, release, and the window will go up automatically.

To stop the window from going all the way up during the Auto Up operation, push down on the AUTO switch briefly.

To close the window part way, lift the window AUTO switch to the first detent and release when you want the window to stop.

NOTE: If the window runs into any obstacle during the auto-closure, it will reverse direction and then go back down. Remove the obstacle and use the window AUTO switch again to close the window. Any impact due to rough road conditions may trigger the auto reverse function unexpectedly during auto closure. If this happens, pull the AUTO switch lightly to the first detent and hold to close the window manually.

WARNING!

There is no anti-pinch protection when the window is almost closed. Be sure to clear all objects from the window before closing.

Reset Auto-Up

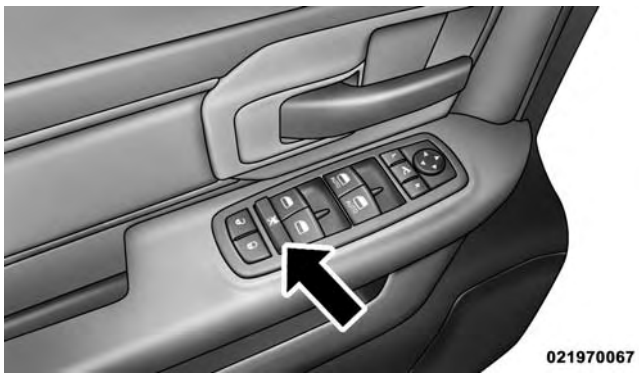
Should the Auto Up feature stop working, the window may need to be reset. To reset Auto Up:

1. Make sure the door is fully closed.
2. Pull the window AUTO switch up to close the window completely and continue to hold the switch up for an additional two seconds after the window is closed.
3. Push the window AUTO switch down firmly to the second detent to open the window completely and continue to hold the switch down for an additional two seconds after the window is fully open.

Window LOCKOUT Switch (4–Door Models Only)

The window LOCKOUT switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the rear passenger doors. To disable the window controls on the rear passenger doors, push the window LOCK

button into the latched or down position. To enable the window controls, push the window LOCK button again and return the switch to the released or up position.



Window Lockout Switch

Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down, or the sunroof (if equipped) in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, then open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting. If the buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening to minimize the buffeting.

OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

- Seat Belt Systems
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags
- Child Restraints

Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.
2. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint. (Refer to "Child Restraints")
3. Children that are not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (Refer to ″Child Restraints″ in this section of "Occupant Restraints") should be secured in a vehicle with a rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in a vehicle with a rear seat.
4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.
7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the Advanced Front Air Bags room to inflate.
8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between occupants and the door and occupants could be injured.
9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, contact the Customer Center. Phone numbers are provided under "If You Need Assistance."

WARNING!

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

Seat Belt Systems

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of

ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

Driver And Passenger BeltAlert — If Equipped

BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The Belt Alert feature is active whenever the ignition is placed in the START or ON/RUN position.

Initial Indication

If the driver is unbuckled when the ignition is first placed in the START or ON/RUN position, an intermittent chime will signal for a few seconds. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled when the ignition is first placed in the START or ON/RUN position the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled. The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when an outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

BeltAlert Warning Sequence

The BeltAlert warning sequence is activated when the vehicle is moving above a specified vehicle speed range and the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbuckled (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert). The BeltAlert warning sequence starts by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the BeltAlert warning sequence has completed, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the seat belts are buckled. The BeltAlert warning sequence may repeat based on vehicle speed until the driver and occupied outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all occupants to buckle their seat belts.

Change Of Status

If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) unbuckles their seat belt while the vehicle is traveling, the BeltAlert warning sequence will begin until the seat belts are buckled again.

The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied. BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or other items are placed on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by your authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.

NOTE: If BeltAlert has been deactivated and the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until the driver and outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled.

Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Quad Cab, Mega Cab and Crew Cab front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.**
- **In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.**
- **It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**
- **Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.**
- **Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.**
- **A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take it to your authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.**
- **A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.**
- **A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.**
- **A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not**

(Continued)

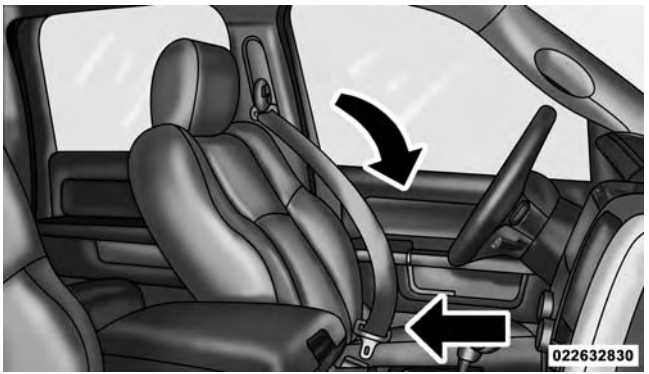
WARNING! ***(Continued)***

wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.

- **A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.**

Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.



Pulling Out The Latch Plate

3. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”

Inserting Latch Plate Into Buckle

4. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.

Positioning The Lap Belt

5. Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
6. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its

stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

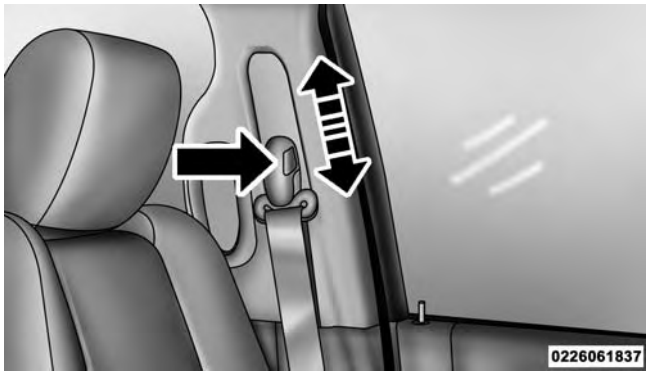
Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure

Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

1. Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.
2. At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.
3. Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.
4. Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.

Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the driver and front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



Adjustable Anchorage

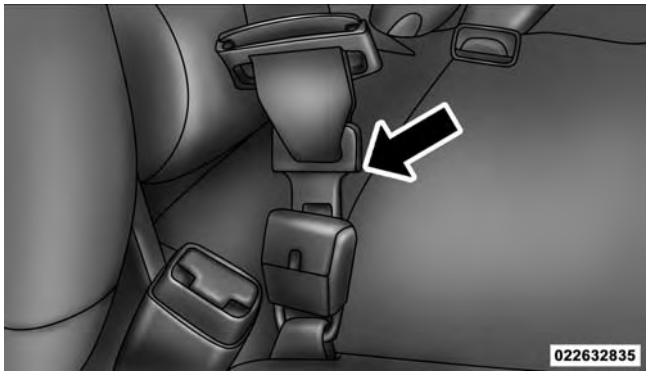
As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

NOTE: The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.

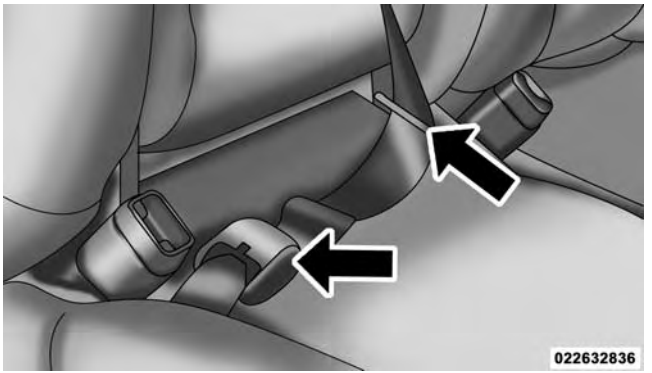
First Row Center Seat Belt Operating Instructions (Regular Cab Only)

The first row center seat belt (Regular Cab only) features a seat belt with a mini-latch plate and buckle, which allows the seat belt to detach from the lower anchor when the seat is folded. The latch plate and regular latch plate can then be stored out of the way in the seat for added convenience to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats when the seat is not occupied.

1. Remove the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate from its stowed position on the seat.



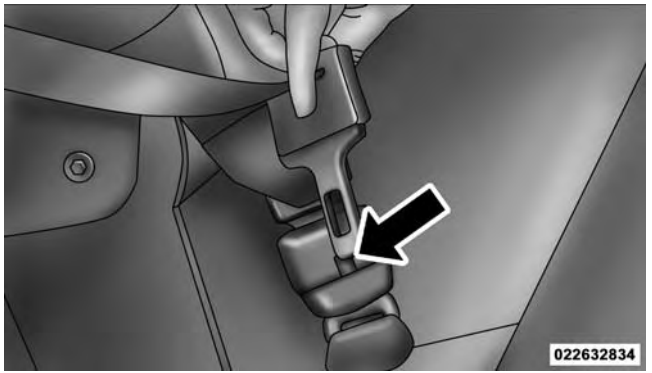
Inserting Latch Plate



In Use Position

2. Grasp the mini-latch plate and pull the seat belt over the seat.
3. Route the shoulder belt to the inside of the right head restraint.

4. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the mini-latch plate into the mini-buckle until you hear a "click."
5. Sit back in seat. Slide the regular latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.
6. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
7. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.
8. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the seat belt.
9. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle.
10. To disengage the mini-latch plate from the mini-buckle for storage, insert the regular latch plate into the center red slot on the mini-buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully. Insert the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate into its stowed position.



Detaching Buckle With Seat Belt Tongue

WARNING!

- **If the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

- **When reattaching the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle.**

First Row Center Lap Belt Operating Instructions (If Equipped)

The center seating position for the Quad Cab, Mega Cab and Crew Cab front seat has a lap belt only. To buckle the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull.

To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and upright in the seat, then adjust the seat belt as tightly as is comfortable.

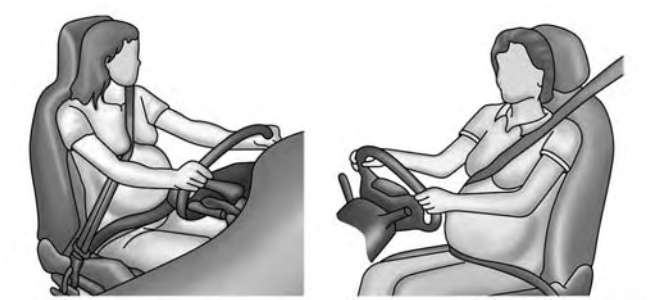
Seat Belt Extender

If a seat belt is not long enough to fit properly, even when the webbing is fully extended and the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, your authorized dealer can provide you with a Seat Belt Extender. The Seat Belt Extender should be used only if the existing seat belt is not long enough. When the Seat Belt Extender is not required for a different occupant, it must be removed.

WARNING!

- **ONLY use a Seat Belt Extender if it is physically required in order to properly fit the original seat belt system. DO NOT USE the Seat Belt Extender if, when worn, the distance between the front edge of the Seat Belt Extender buckle and the center of the occupant's body is LESS than 6 inches.**
- **Using a Seat Belt Extender when not needed can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. Only use the Seat Belt Extender when the lap belt is not long enough and only use in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the Seat Belt Extender when not needed.**

Seat Belts And Pregnant Women



Pregnant Women And Seat Belts

Seat belts must be worn by all occupants including pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for the mother and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Position the lap belt snug and low below the abdomen and across the strong bones of the hips. Place the shoulder belt across the chest and away from the neck. Never place the shoulder belt behind the back or under the arm.

Seat Belt Pretensioner

The front seat belt system is equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

NOTE: These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

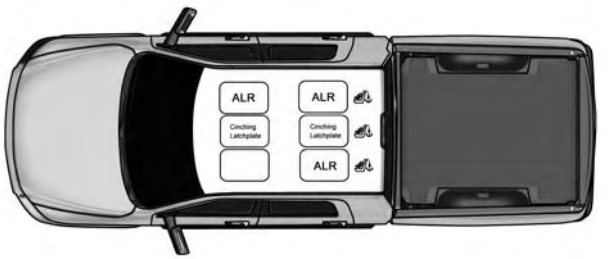
Energy Management Feature — If Equipped

This vehicle has a seat belt system with an Energy Management feature in the front seating positions that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. This seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) — If Equipped

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions may be equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to "Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt" under the "Child Restraints" section of this manual. The table below defines the type of feature for each seating position.

Regular Cab



Quad Cab/Mega Cab/Crew Cab

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in a vehicle with a rear seat.

WARNING!

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

WARNING!

- **The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.**
- **Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.**
- **Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is only used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.**

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)

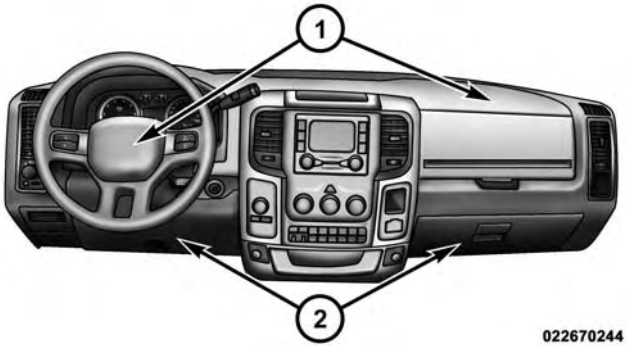
Air Bag System Components

Your vehicle may be equipped with the following air bag system components:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Advanced Front Air Bags
- Supplemental Side Air Bags
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch

Advanced Front Air Bags

This vehicle has Advanced Front Air Bags for both the driver and front passenger as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's Advanced Front Air Bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger's Advanced Front Air Bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" are embossed on the air bag covers.



Advanced Front Air Bag And Knee Bolster Locations

1 — Driver And Passenger Advanced Front Air Bags
2 — Driver/Passenger Knee Impact Bolsters

WARNING!

- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during Advanced Front Air Bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

Advanced Front Air Bag Features

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low energy output is used in less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.

WARNING!

- **No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.**
- **Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.**
- **Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

some collisions, air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.

Advanced Front Air Bag Operation

Advanced Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Advanced Front Air Bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or rollover collisions. The Advanced Front Air Bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, Advanced Front Air Bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.

When the ORC detects a collision requiring the Advanced Front Air Bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the Advanced Front Air Bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The Advanced Front Air Bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.

Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and position the front occupants for improved interaction with the Advanced Front Air Bags.

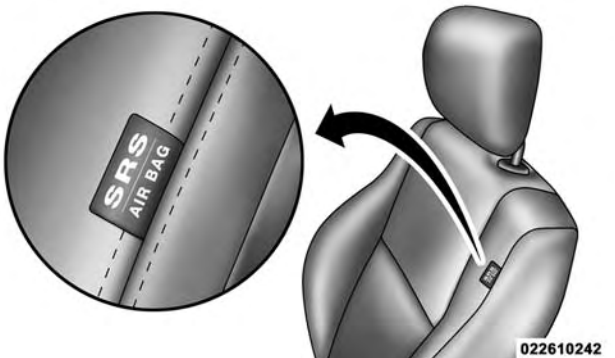
WARNING!

- **Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way**
- **Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.**

Supplemental Side Air Bags

Your vehicle is equipped with two types of side air bags:

1. **Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs): Located in the outboard side of the front seats. The SABs are marked with a "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG" label sewn into the outboard side of the seats.**



Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bag Label

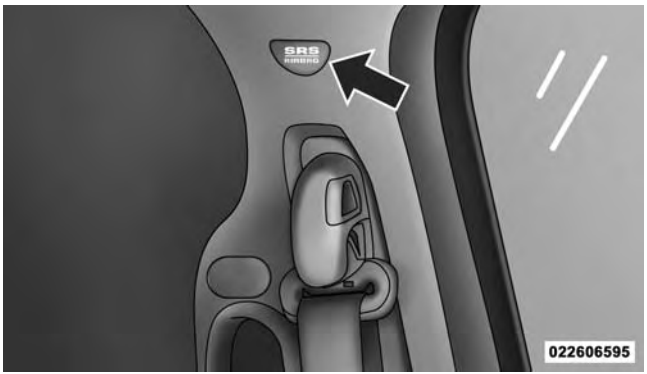
The SABs may help to reduce the risk of occupant injury during certain side impacts and/or vehicle rollover events, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

When the SAB deploys, it opens the seam on the outboard side of the seatback's trim cover. The inflating SAB deploys through the seat seam into the space between the occupant and the door. The SAB moves at a very high speed and with such a high force that it could injure occupants if they are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SAB inflates. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

WARNING!

Do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the Side Air Bags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.

2. **Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs): Located above the side windows. The trim covering the SABICs is labeled "SRS AIRBAG" or "AIRBAG."**



Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtain (SABIC) Label Location

SABICs may help reduce the risk of head or other injuries to front and rear seat outboard occupants in certain side impacts and/or vehicle rollover events, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

The SABICs deploy downward, covering the side windows. An inflating SABIC pushes the outside edge of the trim out of the way and covers the window. The SABICs inflate with enough force to injure occupants if they are not belted and seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SABICs inflate. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain rollover or side impact events.

WARNING!

- **Your vehicle is equipped with left and right Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs). Do not stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the deployment of the SABICs. The trim covering above the side windows where the SABIC and its deployment path are located should remain free from any obstructions.**
- **Your vehicle is equipped with SABICs. In order for the SABICs to work as intended, do not install any accessory items in your vehicle which could alter the roof. Do not add an aftermarket sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.**

The SABICs and SABs ("Side Air Bags") are designed to activate in certain side impacts and certain rollover events. The Occupant Restraint Controller ("ORC") determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular side impact or rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

Side Air Bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint system. Side Air Bags deploy in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. Occupants, including children, who are up against or very close to Side Air Bags can be seriously injured or killed. Occupants, including children, should never lean on or sleep against the door, side windows, or area where the Side Air Bags inflate, even if they are in an infant or child restraint.

Seat belts (and child restraints where appropriate) are necessary for your protection in all collisions. They also help keep you in position, away from inflating Side Air Bags. To get the best protection from the Side Air Bags, occupants must wear their seat belts properly and sit upright with their backs against the seats. Children must be properly restrained in a child restraint or booster seat that is appropriate for the size of the child.

WARNING!

- **Side Air Bags need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.**
- **Being too close to the Side Air Bags during deployment could cause you to be severely injured or killed.**
- **Relying on the Side Air Bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The Side Air Bags work with your seat belt to restrain you**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

properly. In some collisions, Side Air Bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have Side Air Bags.

NOTE: Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

Side Impacts

In side impacts, the side impact sensors aid the ORC in determining the appropriate response to impact events. The system is calibrated to deploy the Side Air Bags on the impact side of the vehicle during impacts that require Side Air Bag occupant protection. In side impacts, the Side Air Bags deploy independently; a left side impact deploys the left Side Air Bags only and a right side impact deploys the right Side Air Bags only.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all side collisions, including some collisions at certain angles, or some side collisions that do not impact the area of the passenger compartment. The Side Air Bags may deploy during angled or offset frontal collisions where the Advanced Front Air Bags deploy.

Rollover Events

Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain rollover events. The ORC determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all rollover events. The rollover sensing-system determines if a rollover event may be in progress and whether deployment is appropriate. A slower-developing event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners on both sides of the vehicle. A

faster-developing event may deploy the seat belt pretensioners as well as the Side Air Bags on both sides of the vehicle. The rollover sensing-system may also deploy the seat belt pretensioners, with or without the Side Air Bags, on both sides of the vehicle if the vehicle experiences a near rollover event.

If A Deployment Occurs

The Advanced Front Air Bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

NOTE: Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.
- As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.

WARNING!

Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.

NOTE:

- Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.
- After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

Enhanced Accident Response System

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine.
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power or until the hazard light button is pressed. The hazard lights can be deactivated by pressing the hazard light button.
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power.
- Unlock the power door locks.

Enhanced Accident Response System Reset Procedure

In order to reset the Enhanced Accident Response System functions after an event, the ignition must be changed from the START or ON/RUN position to the OFF position. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine.

Air Bag Warning Light

The air bags must be ready to inflate for your protection in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with air bag system electrical components.

The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition is placed in the START or ON/RUN position. If the ignition is in the OFF position or in the ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bags even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.

The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The

diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

- The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN position.
- The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.
- The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

NOTE: If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

WARNING!

Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first turned on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

Maintaining Your Air Bag System

WARNING!

- **Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.

- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.**
- **Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to your**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Child Restraints

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children.

Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

WARNING!

In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

NOTE:

- For additional information, refer to www.seatcheck.org or call 1-866-732-8243.
- Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information: www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safedrivers-childsafety-index-53.htm

Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles

	Child Size, Height, Weight Or Age	Recommended Type Of Child Restraint
Infants and Toddlers	Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint	Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Small Children	Children who are at least two years old or who have out-grown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint	Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in the rear seat of the vehicle
Larger Children	Children who have out-grown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt	Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle
Children Too Large for Child Restraints	Children 12 years old or younger, who have out-grown the height or weight limit of their booster seat	Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in the rear seat of the vehicle

Infants And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old. Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.

WARNING!

- **Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.**
- **Only use a rear-facing child restraint in a vehicle with a rear seat.**

WARNING!

Do not install a rear-facing car seat using a rear support leg in this vehicle. The floor of this vehicle is not designed to manage the crash forces of this type of car seat. In a crash, the support leg may not function as it was designed by the car seat manufacturer, and your child may be more severely injured as a result.

Older Children And Child Restraints

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing convertible child seat. Children should remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.

WARNING!

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the child restraint.**
- **When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.

Children Too Large For Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while they are still sitting all the way back?

3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between their neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not their stomach?
5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was "no," then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position. If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

WARNING!

Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.

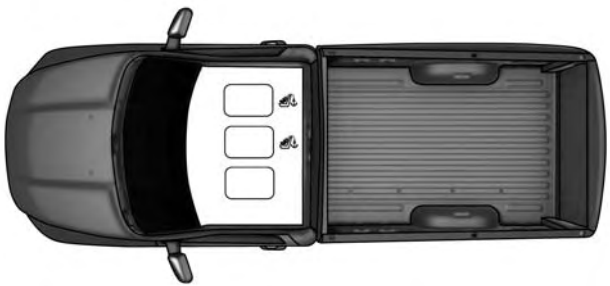
Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use any attachment method shown with an "X" Below			
		LATCH – Lower Anchors Only	Seat Belt Only	LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor	Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)	X	X		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)		X		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)			X	X
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)				X

Lower Anchors And Tethers For CHildren (LATCH) Restraint System

Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats. There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

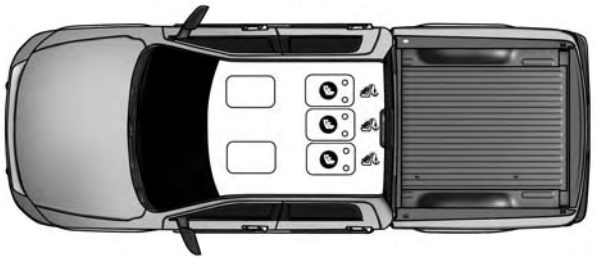
LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



0226003585

Regular Cab

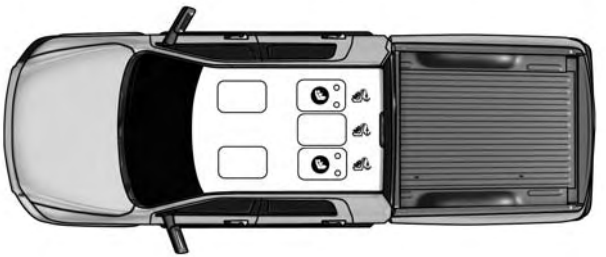
- Lower Anchorage Symbol – 2 anchorages per seating position
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0226003588

Mega Cab/Crew Cab Split Bench

- Lower Anchorage Symbol - 2 anchorages per seating position
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0226003587

Quad Cab/Crew Cab Full Bench

- Lower Anchorage Symbol 2 anchorages per seating position
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH		
What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint?	65 lbs (29.5 kg)	Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg).
Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint?	No	Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint.
Can a child seat be installed in the center position using the inner LATCH lower anchorages?	No	Full bench rear seat only: Use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.

Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH		
Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower LATCH anchorage?	No	Never “share” a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints. If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner’s manual for more information.
Can the head restraints be removed?	No	

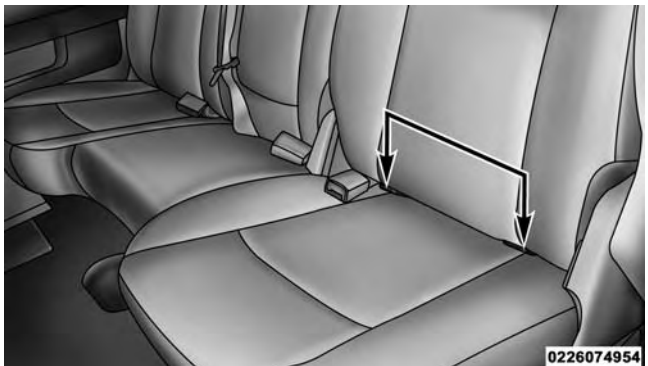
NOTE: If the folding, non-adjustable head restraint interferes with the installation of the child restraint, the head restraint may be folded and the child seat installed in front of it.

WARNING!

Always make sure the head restraint is in its upright position when the seat is to be used by an occupant who is not in a child restraint. Sitting in a seat with the head restraint in its lowered position could result in serious injury or death in a collision.

Locating LATCH Anchorages

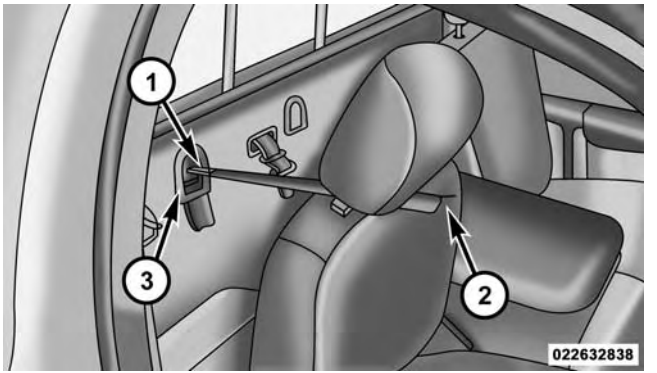
The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. They are just visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the gap between the seatback and seat cushion.



Quad Cab/Mega Cab/Crew Cab Rear Outboard Seats Driver Side

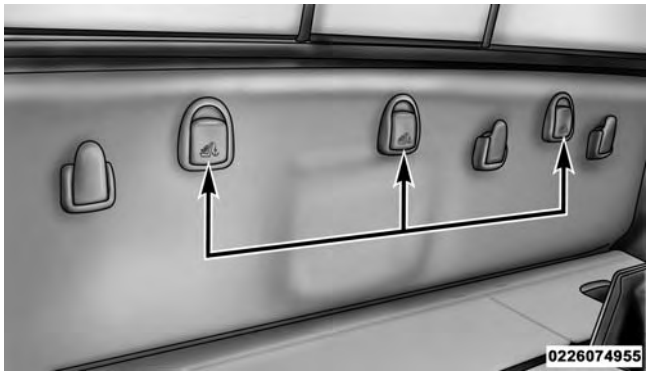
Locating Tether Anchorages

Regular Cab models have tether strap anchorages behind the front center and right seats. Quad Cab, Mega Cab and Crew Cab models have tether strap anchorages located behind each of the rear seats.



Regular Cab Tether Anchorages

1 — Tether Strap Hook
2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
3 — Tether Anchor



Mega Cab Tether Anchorages (Behind Covers)

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook or connector to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage. Forward-facing child restraints and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

Center Seat LATCH — Regular Cab/Quad Cab/Crew Cab Full Bench

WARNING!

- **Do not install a child restraint in the center position using the LATCH system. This position is not approved for installing child seats using the LATCH attachments. You must use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.**
- **Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to ″Installing Child Restraints Using the LATCH Lower Anchorages″ in the section ″Installing Child Restraints″ for typical installation instructions.**

Center Seat LATCH — Mega Cab/Crew Cab Split Bench

If a child restraint installed in the center position blocks the seat belt webbing or buckle for the outboard position, do not use that outboard position. If a child seat in the center position blocks the outboard LATCH anchors or seat belt, do not install a child seat in that outboard position.

WARNING!

Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to "Installing Child Restraints Using the LATCH Lower Anchorages" in the section "Installing Child Restraints" for typical installation instructions.

Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.

To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt" to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.
2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved

forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.
4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage" for directions to attach a tether anchor.
5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

How To Stow An Unused ALR Seat Belt:

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child restraint and out of the child's reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock

the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.

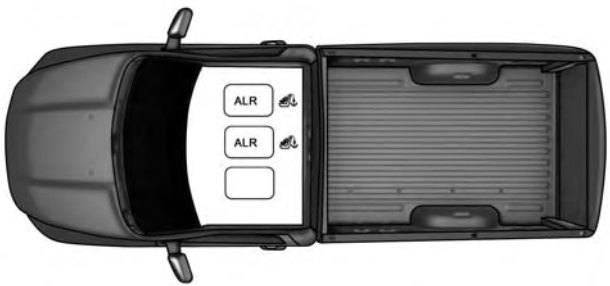
WARNING!

- **Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with either a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate or both. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be "switched" into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the "Automatic Locking Mode" description under "Occupant Restraints" for additional information on ALR. The cinching latch plate is designed to hold the lap portion of the seat belt tight when webbing is pulled tight and straight through a child restraint's belt path.

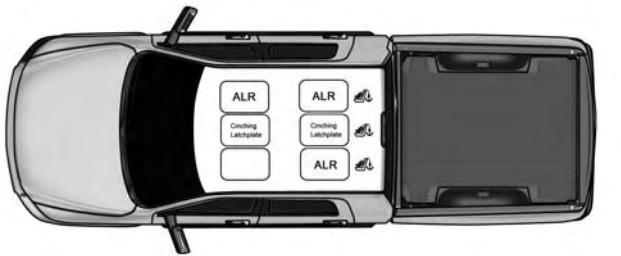
Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



0226059225

Regular Cab

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor
- Cinch = Cinching Latch Plate
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



0226061828

Quad Cab/Mega Cab/Crew Cab

- ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor
- Cinch = Cinching Latch Plate
- Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems

Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts		
What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint?	Weight limit of the Child Restraint	Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.
Can the head restraints be removed?	No	Head restraints may not be removed.
Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?	Yes	In positions with cinching latch plates (CINCH), the buckle stalk may be twisted up to 3 full turns. Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor.

Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR)

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.
5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.
6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.
7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether

strap. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage" for directions to attach a tether anchor.

9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

Installing A Child Restraint With A Cinching Latch Plate (CINCH) — If Equipped:

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
2. Next, pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
4. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
5. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether

strap. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage" for directions to attach a tether anchor.

6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

If the buckle or the cinching latch plate is too close to the belt path opening of the child restraint, you may have trouble tightening the seat belt. If this happens, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt up to three full turns to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out, away from the child restraint. Repeat steps 4 to 6, above, to complete the installation of the child restraint.

If the belt still cannot be tightened after you shorten the buckle, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around one half turn, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still cannot make the child restraint installation tight, try a different seating position.

Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage

WARNING!

Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section "Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren

(Continued)

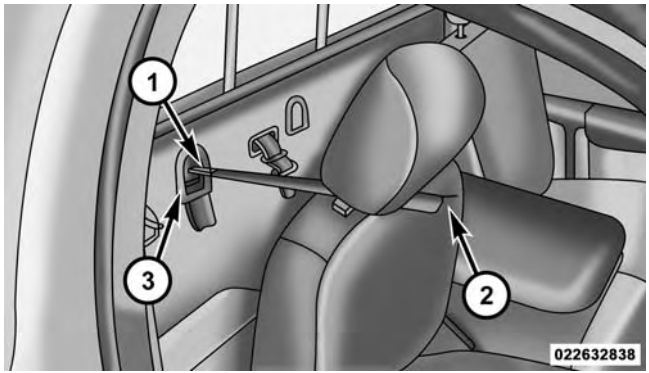
WARNING! ***(Continued)***

(LATCH) Restraint System" for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.

Regular and Mega Cab Trucks:

In the regular cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind the center and right passenger seats. In the mega cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind each rear seating position. There is a plastic cover over each anchorage. To attach the tether strap of the child restraint:

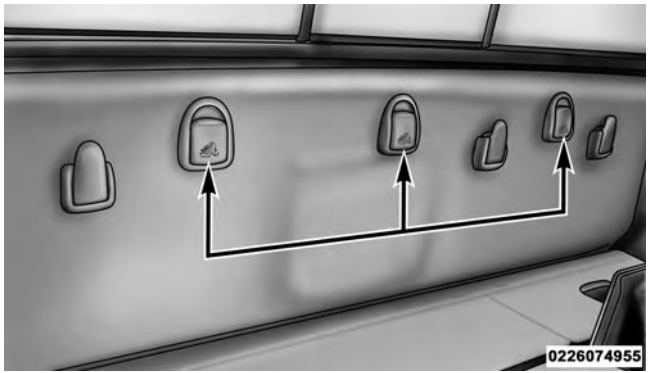
1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint and to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.



Regular Cab Tether Anchorages

1 — Tether Strap Hook
2 — Tether Strap to Child Restraint
3 — Tether Anchor

2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchorage and the child seat. The tether strap should go between the head restraint posts underneath the head restraint. You may need to adjust the head restraint to the upward position to pass the tether strap underneath the head restraint and between its posts.
3. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



Mega Cab Tether Anchorages

WARNING!

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Advanced Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

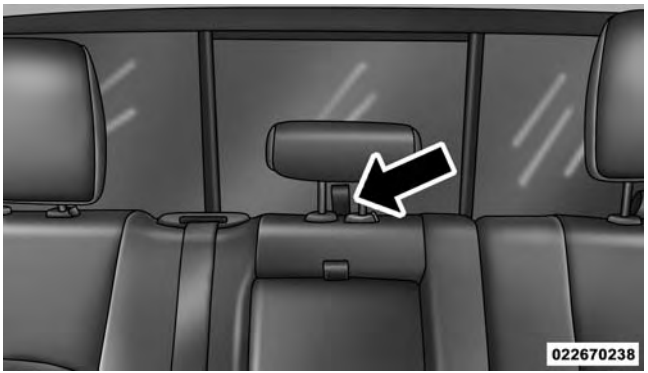
Quad Cab or Crew Cab Trucks:

The top tether anchorages in this vehicle are tether strap loops located between the rear glass and the back of the rear seat. There is a tether strap loop located behind each seating position. Follow the steps below to attach the tether strap of the child restraint.

Right or Left Outboard Seats:

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.

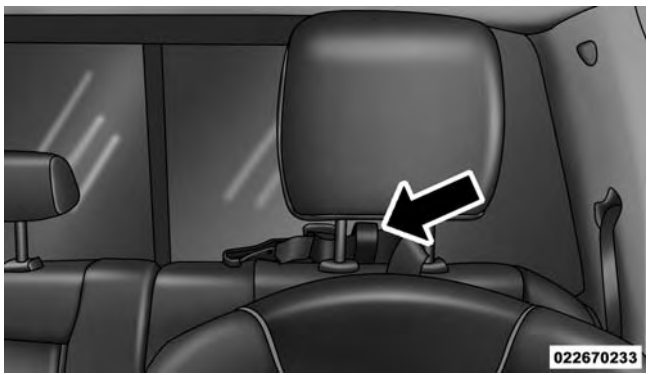
Head Restraint In Raised Position



Tether Strap Loop With Center Head Restraint In Raised Position

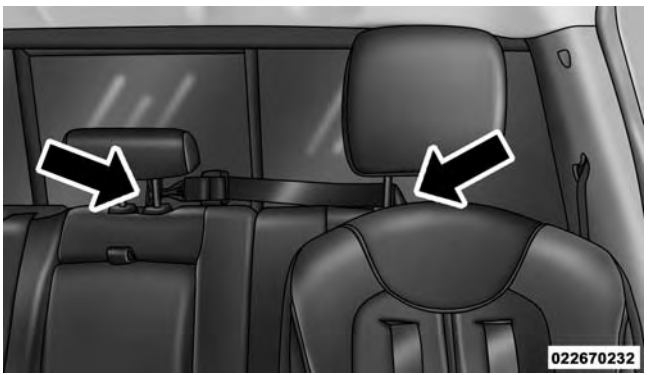
2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind the center seat.

3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, though the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the center tether strap loop.



Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop

4. Attach the hook to the center tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

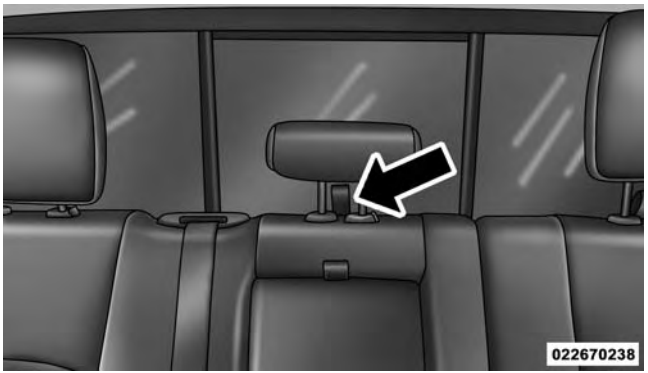


Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Center Tether Strap Loop

NOTE: If there are child seats in both of the outboard (left and right) seating positions, the tether strap hooks of both child seats should be connected to the center tether strap loop. This is the correct way to tether two outboard child seats.

Center Seat:

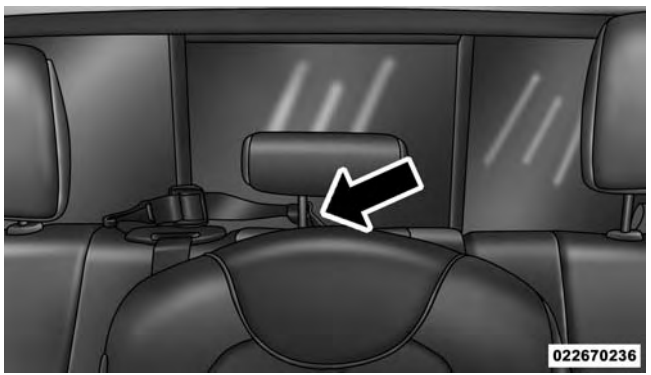
1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.



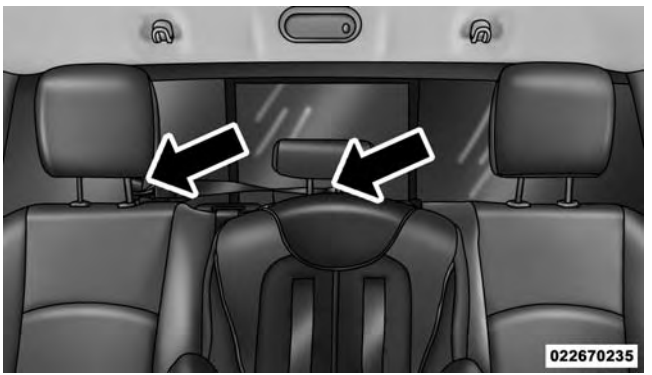
Tether Strap Loop With Head Restraint In Raised Position

2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind either the right or left outboard seat.

3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, though the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the right or left outboard tether strap loop.
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



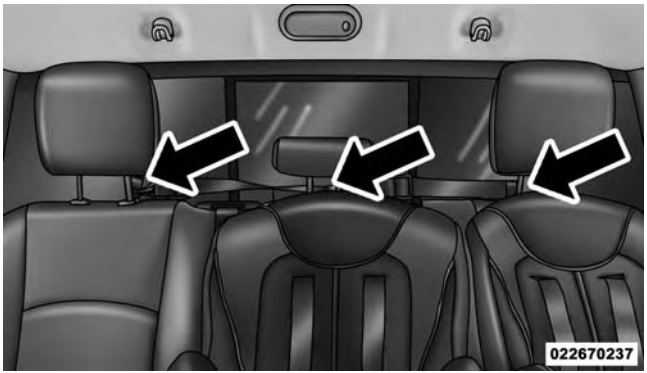
Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop



Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Outboard Tether Strap Loop

Installing Three Child Restraints:

1. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat. Route the tether straps following the directions for right and left seating positions, above.
2. Attach both hooks to the center tether strap loop, but do not tighten the straps yet.
3. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat. Route the tether strap following the directions for the center seating position, above.
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop.
5. Tighten the tether straps according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions, tightening the right and left tether straps before the center tether strap.



Left Outboard And Center Seating Position Shown

WARNING!

- **An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.

- **If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.**

Transporting Pets

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS

A long break-in period is not required for the engine and drivetrain (transmission and axle) in your vehicle.

Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable.

While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration within the limits of local traffic laws contributes to a good break-in. Wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear can be detrimental and should be avoided.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions under which vehicle operations will occur. For the recommended viscosity and quality grades, refer to “Maintenance Procedures” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle.”

CAUTION!

Never use Non-Detergent Oil or Straight Mineral Oil in the engine or damage may result.

NOTE: A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This should be considered a normal part of the break-in and not interpreted as a problem.

SAFETY TIPS

Transporting Passengers

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

WARNING!

- **Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.**
- **It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

Exhaust Gas

WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:

- **Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.**
- **If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/ rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.**

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

Air Bag Warning Light

The Air Bag warning light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN position. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" for further information.

Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See your authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.

Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle. Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they

cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING!

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that floor mats are properly attached to the floor mat fasteners.**
- **Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Never put floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.

- **Check mounting of mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning.**
- **Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.**
- **If required, mounting posts must be properly installed, if not equipped from the factory.**

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or mounting can cause interference with the brake pedal and accelerator pedal operation causing loss of control of the vehicle.

Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle

Tires

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges. Check the wheel bolts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

Lights

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Door Latches

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

Fluid Leaks

Check area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, engine coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, power steering fluid (if equipped), or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.

UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

■ MIRRORS 130

- □ Inside Day/Night Mirror — If Equipped 130
- □ Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped . . .131
- □ Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera Display — If Equipped 138
- □ Outside Mirrors 138
- □ Outside Mirrors Folding Feature 139
- □ Tilt Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped 140
- □ Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And Trailer Tow — If Equipped 141
- □ Power Mirrors — If Equipped 143
- □ Heated Mirrors — If Equipped 144
- □ Driver's Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped 144
- □ Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped 144
- □ Illuminated Vanity Mirror — If Equipped 146
- □ "Slide-On-Rod" Features Of Sun Visor — If Equipped 146

■ SEATS 147

- □ Driver's Power Seat — If Equipped 148

- □ Passenger's Power Seat — If Equipped 150
- □ Power Lumbar — If Equipped 151
- □ Heated Seats — If Equipped 151
- □ Ventilated Seats — If Equipped 154
- □ Manual Seat Adjuster — If Equipped 155
- □ 40-20-40 Front Bench Seat — If Equipped 156
- □ Mega Cab Rear Seat Features 157
- □ Head Restraints 161

■ DRIVER MEMORY SEAT — IF EQUIPPED 164

- □ Programming The Memory Feature 165
- □ Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory 166
- □ Memory Position Recall 167
- □ Easy Entry/Exit Seat 168

■ TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD 169

■ LIGHTS 171

- □ Headlights 172
- □ Automatic Headlights — If Equipped 172
- □ Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only) 173
- □ Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped 174
- □ Headlight Delay 174
- □ Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped 175
- □ Parking Lights And Panel Lights 177
- □ Fog Lights — If Equipped 177

- □ Lights-On Reminder 178
- □ Battery Saver. 178
- □ Interior Lights 178
- □ Cargo Light With Bed Lights — If Equipped . .181
- □ Multifunction Lever 182
- □ Turn Signals 182
- □ Lane Change Assist 183
- □ Flash-To-Pass 183
- □ High/Low Beam Switch 183

■ WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS 184

- □ Windshield Wipers 184
- □ Windshield Wiper Operation 184
- □ Intermittent Wiper System 184
- □ Windshield Washers 185
- □ Mist Feature 185
- □ Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped 186

■ TILT STEERING COLUMN 187

■ HEATED STEERING WHEEL — IF EQUIPPED .188

■ DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED 190

■ ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL 191

- □ To Activate 192
- □ To Set A Desired Speed 193
- □ To Deactivate 193
- □ To Resume Speed 193
- □ To Vary The Speed Setting 193

- To Accelerate For Passing 194
- PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED 195
  - ParkSense Sensors 195
  - ParkSense Warning Display 195
  - ParkSense Display 196
  - Enabling And Disabling ParkSense 200
  - Service The ParkSense Rear Park Assist System 200
  - Cleaning The ParkSense System 201
  - ParkSense System Usage Precautions 201
- PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED 203
  - ParkSense Sensors 204
  - ParkSense Warning Display 204
  - ParkSense Display 205
  - Enabling And Disabling Front And/Or Rear ParkSense 207
  - Service The ParkSense Park Assist System 208
  - Cleaning The ParkSense System 209
  - ParkSense System Usage Precautions 209
- PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA — IF EQUIPPED 212
- OVERHEAD CONSOLE — IF EQUIPPED 215
  - Courtesy/Reading Lights 215
- GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED . . .217
  - Before You Begin Programming HomeLink . . .218
  - Programming A Rolling Code 219

- □ Programming A Non-Rolling Code 222
- □ Canadian/Gate Operator Programming 223
- □ Using HomeLink 224
- □ Security 225
- □ Troubleshooting Tips 225
- □ General Information. 226

■ POWER SUNROOF — IF EQUIPPED 226

- □ Opening Sunroof — Manual Mode 228
- □ Closing Sunroof — Manual Mode 228
- □ Opening Sunroof — Express. 228
- □ Closing Sunroof — Express. 228
- □ Pinch Protect Feature 228
- □ Venting Sunroof — Express 229
- □ Sunshade Operation. 229
- □ Wind Buffeting 229
- □ Sunroof Maintenance 229
- □ Ignition Off Operation 230

■ ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS 230

■ CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER — IF EQUIPPED 235

■ POWER INVERTER — IF EQUIPPED 235

■ AUXILIARY SWITCHES — IF EQUIPPED 236

■ CUPHOLDERS 237

- □ Front Seat Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats) 237
- □ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Floor Storage Bin 238
- □ Rear Cupholders — If Equipped 238

■ STORAGE 239
- □ Glove Compartment 239
- □ Door Storage 241
- □ Center Storage Compartment — If Equipped . .242
- □ Second Row In-Floor Storage Bin — If Equipped 245
- □ Seatback Storage 246
- □ Storage (Regular Cab) 246
- □ Storage and Seats (Crew Cab) 247
- □ Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Regular Cab Models) 247

■ REAR WINDOW FEATURES 248
- □ Rear Window Defroster 248
- □ Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped . .248
- □ Manual Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped .249

■ FOLD FLAT LOAD FLOOR — IF EQUIPPED . .249

■ PICKUP BOX 254
- □ Cargo Camera — If Equipped 255
- □ Turning Cargo Camera On Or Off — With Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN 256

■ RAMBOX — IF EQUIPPED 257
- □ RamBox Integrated Box Side Storage Bins 257
- □ Locking And Unlocking RamBox 259
- □ RamBox Safety Warning 260
- □ Bed Extender — If Equipped 261
- □ Bed Rail Tie-Down System 269

■ SLIDE-IN CAMPERS 271

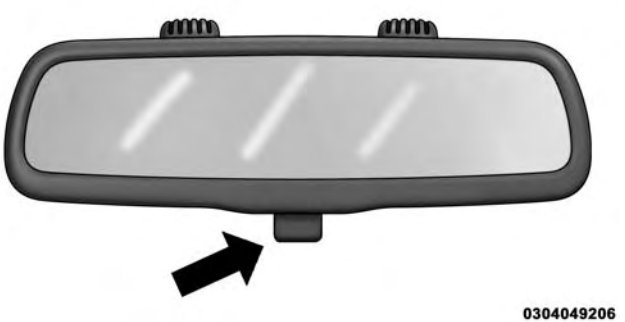
- □ Camper Applications 271
- ■ EASY-OFF TAILGATE 271
  - □ Disconnecting The Rear Camera Or Remote Keyless Entry — If Equipped 272
  - □ Removing The Tailgate. 273
  - □ Locking Tailgate 274
- ■ TRI-FOLD TONNEAU COVER — IF EQUIPPED. 274
  - □ Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover Removal 275
  - □ Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover Installation. 279
  - □ Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover Cleaning 285

MIRRORS

Inside Day/Night Mirror — If Equipped

The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

Headlight glare from vehicles behind you can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward the rear of the vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward the windshield).



Adjusting Rearview Mirror

Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

NOTE: The Automatic Dimming Mirror feature is disabled when the vehicle is in reverse gear to improve rear view viewing.

The Automatic Dimming Mirror feature can be turned On or Off through the touchscreen.

- Press the Mirror Dimmer button once to turn the feature On.
- Press the Mirror Dimmer button a second time to turn the feature Off.

Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, the rearview mirror contains an ASSIST and a 9-1-1 button.

WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection.

NOTE:

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
- The 9–1–1 and ASSIST buttons will only function if you are connected to an operable 1X(voice/data) or 3G(data) network. Other Uconnect services will only be operable if your Uconnect Access service is active and you are connected to an operable 1X(voice/data) or 3G(data) network.

ASSIST Call

The ASSIST Button is used to automatically connect you to any one of the following support centers:

- Roadside Assistance – If you get a flat tire, or need a tow, just push the ASSIST button and you'll be connected to someone who can help. Roadside Assistance will know what vehicle you're driving and its location. Additional fees may apply for roadside Assistance.
- Uconnect Access Customer Care – In-vehicle support for Uconnect Access and Uconnect Access Via Mobile features.
- Vehicle Customer Care – Total support for all other vehicle issues.

9-1-1 Call

1. Push the 9-1-1 Call button on the Rearview Mirror.

NOTE: In case the 9-1-1 Call button is pushed in error, there will be a 10 second delay before the 9-1-1 Call system initiates a call to a 9-1-1 operator. To cancel the 9-1-1 Call connection, push the 9-1-1 Call button on the Rearview Mirror or press the cancellation button on the Device Screen. Termination of the 9-1-1 Call will turn off the green LED light on the Rearview Mirror.

2. The LED light located between the ASSIST and 9-1-1 buttons on the Rearview Mirror will turn green once a connection to a 9-1-1 operator has been made.
3. Once a connection between the vehicle and a 9-1-1 operator is made, the 9-1-1 Call system may transmit the following important vehicle information to a 9-1-1 operator:
   - Indication that the occupant placed a 9-1-1 Call.
   - The vehicle brand.
   - The last known GPS coordinates of the vehicle.
4. You should be able to speak with the 9-1-1 operator through the vehicle audio system to determine if additional help is needed.

WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection.

NOTE:

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
- Once a connection is made between the vehicle's 9-1-1 Call system and the 9-1-1 operator, the 9-1-1 operator may be able to open a voice connection with the vehicle to determine if additional help is needed. Once the 9-1-1 operator opens a voice connection with the vehicle's 9-1-1 Call system, the operator should be able to speak with you or other vehicle occupants and hear sounds occurring in the vehicle. The vehicle's 9-1-1 Call system will attempt to remain connected with the 9-1-1 operator until the 9-1-1 operator terminates the connection.

5. The 9-1-1 operator may attempt to contact appropriate emergency responders and provide them with important vehicle information and GPS coordinates.

WARNING!

- **If anyone in the vehicle could be in danger (e.g., fire or smoke is visible, dangerous road conditions or location), do not wait for voice contact from a 9-1-1 operator. All occupants should exit the vehicle immediately and move to a safe location.**
- **Never place anything on or near the vehicle's operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G(data) network and GPS antennas. You could prevent operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G(data) network and GPS signal reception, which can prevent your vehicle from placing an emergency call. An operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G(data) network and GPS signal reception is required for the 9-1-1 Call system to function properly.**
- **The 9-1-1 Call system is embedded into the vehicle's electrical system. Do not add aftermarket**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

electrical equipment to the vehicle's electrical system. This may prevent your vehicle from sending a signal to initiate an emergency call. To avoid interference that can cause the 9-1-1 Call system to fail, never add aftermarket equipment (e.g., two-way mobile radio, CB radio, data recorder, etc.) to your vehicle's electrical system or modify the antennas on your vehicle. IF YOUR VEHICLE LOSES BATTERY POWER FOR ANY REASON (INCLUDING DURING OR AFTER AN ACCIDENT), THE UCONNECT FEATURES, APPS AND SERVICES, AMONG OTHERS, WILL NOT OPERATE.

- **Modifications to any part of the 9-1-1 Call system could cause the air bag system to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to help protect you.**

9-1-1 Call System Limitations

Vehicles sold in Canada and Mexico **DO NOT** have 9-1-1 Call system capabilities.

9-1-1 or other emergency line operators in Canada and Mexico may not answer or respond to 9-1-1 system calls.

If the 9-1-1 Call system detects a malfunction, any of the following may occur at the time the malfunction is detected, and at the beginning of each ignition cycle:

- The Rearview Mirror light located between the ASSIST and 9-1-1 buttons will continuously be illuminated red.
- The Device Screen will display the following message "Vehicle device requires service. Please contact your dealer."
- An In-Vehicle Audio message will state "Vehicle device requires service. Please contact your dealer."

WARNING!

- **Ignoring the Rearview Mirror light could mean you will not have 9-1-1 Call services. If the Rearview Mirror light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the 9-1-1 Call system immediately.**
- **The Occupant Restraint Control module turns on the air bag Warning Light on the instrument panel if a malfunction in any part of the system is detected. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the Occupant Restraint Control system immediately.**

Even if the 9-1-1 Call system is fully functional, factors beyond FCA US LLC's control may prevent or stop the 9-1-1 Call system operation. These include, but are not limited to, the following factors:

- Delayed accessories mode is active.
- The ignition is in the OFF position.
- The vehicle's electrical systems are not intact.
- The 9-1-1 Call system software and/or hardware are damaged during a crash.
- The vehicle battery loses power or becomes disconnected during a vehicle crash.
- 1X(voice/data) or 3G(data) network and/or Global Positioning Satellite signals are unavailable or obstructed.
- Equipment malfunction at the 9-1-1 operator facility.
- Operator error by the 9-1-1 operator.
- 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network congestion.
- Weather.
- Buildings, structures, geographic terrain, or tunnels.

WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection.

NOTE:

- Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.
- Never place anything on or near the vehicle's 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) and GPS antennas. You could prevent 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) and GPS signal reception, which can prevent your vehicle from placing an emergency call. An operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection and a GPS signal is required for the 9-1-1 Call system to function properly.

General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera Display — If Equipped

A single ball joint mirror is provided in the vehicle. It is a twist on mirror that has a fixed position at the windshield. The mirror installs on the windshield button with a counterclockwise rotation and requires no tools for mounting. The mirror head can be adjusted up, down, left, and right for various drivers. The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

This mirror automatically adjusts for headlight glare from vehicles behind you.

When the vehicle is placed into reverse gear a video display illuminates to display the image generated by the rear view camera located on the tailgate handle. The auto dimming feature is also disabled to improve rear view viewing.

Automatic Dimming Mirror With Rear View Camera

Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirrors to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

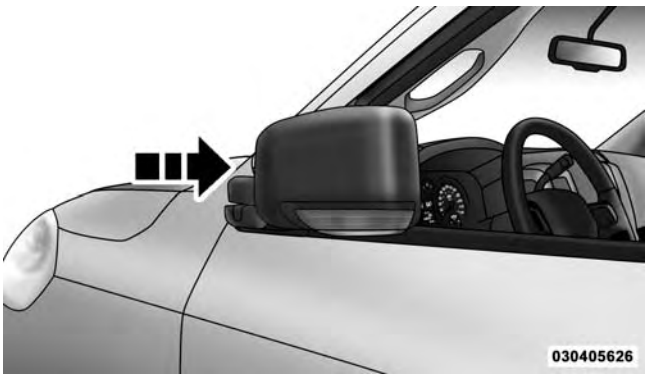
NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors they can be turned off through the instrument cluster or the Uconnect radio. For further information refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" and "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel".

WARNING!

Vehicles and other objects seen in the passenger side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your passenger side convex mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the passenger side convex mirror. Some vehicles will not have a convex passenger side mirror.

Outside Mirrors Folding Feature

All outside mirrors are designed to be able to be manually folded both forward and rearward to prevent damage.



Folding Mirror

CAUTION!

It is recommended to fold the mirrors into the full rearward position to resist damage when entering a car wash or a narrow location.

Tilt Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped

Tilt Mirrors in Reverse provides automatic outside mirror positioning which will aid the driver's view of the ground rearward of the front doors. The outside mirrors will move slightly downward from the present position when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE. The outside mirrors will then return to the original position when the vehicle is shifted out of the REVERSE position. Each stored memory setting will have an associated Tilt Mirrors in Reverse position.

NOTE: The Tilt Mirrors in Reverse feature is not turned on when delivered from the factory.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

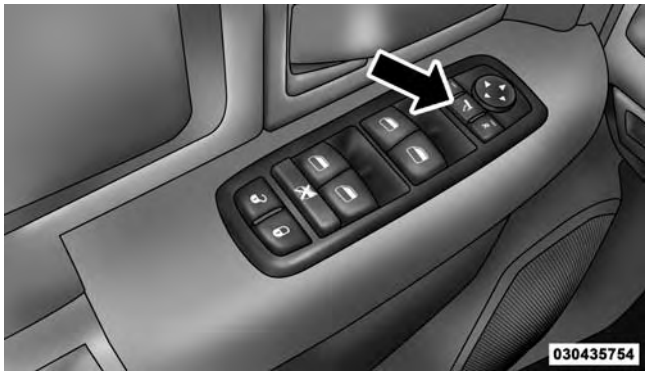
If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And Trailer Tow — If Equipped

If equipped with power folding mirrors, they can be electrically folded rearward and unfolded into the drive position.

The switch for the power folding mirrors is located between the power mirror switches L (left) and R (right). Push the switch once and the mirrors will fold in, push the switch a second time and the mirrors will return to the normal driving position.

If the mirror is manually folded after electrically cycled, a potential extra button push is required to get the mirrors back to the home position. If the mirror does not electrically fold check for ice or dirt build up at the pivot area which can cause excessive drag.



Power Folding Mirror Switch

Resetting the Power Folding Outside Mirrors

You may need to reset the power folding mirrors if the following occurs:

- The mirrors are accidentally blocked while folding.
- The mirrors are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors come out of the unfolded position.
- The mirrors shake and vibrate at normal driving speeds.

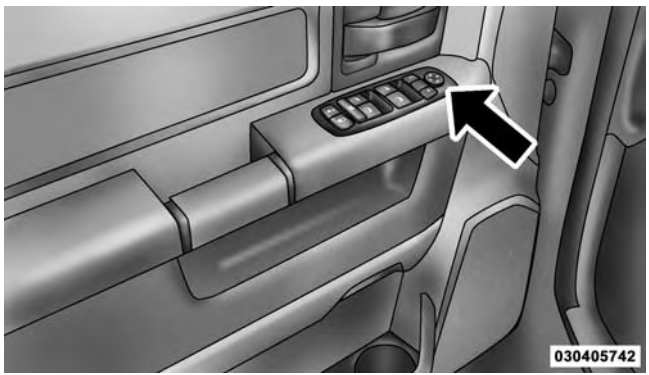
To reset the power folding mirrors: Fold and unfold them by pushing the button (this may require multiple button pushes). This resets them to their normal position.

NOTE:

- The power fold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to power fold the mirrors at high speeds they may not fully open or close. You should slow down to a moderate speed and complete the operation.
- When pushing the power fold button 10 or more times in one minute the system shuts down for one minute to protect the motors from over heating.

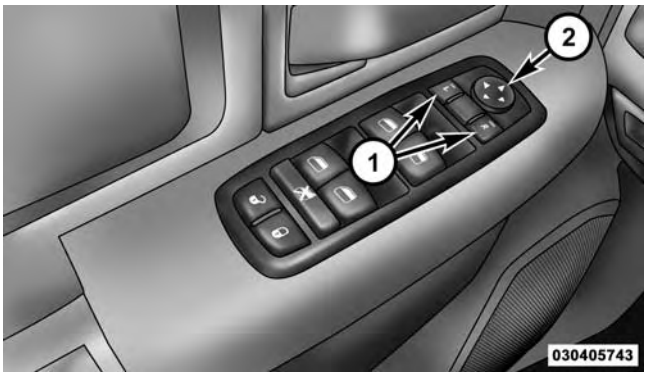
Power Mirrors — If Equipped

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.



Power Mirror Controls Location

The power mirror controls consist of mirror select buttons and a four-way mirror control switch.



Power Mirror Controls

1 — Mirror Select Buttons
2 — Four-Way Mirror Control Switch

To adjust a mirror, push either the L (left) or R (right) button to select the mirror that you want to adjust.

Using the mirror control switch, push on any of the four arrows for the direction that you want the mirror to move.

Power Mirror Movement

Heated Mirrors — If Equipped

These mirrors are heated to melt frost or ice. This feature can be activated whenever you turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped). Refer to "Rear Window Features" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for further information.

Driver's Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

The driver's outside mirror will automatically adjust for glare from vehicles behind you. This feature is controlled by the inside automatic dimming mirror and will automatically adjust for headlight glare when the inside mirror adjusts.

Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped

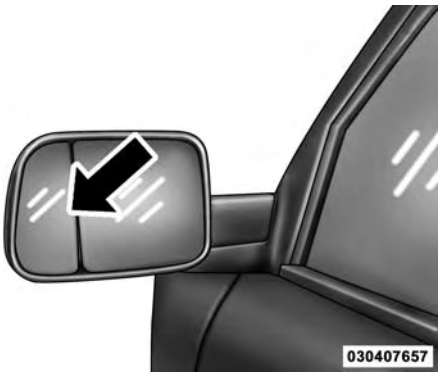
These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing

extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped in or out).

Trailer Towing Position

NOTE: Fold the trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.

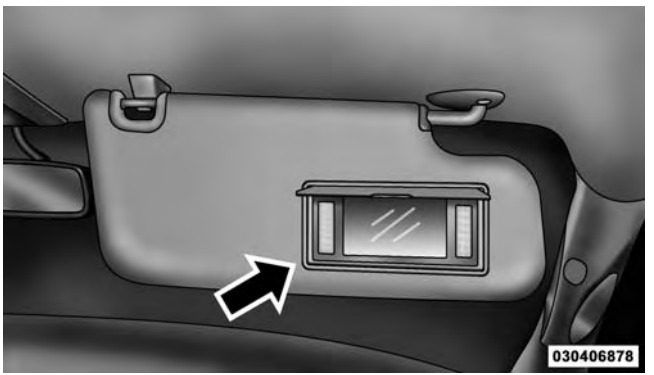
A small blindspot mirror is located next to main mirror and can be adjusted separately.



Blindspot Mirror

Illuminated Vanity Mirror — If Equipped

Illuminated vanity mirrors are located on each sun visor. To use the mirror, rotate the sun visor down and swing the mirror cover upward. The lights will turn on automatically. Closing the mirror cover turns off the light.

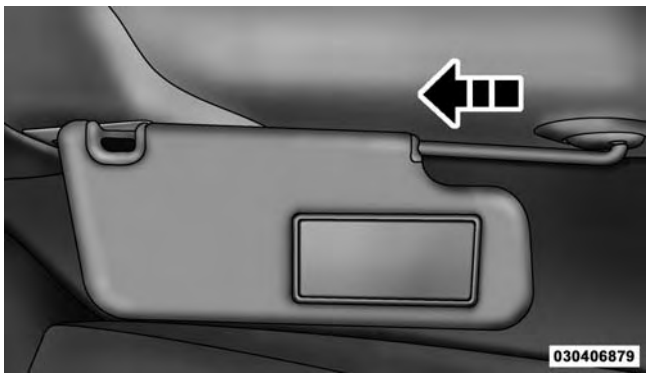


Illuminated Vanity Mirror

"Slide-On-Rod" Features Of Sun Visor — If Equipped

The sun visor "Slide-On-Rod" feature allows for additional flexibility in positioning the visor to block out the sun.

To use the "Slide-On-Rod" feature, rotate the sun visor downward and unclip it. Pull the sun visor along the "Slide-On-Rod" until the sun visor is in the desired position.



"Slide-On-Rod" Extender

SEATS

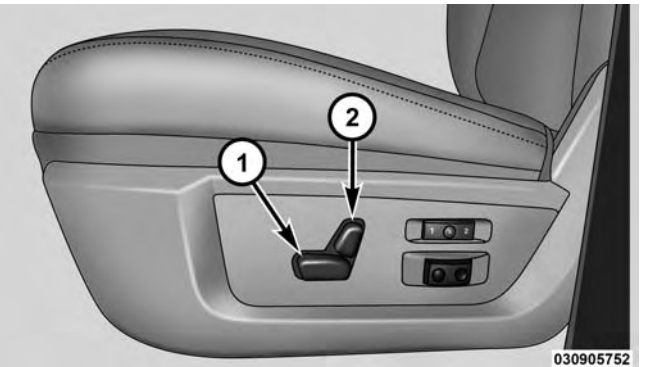
Seats are a part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

Driver's Power Seat — If Equipped

Some models may be equipped with an eight-way power driver's seat. The power seat switches are located on the outboard side of the driver's seat cushion. There are two power seat switches that are used to control the movement of the seat cushion and the seatback.



Power Seat Switches

1 — Power Seat Switch
2 — Power Seatback Switch

Adjusting The Seat Forward Or Rearward

The seat can be adjusted both forward and rearward. Push the seat switch forward or rearward. The seat will

move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

Adjusting The Seat Up Or Down

The height of the seats can be adjusted up or down. Pull upward or push downward on the seat switch. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

Tilting The Seat Up Or Down

The angle of the seat cushion can be adjusted in four directions. Pull upward or push downward on the front or rear of the seat switch, the front or rear of the seat cushion will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

Reclining The Seatback

The angle of the seatback can be adjusted forward or rearward. Push the seatback switch forward or rearward, the seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position is reached.

WARNING!

- **Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.**
- **Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.**
- **Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.**

CAUTION!

Do not place any article under a power seat or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the seat controls. Seat travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the seat's path.

Passenger's Power Seat — If Equipped

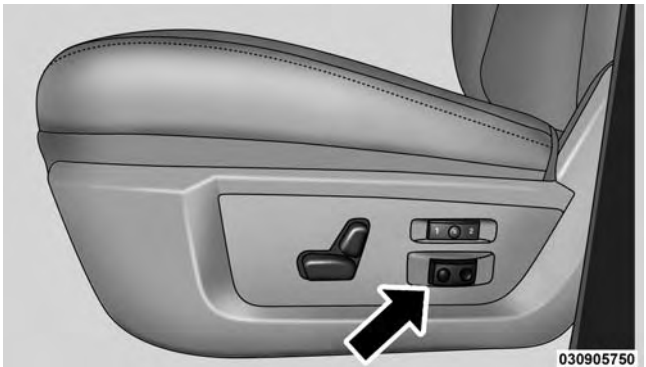
Some models are equipped with a six-way power passenger seat. The power seat switch is located on the outboard side of the seat. The switch is used to control the movement of the seat and seat cushion.

Adjusting The Seat Forward Or Rearward

The seat can be adjusted both forward and rearward. Push the seat switch forward or rearward. The seat will move in the direction of the switch. Release the switch when the desired position has been reached.

Power Lumbar — If Equipped

Vehicles equipped with power driver or passenger seats may be also be equipped with power lumbar. The power lumbar switch is located on the outboard side of the power seat. Push the switch forward to increase the lumbar support. Push the switch rearward to decrease the lumbar support.



Lumbar Control Switch

Heated Seats — If Equipped

On some models, the front and rear seats may be equipped with heaters located in the seat cushions and seat backs.

WARNING!

- **Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.**
- **Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.**

Front Heated Seats

The front heated seats control buttons are located on the center instrument panel below the climate controls.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the front heated seats control buttons are also located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated seat button once to turn the HI setting On.
- Press the heated seat button a second time to turn the LO setting On.
- Press the heated seat button a third time to turn the heating elements OFF.

When the HI-level setting is selected, the heater will provide a boosted heat level during the first four minutes of operation. Then, the heat output will drop to the normal HI-level. If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that

time, the display will change from HI to LO, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

NOTE: The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with Remote Start, the drivers seat can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Rear Heated Seats

On some models, the two outboard seats are equipped with heated seats. The heated seat switches for these seats are located on the rear of the center console.

There are two heated seat switches that allow the rear passengers to operate the seats independently. You can choose from HI, LO or OFF heat settings. Amber indicator lights in each switch indicate the level of heat in use. Two indicator lights will illuminate for HI, one for LO and none for OFF.

Push the switch once to select HI-level heating. Push the switch a second time to select LO-level heating. Push the switch a third time to shut the heating elements OFF.

NOTE:

- Once a heat setting is selected, heat will be felt within two to five minutes.
- The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

When the HI-level setting is selected, the heater will provide a boosted heat level during the first four minutes of operation. Then, the heat output will drop to the normal HI-level. If the HI-level setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to LO-level after approximately 60 minutes of continuous operation. At that time, the number of illuminated LEDs changes from two to one, indicating the change. The LO-level setting will turn OFF automatically after approximately 45 minutes.

Ventilated Seats — If Equipped

Located in the seat cushion are small fans that draw the air from the passenger compartment and move air through fine perforations in the seat cover to help keep the driver and front passenger cooler in higher ambient temperatures. The fans operate at two speeds, HI and LO.

The front ventilated seats control buttons are located on the center instrument panel below the climate controls.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the front ventilated seats control buttons are also located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the ventilated seat button once to choose HI.
- Press the ventilated seat button a second time to choose LO.
- Press the ventilated seat button a third time to turn the ventilated seat OFF.

NOTE: The engine must be running for the ventilated seats to operate.

Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

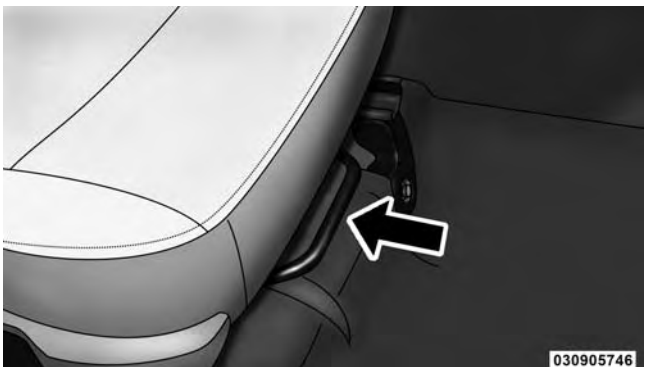
On models that are equipped with remote start, the ventilated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Manual Seat Adjuster — If Equipped

Both front seats are adjustable forward or rearward. The manual seat adjustment handle is located under the seat cushion at the front edge of each seat.



Manual Seat Adjuster

While sitting in the seat, pull up on the handle and slide the seat forward or backward. Release the bar once you

have reached the desired position. Then, using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure that the seat adjusters have latched.

WARNING!

- **Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.**
- **Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.**

Dump Feature (Manual Recline Seat Only) — Standard Cab

Actuating the recliner handle will allow the seatback to swing (dump) forward on manual recliner seats. This "dump" feature allows access to the storage bin behind the seat.

WARNING!

- **Do not stand or lean in front of the seat while actuating the handle. The seatback may swing forward and hit you causing injury.**
- **To avoid injury, place your hand on the seatback and actuate the handle, then position the seatback in the desired position.**

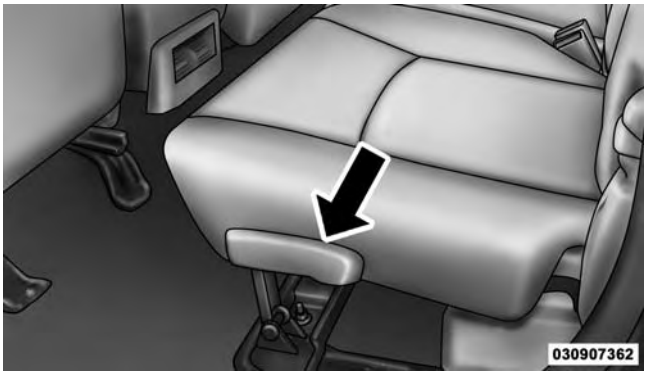
40-20-40 Front Bench Seat — If Equipped

The seat is divided into three segments. The outboard seat portions are each 40% of the total width of the seat. On some models the back of the center portion (20%) easily folds down to provide an armrest/center storage compartment.

Mega Cab Rear Seat Features

Reclining Rear Seats — If Equipped

The recliner handle is located on the outside of the seat cushion. To adjust the seatback, lift upward on the handle, lean back on the seatback and when you reach the desired position, release the handle.



Rear Seat Recliner Handle

WARNING!

Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

Folding Rear Seat (Table Mode) — If Equipped

Both the left and right rear seatbacks can be folded down and used as a table.

To fold down either rear seatback:

1. Lift the handle, located next to the head restraint.

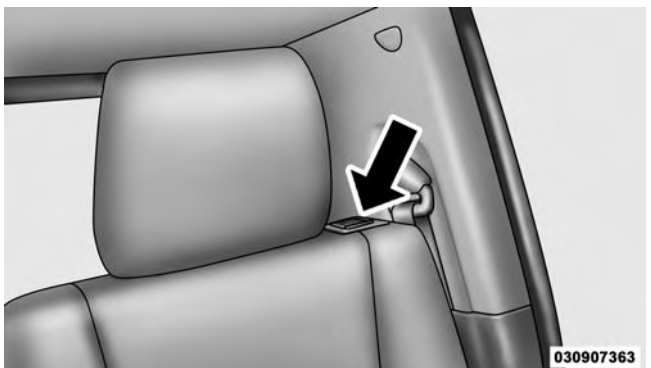


Table Mode Handle

2. Fold the seatback forward.

Table Mode

NOTE: You may experience deformation in the seat cushion from the seat belt buckles if the seats are left folded for an extended period of time. This is normal and by simply opening the seats to the open position, over time the seat cushion will return to its normal shape.

3. Lift the seatback, to return the seat to the upright position. Be sure the seatback is locked in place.

Folding Rear Seat — If Equipped

Both the outboard rear seats will drop and move forward when the seatback is folded flat.

WARNING!

- **It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.**
- **Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.**

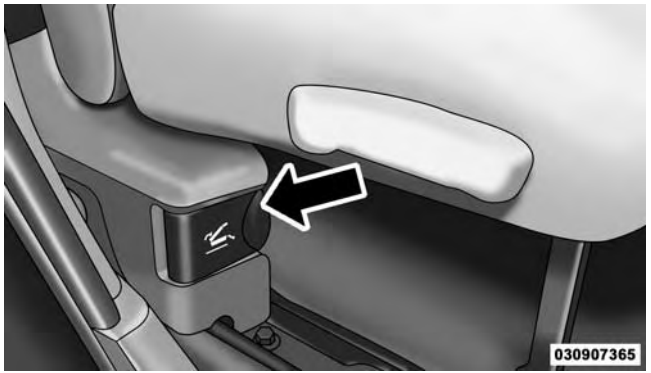
(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Cargo must be securely tied down before driving your vehicle. Improperly secured cargo can fly around in a sudden stop or collision and strike someone in the vehicle, causing serious injury or death.**

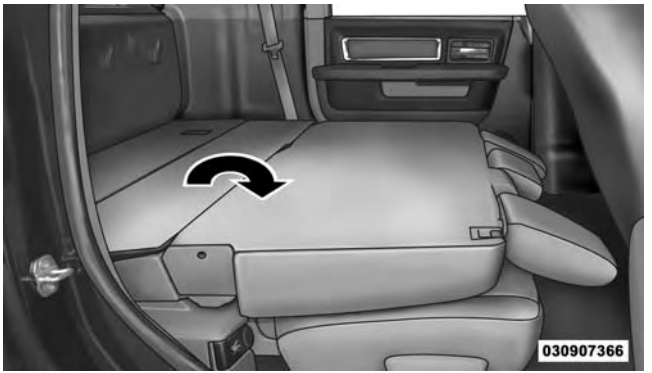
To fold either rear seat flat:

1. Lift the handle, located on the outboard side of either of the rear seats.



Folding Rear Seat Handle

2. Fold the seatback down and push the seat forward.



Rear Passenger Fold-Flat Seats

3. Lift the seatback, to return the seat to the upright position. Be sure the seat is locked in place.

NOTE: You may experience deformation in the seat cushion from the seat belt buckles if the seats are left folded for an extended period of time. This is normal and by simply opening the seats to the open position, over time the seat cushion will return to its normal shape.

WARNING!

An improperly latched seat could cause serious injury or death. Make sure that the seatback is securely locked into position. If the seatback in not securely locked into position the seat will not provide the proper stability for child seats and/or passengers.

Head Restraints

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

WARNING!

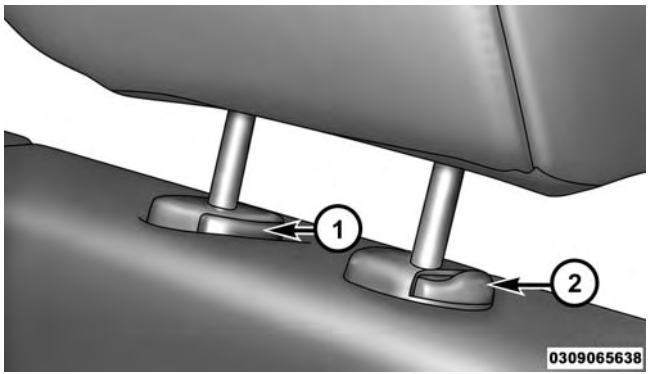
The head restraints for all occupants must be properly installed and adjusted prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat. Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

Front Head Restraints

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.

To remove the head restraint, raise it up as far as it can go then push the adjustment button and the release button at the base of each post while pulling the head restraint up. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint

posts into the holes then adjust it to the appropriate height.



Adjustment Buttons

1 — Release Button
2 — Adjustment Button

WARNING!

- **A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.**
- **ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.**

NOTE: Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

Rear Head Restraints

The rear seats are equipped with adjustable and removable head restraints. To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint,

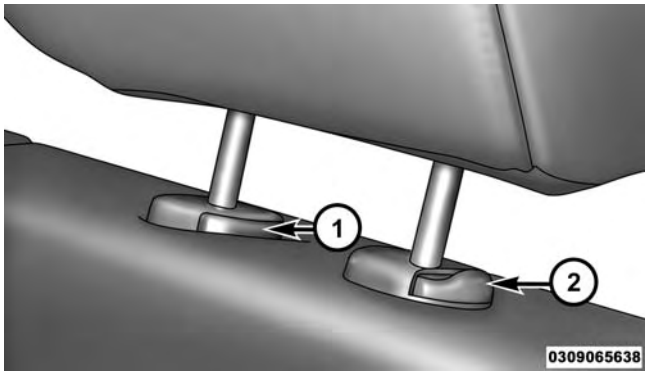
push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.

To remove the head restraint, push the adjustment button and the release button while pulling upward on the whole assembly. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and adjust it to the appropriate height.

NOTE: To remove outboard restraints, the rear seat bottom must be folded up.

WARNING!

A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.



Release/Adjustment Buttons

1 — Release Button
2 — Adjustment Button

NOTE:

- The rear center head restraint (Crew Cab and Quad Cab) has only one adjustment position that is used to aid in the routing of a tether. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Things to Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.
- Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

WARNING!

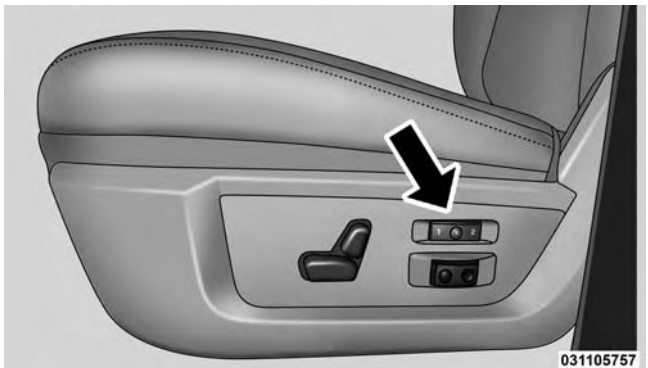
ALL the head restraints MUST be reinstalled in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

DRIVER MEMORY SEAT — IF EQUIPPED

This feature allows the driver to store up to two different memory profiles for easy recall through a memory switch. Each memory profile contains desired position settings for the driver seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals (if equipped) and a set of desired radio station presets. Your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob can also be programmed to recall the same positions when the UNLOCK button is pushed.

NOTE: Your vehicle is equipped with two RKE Key Fobs, one RKE Key Fob can be linked to memory position 1 and the other Key Fob can be linked to memory position 2.

The memory seat buttons are located on the outboard side of the drivers seat cushion.



Memory Seat Buttons

Programming The Memory Feature

To create a new memory profile, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicles ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Adjust all memory profile settings to desired preferences (seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals and radio station presets).
3. Push and release the S (Set) button on the memory switch.
4. Within five seconds, push and release either of the memory buttons (1) or (2). The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) will display which memory position has been set.

NOTE:

- Memory profiles can be set without the vehicle in PARK, but the vehicle must be in PARK to recall a memory profile.
- To set a memory profile to your RKE Key Fob, refer to "Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory" in this section.

Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory

Your RKE Key Fobs can be programmed to recall one of two pre-programmed memory profiles by pushing the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob.

NOTE: Before programming your RKE Key Fobs to memory the feature has to be selected.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, you must select the "Memory To Fob" feature through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings " in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, you must select the "Key Fob Linked To Memory" feature through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

To program your RKE Key Fobs, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicles ignition to the Off position.
2. Select desired memory profile (1) or (2).

NOTE: If a memory profile has not already been set, refer to "Programming The Memory Feature" for instructions on how to set a memory profile.

3. Once the profile has been recalled, push and release the SET (S) button on the memory switch, then push and release button (1) or (2) accordingly. "Memory Profile Set" (1 or 2) will display in the instrument cluster on vehicles equipped with the EVIC/DID.
4. Push and release the LOCK button on the RKE Key Fob within 10 seconds.

NOTE: Your RKE Key Fobs can be unlinked to your memory settings by pushing the SET (S) button, and within 10 seconds, followed by pushing the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob.

Memory Position Recall

NOTE:

- For vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, the vehicle must be in PARK to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted when the vehicle is not in PARK, a message will be displayed in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID).
- For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, the vehicle speed must be at 0 mph (0 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted with the vehicle speed above 0 mph (0 km/h), a message will display in the EVIC/DID.

Driver One Memory Position Recall

- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the memory switch, push MEMORY button number 1 on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the RKE Key Fob, push the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob linked to memory position 1.

Driver Two Memory Position Recall

- To recall the memory setting for driver two using the memory switch, push MEMORY button number 2 on the memory switch.
- To recall the memory settings for driver two using the RKE Key Fob, push the UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob linked to memory position 2.

A recall can be cancelled by pushing any of the MEMORY buttons during a recall (S, 1, or 2). When a recall is cancelled, the driver's seat, and the power pedals (if equipped) stop moving. A delay of one second will occur before another recall can be selected.

Easy Entry/Exit Seat

This feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.

The distance the driver seat moves depends on where you have the driver seat positioned when you remove the Key Fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go).

- When you remove the Key Fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go), the driver seat will move about 2.4 inches (60 mm) rearward if the driver seat position is greater than or equal to 2.7 inches (67.7 mm) forward

of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition into the ACC or RUN position.

- When you remove the Key Fob from the ignition (or change the ignition to OFF, for vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go), the driver seat will move to a position 0.3 inches (7.7 mm) forward of the rear stop if the driver seat position is between 0.9 inches and 2.7 inches (22.7 mm and 67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition to the ACC or RUN position.
- The Easy Entry/Easy Exit feature is disabled when the driver seat position is less than 0.9 inches (22.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. At this position, there is no benefit to the driver by moving the seat for Easy Exit or Easy Entry.

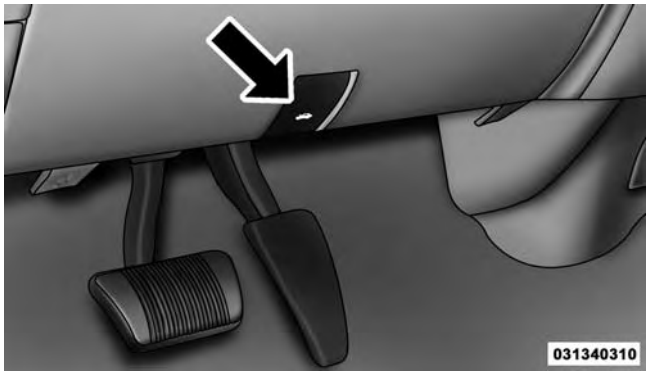
Each stored memory setting will have an associated Easy Entry and Easy Exit position.

NOTE: The Easy Entry/Exit feature is not enabled when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The Easy Entry/Exit feature is enabled (or later disabled) through the programmable features in the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings/Customer Programmable Features" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD

To open the hood, two latches must be released.

1. Pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel.



Hood Release

2. Reach into the opening beneath the center of the hood and push the safety latch lever to the left to release it, before raising the hood.

Safety Latch Location (1500 Series Shown)

WARNING!

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision.

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

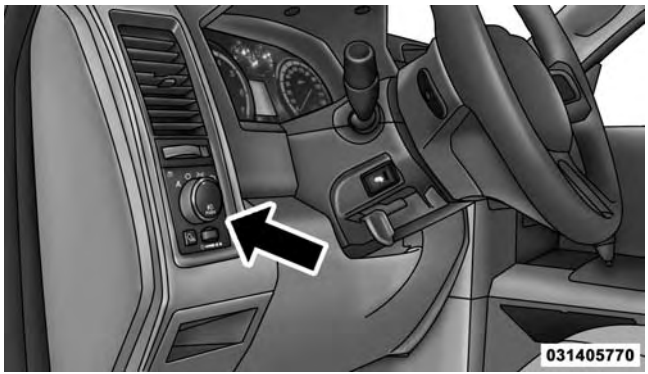
Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.

CAUTION!

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.

LIGHTS

The headlight switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel, next to the steering wheel. The headlight switch controls the operation of the headlights, parking lights, instrument panel lights, cargo lights and fog lights (if equipped).



Headlight Switch Location

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight and fog light (if equipped) lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass lights. Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with illuminated approach lights under the outside mirrors they can be turned off through the instrument cluster or the Uconnect radio. For further information refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" and "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel".

CAUTION!

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

Headlights

To turn on the headlights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the headlight position. When the headlight switch is on, the parking lights, taillights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are also turned on. To turn off the headlights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (Off) position.

Automatic Headlights — If Equipped

This system automatically turns the headlights on or off according to ambient light levels. To turn the system on, rotate the headlight switch to the AUTO position.

Automatic Headlight Position

When the system is on, the Headlight Delay feature is also on. This means the headlights will stay on for up to 90 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to the OFF position. To turn the automatic headlights off, turn the headlight switch out of the AUTO position.

NOTE: The engine must be running before the headlights will turn on in the Automatic Mode.

Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only)

When this feature is active, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on if the headlight switch is placed in the AUTO position. In addition, the headlights will turn off when the wipers are turned off, if they were turned on by this feature.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information

Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except PARK. This provides a constant "Lights ON" condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than 50% of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) will turn OFF. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle may turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate.

Headlight Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlight delay that will leave the headlights on for approximately up to 90 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned OFF while the headlight switch is on, and then the headlight switch is cycled off. Headlight delay can be cancelled by either turning the headlight switch on then off, or by turning the ignition ON.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped

The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera mounted on the inside rearview mirror. This camera detects vehicle specific light and automatically switches from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view.

NOTE:

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen the Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be turned on or off using the Uconnect System. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen the Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be turned on or off using the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- Broken, muddy, or obstructed headlights and taillights of vehicles in the field of view will cause headlights to remain on longer (closer to the vehicle). Also, dirt, film, and other obstructions on the windshield or camera lens will cause the system to function improperly.
- To opt out of the Advanced Auto High-Beam Sensitivity Control (default) and enter Reduced High-Beam Sensitivity Control (not recommended), toggle high-beam lever 6 full on/off cycles within 10 seconds of ignition ON. System will return to default setting upon ignition off.

If the windshield or Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control mirror is replaced, the mirror must be re-aimed to ensure proper performance. See your local authorized dealer.

To Activate

1. If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, the Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

2. Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO headlight position.
3. Push the multifunction lever away from you (toward front of vehicle) to engage the high beam mode.

NOTE: This system will not activate until the vehicle is at or above 20 mph (32 km/h).

To Deactivate

1. Pull the multifunction lever toward you (or rearward in vehicle) to manually deactivate the system (normal operation of low beams).
2. Push back on the multifunction lever to reactivate the system.

Parking Lights And Panel Lights

To turn on the parking lights and instrument panel lights, rotate the headlight switch clockwise. To turn off the parking lights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (Off) position.

Fog Lights — If Equipped

The fog lights are turned on by rotating the headlight switch to the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control.

031464205

Fog Light Switch

The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are on or when the vehicle headlights are on low beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will

turn off when the switch is pushed a second time, when the headlight switch is rotated to the off position, or the high beam is selected.

Lights-On Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, or cargo lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, load shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is OFF and any door is left ajar for 10 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated all the way up to the dome ON position for 10 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

NOTE: Battery saver mode is cancelled if the ignition is ON.

If the headlights remain on while the ignition is cycled OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after eight minutes. If the headlights are turned on and left on for eight minutes while the ignition is OFF, the exterior lights will automatically turn off.

Interior Lights

Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the bottom of the switch) is rotated to the far right detent position. If your vehicle is equipped with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) and the UNLOCK button is pushed on the RKE Key Fob the courtesy and dome lights will turn on. When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control all the way left, to the OFF detent, will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the "Party" mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

The brightness of the instrument panel as well as the ambient lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control right (brighter) or left (dimmer). When the headlights are on you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control to the right until you hear a click. This feature is termed the "Parade" mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the dimming of the touchscreen is programmable through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings " in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further details.

031464206

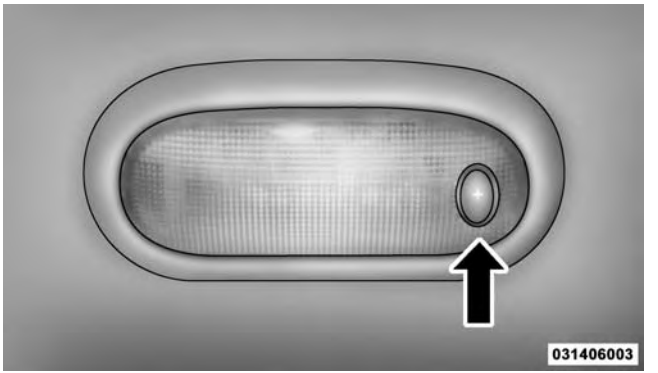
Dimmer Control

Courtesy/Reading Lights

Both lights in the overhead console and rear passenger compartment will illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (full right position), or when the UNLOCK button is pushed on the Remote Keyless Entry

(RKE) Key Fob, if equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pushing on the corresponding lens.

Front Courtesy/Reading Lights



Rear Passenger Courtesy/Reading Light

NOTE: The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pushed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, they will automatically turn off after 15 minutes.

Ambient Light

The overhead console is equipped with an ambient light feature. This light casts illumination for improved visibility of the floor console area.

Ambient Light

Cargo Light With Bed Lights — If Equipped

The cargo light and bed lights (if equipped) are turned on by pushing on the cargo lights button.

Cargo Lights Button

The cargo light and bed lights (if equipped) will also turn on for approximately 60 seconds when a RKE Key Fob UNLOCK button is pushed, as part of the Illuminated Entry feature.

Multifunction Lever

The multifunction lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

Turn Signals

Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.

Turn Signal Lever

NOTE: If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.

Lane Change Assist

Tap the lever up or down once, without moving beyond the detent, and the turn signal (right or left) will flash three times then automatically turn off.

Flash-To-Pass

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by partially pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on until the lever is released.

High/Low Beam Switch

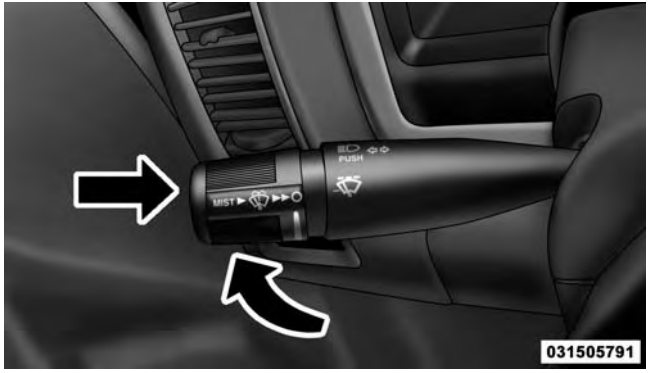
Push the multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to switch the headlights to high beam. Pulling the multifunction lever back toward the steering wheel will turn the low beams back on, or shut the high beams off.

High/Low Beam Switch

WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

Windshield Wipers

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction lever. Turn the end of the handle to select the desired wiper speed.



Windshield Wiper/Washer Switch

Windshield Wiper Operation

Rotate the end of the lever upward, to the first detent past the intermittent settings for low-speed wiper operation. Rotate the end of the lever upward to the second detent past the intermittent settings for high-speed wiper operation.

Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob into the upper end of the delay range.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the low continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 18 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every one second. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

Windshield Washers

To use the windshield washer, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the second detent. Washer fluid will be sprayed and the wiper will operate for two to three cycles after the washer knob is released from this position.

If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed while in the off position, the wiper will turn on and cycle approximately three times after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to a collision. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.

Mist Feature

When a single wipe to clear off road mist or spray from a passing vehicle is needed, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the first detent and release. The wipers will cycle one time and automatically shut off.

NOTE: The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be used in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.

Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped

This feature senses moisture on the windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver. The feature is especially useful for road splash or overspray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead. Rotate the end of the multifunction lever to one of five settings to activate this feature.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted with the multifunction lever. Wiper delay position 1 is the least sensitive, and wiper delay position 5 is the most sensitive. Setting 3 should be used for normal rain conditions. Settings 1 and 2 can be used if the driver desires less wiper sensitivity. Setting 4 and 5 can be used if the driver desires more sensitivity. Place the wiper switch in the OFF position when not using the system.

NOTE:

- The Rain Sensing feature will not operate when the wiper switch is in the low or high-speed position.
- The Rain Sensing feature may not function properly when ice, or dried salt water is present on the windshield.
- Use of Rain-X or products containing wax or silicone may reduce Rain Sensing performance.

The Rain Sensing system has protection features for the wiper blades and arms, and will not operate under the following conditions:

- **Low Ambient Temperature** — When the ignition is first turned ON, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 0 mph (0 km/h), or the outside temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).
- **Transmission In NEUTRAL Position** — When the ignition is ON, and the transmission is in the NEUTRAL position, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), or the gear selector is moved out of the NEUTRAL position.
- **Remote Start Mode Inhibit** — On vehicles equipped with Remote Starting system, Rain Sensing wipers are not operational when the vehicle is in the remote start mode. Once the operator is in the vehicle and has placed the ignition switch in the RUN position, rain sensing wiper operation can resume, if it has been selected, and no other inhibit conditions (mentioned previously) exist.

TILT STEERING COLUMN

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt lever is located on the steering column, below the multifunction lever.

Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to unlock the steering column. With one hand firmly on the steering wheel, move the steering column up or down, as desired. Release the lever to lock the steering column firmly in place.

Tilt Steering Lever

WARNING!

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL — IF EQUIPPED

The steering wheel contains a heating element that helps warm your hands in cold weather. The heated steering wheel has only one temperature setting. Once the heated steering wheel has been turned on it will operate for approximately 30 to 80 minutes before automatically shutting off. The heated steering wheel can shut off early or may not turn on when the steering wheel is already warm.

The heated steering wheel control button is located on the center of the instrument panel below the climate controls.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the heated steering wheel control button is located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated steering wheel button once to turn the heating element On.
- Press the heated steering wheel button a second time to turn the heating element Off.

NOTE: The engine must be running for the heated steering wheel to operate.

Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

WARNING!

- **Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

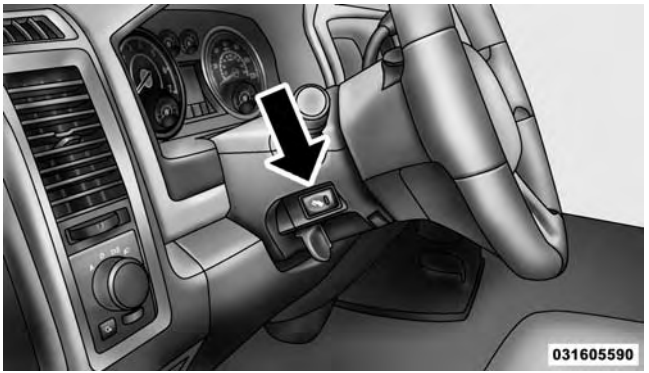
care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.

- **Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.**

DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED

The adjustable pedals system is designed to allow a greater range of driver comfort for steering wheel tilt and seat position. This feature allows the brake, accelerator, and clutch pedals (if equipped) to move toward or away from the driver to provide improved position with the steering wheel.

The adjustable pedal switch is located to the left side of the steering column.



Adjustable Pedals Switch

- The pedals can be adjusted with the ignition OFF.
- The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the Electronic Speed Control System is on. The following messages will be displayed on vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information System (EVIC) or Driver Information Display

(DID) if the pedals are attempted to be adjusted when the system is locked out ("Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Cruise Control Engaged" or "Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Vehicle In Reverse").

NOTE:

- Always adjust the pedals to a position that allows full pedal travel.
- Further small adjustments may be necessary to find the best possible seat/pedal position.
- For vehicles equipped with Driver Memory Seat, you can use your Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob or the memory switch on the driver's door trim panel to return the adjustable pedals to pre-programmed positions. Refer to "Driver Memory Seat" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for further information.

WARNING!

Do not adjust the pedals while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control and have an accident. Always adjust the pedals while the vehicle is parked.

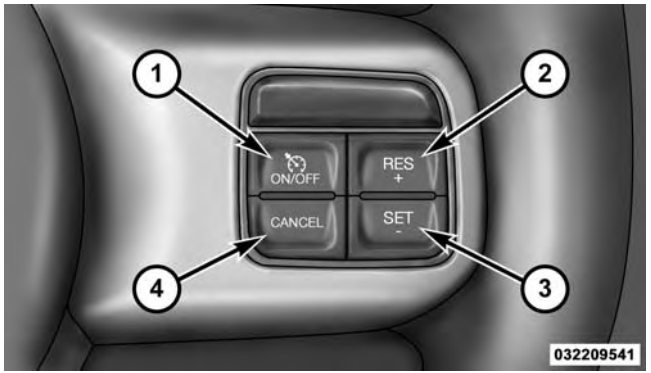
CAUTION!

Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal's path.

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL

When engaged, the Electronic Speed Control takes over accelerator operations at speeds greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The Electronic Speed Control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.



Electronic Speed Control Switches

1 — ON/OFF
2 — RES +
3 — SET -
4 — CANCEL

NOTE: In order to ensure proper operation, the Electronic Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple Speed Control functions are operated at the same time. If this occurs, the Electronic Speed Control System can be reactivated by pushing the Electronic Speed Control ON/OFF button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.

To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button. The Cruise Indicator Light in the instrument cluster will illuminate. To turn the system off, push the ON/OFF button a second time. The Cruise Indicator Light will turn off. The system should be turned off when not in use.

WARNING!

Leaving the Electronic Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system OFF when you are not using it.

To Set A Desired Speed

Turn the Electronic Speed Control ON. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET (-) button and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

NOTE: The vehicle should be traveling at a steady speed and on level ground before pushing the SET (-) button.

To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pushing the CANCEL button, or normal brake pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate the Electronic Speed Control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Pushing the ON/OFF button or turning the ignition switch OFF erases the set speed from memory.

To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push the RES (+) button and release. Resume can be used at any speed above 20 mph (32 km/h).

To Vary The Speed Setting

To Increase Speed

When the Electronic Speed Control is set, you can increase speed by pushing the RES (+) button.

The drivers preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for more information. The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

To Decrease Speed

When the Electronic Speed Control is set, you can decrease speed by pushing the SET (-) button.

The drivers preferred units can be selected through the instrument panel settings if equipped. Refer to "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for more information. The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

To Accelerate For Passing

Press the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

Using Electronic Speed Control On Hills

The transmission may downshift on hills to maintain the vehicle set speed.

NOTE: The Electronic Speed Control system maintains speed up and down hills. A slight speed change on moderate hills is normal.

On steep hills, a greater speed loss or gain may occur so it may be preferable to drive without Electronic Speed Control.

WARNING!

Electronic Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Electronic Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.

PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED

The ParkSense Rear Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear fascia and a detected obstacle when backing up, e.g. during a parking maneuver. Refer to "ParkSense System Usage Precautions" in this section for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE. If ParkSense is enabled at this gear selector position, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph (11 km/h) or above. When in REVERSE and above the system's operating speed, a warning will appear within the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) indicating the vehicle speed is too fast. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

ParkSense Sensors

The four ParkSense sensors, located in the rear fascia/bumper, monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 18 in (45 cm) up to 79 in (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

ParkSense Warning Display

The ParkSense Warning screen is located within the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). It provides visual warnings to indicate the distance between the rear fascia/bumper and the detected obstacle. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle

Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) Settings" in Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

The ParkSense Warning screen will only be displayed if Sound and Display is selected.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

ParkSense Display

When the vehicle is in REVERSE, the warning display will turn ON indicating the system status.

The system will indicate a detected obstacle by showing a single arc in the left and/or right rear regions based on the object's distance and location relative to the vehicle.

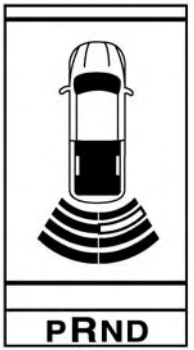
If an object is detected in the left and/or right rear region, the display will show a single solid arc in the left and/or right rear region and the system will produce a tone. As the vehicle moves closer to the object, the display will show the single arc moving closer to the vehicle and the tone will change from a single 1/2 second tone to slow, to fast, to continuous.

032771343

Single 1/2 Second Tone

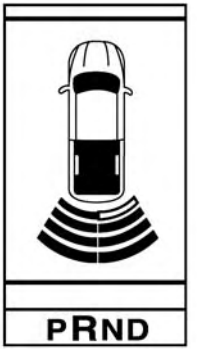
032771342

Slow Tone



032771344

Fast Tone



032771345

Continuous Tone

The vehicle is close to the obstacle when the warning display shows one flashing arc and sounds a continuous tone. The following chart shows the warning alert operation when the system is detecting an obstacle:

WARNING ALERTS					
Rear Distance (in/cm)	Greater than 79 in (200 cm)	79-45 in (200-115 cm)	45-31 in (115-80 cm)	31-18 in (80-45 cm)	Less than 18 in (45 cm)
Audible Alert Chime	None	Single 1/2 Second Tone	Slow	Fast	Continuous
Arc	None	4th Solid	3rd Solid	2nd Flashing	1st Flashing
Radio Volume Reduced	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

NOTE: ParkSense will reduce the volume of the radio, if on, when the system is sounding an audio tone.

Adjustable Chime Volume Settings

The Rear chime volume settings are programmable.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the settings may be programmed through the Uconnect System. Refer to "Uconnect Settings " in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, the settings may be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Enabling And Disabling ParkSense

ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the ParkSense switch.

When the ParkSense switch is pushed to disable the system, the instrument cluster will display the "PARKSENSE OFF" message for approximately five seconds. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system is disabled, the EVIC/DID will display the "PARKSENSE OFF" message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

NOTE: The ParkSense system will automatically disable when the system detects that a trailer with trailer brakes has been connected to the Integrated Trailer Brake Module. The EVIC/DID will display "PARKSENSE OFF" message for as long as the vehicle is in reverse.

The ParkSense switch LED will be ON when ParkSense is disabled or defective. The ParkSense switch LED will be OFF when the system is enabled.

If the ParkSense switch is pushed, and the system is disabled or requires service, the ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be ON.

Service The ParkSense Rear Park Assist System

During vehicle start up, when the ParkSense Rear Park Assist System has detected a faulted condition, the instrument cluster will actuate a single chime, once per ignition cycle, and it will display the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" or the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information. When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system has detected a faulted condition, the EVIC/DID

will display the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" or the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE. Under this condition, ParkSense will not operate.

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" appears in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) make sure the outer surface and the underside of the rear fascia/bumper is clean and clear of snow, ice, mud, dirt or other obstruction, and then cycle the ignition. If the message continues to appear, see an authorized dealer.

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" appears in the EVIC/DID, see your authorized dealer.

Cleaning The ParkSense System

Clean the ParkSense sensors with water, car wash soap and a soft cloth. Do not use rough or hard cloths. Do not scratch or poke the sensors. Otherwise, you could damage the sensors.

ParkSense System Usage Precautions

NOTE:

- Ensure that the rear bumper is free of snow, ice, mud, dirt and debris to keep the ParkSense system operating properly.
- Jackhammers, large trucks, and other vibrations could affect the performance of ParkSense.
- When you turn ParkSense off, the instrument cluster will display "PARKSENSE OFF". Furthermore, once you turn ParkSense off, it remains off until you turn it on again, even if you cycle the ignition key.

- When you move the gear selector to the REVERSE position and ParkSense is turned off, the instrument cluster will display "PARKSENSE OFF" message for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.
- ParkSense, when on, will reduce the volume of the radio when it is sounding a tone.
- Clean the ParkSense sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them. The sensors must not be covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris. Failure to do so can result in the system not working properly. The ParkSense system might not detect an obstacle behind the fascia/bumper, or it could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the fascia/bumper.
- Ensure the ParkSense system is OFF if objects such as bicycle carriers, trailer hitches, etc., are placed within 18 in (45 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper while driving the vehicle. Failure to do so can result in the system misinterpreting a close obstacle as a sensor problem, causing the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message to be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- On vehicles equipped with a tailgate, ParkSense should be disabled when the tailgate is in the lowered or open position and the vehicle is in REVERSE. A lowered tailgate could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

- **Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.**

CAUTION!

- **ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.**
- **The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.**

PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED

The ParkSense Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear and/or front fascia and a detected obstacle when backing

up or moving forward, e.g. during a parking maneuver. Refer to ParkSense System Usage Precautions for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE or DRIVE. If ParkSense is enabled at one of these gear selector positions, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph (11 km/h) or above. A display warning will appear in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) indicating the vehicle is above ParkSense operating speed. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

ParkSense Sensors

The four ParkSense sensors, located in the rear fascia/bumper, monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 18 in (45 cm) up to 79 in (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

The six ParkSense sensors, located in the front fascia/bumper, monitor the area in front of the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 12 in (30 cm) up to 47 in (120 cm) from the front fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

ParkSense Warning Display

The ParkSense Warning screen is located within the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver

Information Display (DID). It provides visual warnings to indicate the distance between the rear fascia/bumper and/or front fascia/bumper and the detected obstacle. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) Settings" in Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

The ParkSense Warning screen will only be displayed if Sound and Display is selected.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

ParkSense Display

The warning display will turn ON indicating the system status when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the vehicle is in DRIVE and an obstacle has been detected.

The system will indicate a detected obstacle by showing a single arc in the left and/or right rear regions based on the obstacle's distance and location relative to the vehicle.

If an obstacle is detected in the left and/or right rear region, the display will show a single arc in the left and/or right rear region and the system will produce a tone. As the vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the display will show the single arc moving closer to the vehicle and the tone will change from a single 1/2 second tone to slow, to fast, to continuous.

The vehicle is close to the obstacle when the display shows one flashing arc and sounds a continuous tone. The following chart shows the warning alert operation when the system is detecting an obstacle:

WARNING ALERTS					
Rear Distance (in/cm)	Greater than 79 in (200 cm)	79-45 in (200-115 cm)	45-31 in (115-80 cm)	31-18 in (80-45 cm)	Less than 18 in (45 cm)
Front Distance (in/cm)	Greater than 47 in (120 cm)	47-39 in (120-100 cm)	39-25 in (100-65 cm)	25-12 in (65-30 cm)	Less than 12 in (30 cm)
Audible Alert (Chime)	None	Single 1/2 Second Tone (for rear only)	Slow (for rear only)	Fast	Continuous
Arcs	None	4th Solid	3rd Solid	2nd Flashing	1st Flashing
Radio Volume Reduced	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

NOTE: ParkSense will reduce the volume of the radio, if on, when the system is sounding an audio tone.

Front Park Assist Audible Alerts

ParkSense will turn off the Front Park Assist audible alert (chime) after approximately three seconds when an obstacle has been detected, the vehicle is stationary, and brake pedal is applied.

Adjustable Chime Volume Settings

The Front and Rear chime volume settings are programmable.

- If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, the settings may be programmed through the Uconnect System. Refer to "Uconnect Settings " in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, the settings may be programmed through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Enabling And Disabling Front And/Or Rear ParkSense

Front ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the Front ParkSense switch.

Rear ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the Rear ParkSense switch.

When the Front or Rear ParkSense switch is pushed to disable the system, the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) will display the "PARKSENSE OFF" message for approximately five seconds. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center

(EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the Front or Rear system is disabled, the EVIC/DID will display the "FRONT PARKSENSE OFF" or "REAR PARKSENSE OFF" message for five seconds, followed by a vehicle graphic with "OFF" in the corresponding side. This vehicle graphic will be displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

NOTE: Arc alerts from the enabled ParkSense system, will interrupt the five second messages, and the EVIC/DID will display the vehicle graphic with the corresponding arcs and "OFF" message.

The Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will be ON when Front or Rear ParkSense is disabled or requires service. The Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will be OFF when the Front or Rear system is enabled. If the Front or Rear ParkSense switch is pushed, and the system requires service, the Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be ON.

Service The ParkSense Park Assist System

During vehicle start up, when the ParkSense System has detected a faulted condition, the instrument cluster will actuate a single chime, once per ignition cycle, and it will display the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS", "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS", or the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message for five seconds. When the gear selector is moved to Reverse and the system has detected a faulted condition, the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) will display a "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS", "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS" or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" pop up message for five seconds. After five seconds, a vehicle graphic will be

displayed with "UNAVAILABLE" at either the front or rear sensor location depending on where the fault is detected. The system will continue to provide arc alerts for the side that is functioning properly. These arc alerts will interrupt the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS", "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS", or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" messages if an object is detected within the five second pop-up duration. The vehicle graphic will remain displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or " Driver Information Display (DID)" for further information.

If "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE REAR SENSORS" or "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE WIPE FRONT SENSORS" appears in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID) make sure the outer surface and the underside of the rear fascia/bumper and/or front fascia/bumper is clean and clear of snow, ice, mud, dirt or other obstruction and then cycle the ignition. If the message continues to appear see an authorized dealer.

If the "PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED" message appears in the EVIC/DID, see an authorized dealer.

Cleaning The ParkSense System

Clean the ParkSense sensors with water, car wash soap and a soft cloth. Do not use rough or hard cloths. Do not scratch or poke the sensors. Otherwise, you could damage the sensors.

ParkSense System Usage Precautions

NOTE:

- Ensure that the front and rear bumper are free of snow, ice, mud, dirt and debris to keep the ParkSense system operating properly.

- Jackhammers, large trucks, and other vibrations could affect the performance of ParkSense.
- When you turn Front or Rear ParkSense off, the instrument cluster will display “FRONT PARKSENSE OFF” or “REAR PARKSENSE OFF.” Furthermore, once you turn Front or Rear ParkSense off, it remains off until you turn it on again, even if you cycle the ignition key.
- When you move the gear selector to the REVERSE position and Front or Rear ParkSense is turned off, the instrument cluster will display ″FRONT PARKSENSE OFF″ or ″REAR PARKSENSE OFF″ message for five seconds, followed by a vehicle graphic with ″OFF″ in the corresponding side. This vehicle graphic will be displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.
- ParkSense, when on, will reduce the volume of the radio when it is sounding a tone.
- Clean the ParkSense sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them. The sensors must not be covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris. Failure to do so can result in the system not working properly. The ParkSense system might not detect an obstacle behind or in front of the fascia/bumper, or it could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind or in front of the fascia/bumper.
- Use the ParkSense switch to turn the ParkSense system off if obstacles such as bicycle carriers, trailer hitches, etc. are placed within 18 in (45 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper. Failure to do so can result in the system misinterpreting a close obstacle as a sensor problem, causing the “PARKSENSE UNAVAILABLE SERVICE REQUIRED” message to be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- On vehicles equipped with a tailgate, ParkSense should be disabled when the tailgate is in the lowered

or open position. A lowered tailgate could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.**
- **Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.

CAUTION!

- **ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! ***(Continued)***

- **The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.**

PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera that allows you to see a image of the rear surroundings of your vehicle whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE or whenever it is initiated through "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu. Whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE, the image will be displayed in the rearview mirror display (if equipped) or Uconnect screen (if equipped) along with a caution note to "check entire surroundings" across the top of the screen. After five seconds this note will disappear.

The ParkView Camera is located to the left of the tailgate handle.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned OFF), the rear Camera mode is exited and the navigation or audio screen appears again.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned ON), the rear Camera image will be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting out of "REVERSE" unless the forward vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h), the transmission is shifted into "PARK" or the ignition is switched to the OFF position.

Whenever the Rear View Camera image is activated through "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu, a display timer for the image is initiated. The image will

continue to be displayed until the display timer exceeds 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) or the touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the Rear View Camera image is pressed.

NOTE: If the vehicle speed remains below 8 mph (13 km/h), the Rear View Camera image will be displayed continuously until deactivated via the touchscreen button "X".

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button to indicate the current active Camera image being displayed is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button to switch the display to Cargo Camera image is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

A touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the Camera image is made available when the vehicle is not in REVERSE gear.

When enabled, active guide lines are overlaid on the image to illustrate the width of the vehicle and its projected backup path based on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines will show separate zones that will help indicate the distance to the rear of the vehicle.

NOTE: For further information about how to access and change the programmable features of the ParkView Rear Backup Camera, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

The following table shows the approximate distances for each zone:

Zones	Distance to the rear of the vehicle
Red	0 - 1 ft (0 - 30 cm)
Yellow	1 ft - 6.5 ft (30 cm - 2m)
Green	6.5 ft or greater (2 m or greater)

WARNING!

Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for the safety of your surroundings and

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

CAUTION!

- **To avoid vehicle damage, ParkView should only be used as a parking aid. The ParkView camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.**
- **To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkView to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using ParkView.**

NOTE: If snow, ice, mud, or any foreign substance builds up on the Camera lens, clean the lens, rinse with water, and dry with a soft cloth. Do not cover the lens.

Turning Rear View Camera image On:

1. Press the "Controls" button located on the bottom of the Uconnect display.
2. Press the "Backup Camera" button to turn the Rear View Camera system ON.

NOTE: Once initiated by the "Backup Camera" button, the Rear View Camera image may be deactivated by pressing the "X" soft button. On deactivation, the previous selected screen will appear.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE — IF EQUIPPED

The overhead console is located on the headliner above the review mirror. The overhead console contains the following features:

- Courtesy/Reading Lights
- Power Sunroof Switch — If Equipped
- Power Sliding Rear Window Switch — If Equipped
- Universal Garage Door Opener — If Equipped

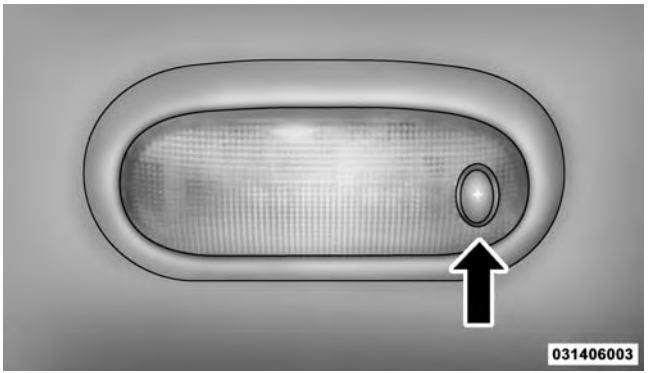
Overhead Console

Courtesy/Reading Lights

Both lights in the overhead console and rear passenger compartment will illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (full right position), or when the

UNLOCK button is pushed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob, if equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pushing on the corresponding lens.

Front Courtesy/Reading Lights



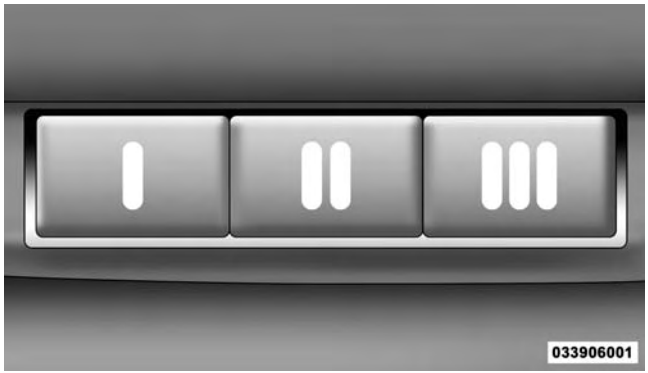
Rear Passenger Courtesy/Reading Light

NOTE: The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pushed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the ignition is turned OFF, they will automatically turn off after 15 minutes.

GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED

HomeLink replaces up to three hand-held transmitters that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, lighting or home security systems. The HomeLink unit is powered by your vehicles 12 Volt battery.

The HomeLink buttons that are located in the overhead console designate the three different HomeLink channels.



HomeLink Buttons

NOTE: HomeLink is disabled when the Vehicle Security Alarm is active.

WARNING!

- **Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are training the universal transceiver. Do not train the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at www.HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.**
- **Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while training the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.**

NOTE: Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.

Before You Begin Programming HomeLink

Ensure your vehicle is parked outside of the garage before you begin programming.

For efficient programming and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal it is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device that is being programmed to the HomeLink system.

To erase the channels place the ignition in the ON/RUN position and push and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up to 20 seconds. The Electronic

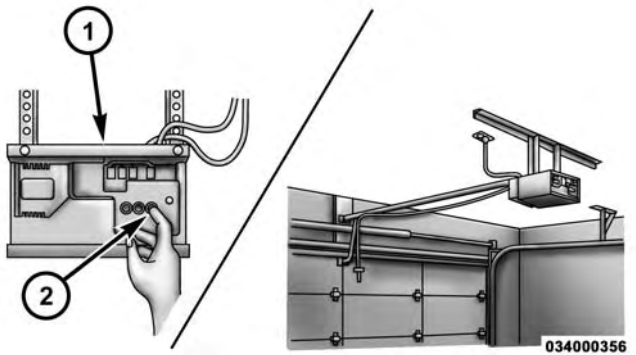
Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), or Driver Interactive Display (DID) will display "CLEARING CHANNELS." Release the buttons when the EVIC/DID displays "CHANNELS CLEARED."

NOTE:

- For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON.
- Erasing all channels should only be performed when programming HomeLink for the first time. Do not erase channels when programming additional buttons.
- If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for information or assistance.

Programming A Rolling Code

For programming garage door openers that were manufactured after 1995. These garage door openers can be identified by the "LEARN" or "TRAIN" button located where the hanging antenna is attached to the garage door opener. It is NOT the button that is normally used to open and close the door. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.



Training The Garage Door Opener

1 — Door Opener
2 — Training Button

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON.

2. Place the hand - held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand - held transmitter button.
4. Continue to hold both buttons until the EVIC/DID display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED," then release both buttons.

NOTE:

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
- If the EVIC/DID displays "DID NOT TRAIN" repeat from Step 2.

5. At the garage door opener motor (in the garage), locate the "LEARN" or "TRAINING" button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is

attached to the garage door opener/device motor. Firmly push and release the "LEARN" or "TRAINING" button. On some garage door openers/devices there may be a light that blinks when the garage door opener/device is in the LEARN/TRAIN mode.

NOTE: You have 30 seconds in which to initiate the next step after the LEARN button has been pushed.

6. Return to the vehicle and push the programmed HomeLink button twice (holding the button for two seconds each time). The EVIC/DID will display "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT." If the garage door opener/device activates, programming is complete.

NOTE: If the garage door opener/device does not activate, push the button a third time (for two seconds) to complete the training.

To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Rolling Code)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. **Do not release the button.**
3. **Without releasing the button** proceed with "Programming A Rolling Code" step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

Programming A Non-Rolling Code

For programming Garage Door Openers manufactured before 1995.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.
2. Place the hand - held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand - held transmitter button.
4. Continue to hold both buttons until the EVIC/DID display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED," then release both buttons.

NOTE:

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
- If the EVIC/DID displays "DID NOT TRAIN" repeat from Step 2.

5. Push and hold the programmed HomeLink button. The EVIC/DID will display "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT." If the garage door opener/device activates, programming is complete.

To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Non — Rolling Code)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. **Do not release the button.**
3. **Without releasing the button** proceed with "Programming A Non-Rolling Code" step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

Canadian/Gate Operator Programming

For programming transmitters in Canada/United States that require the transmitter signals to "time-out" after several seconds of transmission.

Canadian radio frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner.

It may be helpful to unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible overheating of the garage door or gate motor.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON.

2. Place the hand - held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program.

3. Push and hold the HomeLink button while you push and release ("cycle"), your hand - held transmitter every two seconds.
4. Continue to hold both buttons until the EVIC/DID display changes from "CHANNEL # TRAINING" to "CHANNEL # TRAINED," then release both buttons.

NOTE:

- It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in some cases for the channel to train.
- If the EVIC/DID displays "DID NOT TRAIN" repeat from Step 2.

5. Push and hold the programmed HomeLink button. The EVIC/DID will display "CHANNEL # TRANSMIT." If the device is plugged in and activates, programming is complete.

If you unplugged the garage door opener/device for programming, plug it back in at this time.

Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Canadian/Gate Operator)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.

For vehicle's equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, place the ignition in the RUN position with the Engine ON.

2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the EVIC/DID displays "CHANNEL # TRAINING" **Do not release the button.**
3. **Without releasing the button** proceed with "Canadian/Gate Operator Programming" Step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

Using HomeLink

To operate, push and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the programmed

device (i.e. garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.) The hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

Security

It is advised to erase all channels before you sell or turn in your vehicle.

To erase the channels press and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up 20 seconds. The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Interactive Display (DID) will display "CLEARING CHANNELS." Release the buttons when the EVIC/DID displays "CHANNELS CLEARED."

The HomeLink Universal Transceiver is disabled when the Vehicle Security Alarm is active.

Troubleshooting Tips

If you are having trouble programming HomeLink, here are some of the most common solutions:

- Replace the battery in the Garage Door Opener hand-held transmitter.
- Push the LEARN button on the Garage Door Opener to complete the training for a Rolling Code.
- Did you unplug the device for programming and remember to plug it back in?

If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for information or assistance.

WARNING!

- **Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.**
- **Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at HomeLink.com for safety information or assistance.**

General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

POWER SUNROOF — IF EQUIPPED

The power sunroof switch is located on the overhead console between the courtesy/reading lights.

Power Sunroof Switch

WARNING!

- **Never leave children unattended in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Never leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

accessible to children. Do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the power sunroof while operating the power sunroof switch. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.

- **In a collision, there is a greater risk of being thrown from a vehicle with an open sunroof. You could also be seriously injured or killed. Always fasten your seat belt properly and make sure all passengers are also properly secured.**
- **Do not allow small children to operate the sunroof. Never allow your fingers, other body parts, or any object, to project through the sunroof opening. Injury may result.**

Opening Sunroof — Manual Mode

To open the sunroof, push and hold the switch rearward to full open. Any release of the switch will stop the movement. The sunroof and sunshade will remain in a partially opened condition until the sunroof switch is pushed again.

Closing Sunroof — Manual Mode

To close the sunroof, push and hold the switch in the forward position. Any release of the switch will stop the movement and the sunroof will remain in a partially closed condition until the sunroof switch is pushed again.

Opening Sunroof — Express

Push the switch rearward and release it within one-half second and the sunroof will open automatically from any position. The sunroof will open fully and stop automatically. This is called “Express Open”. During Express Open operation, any other actuation of the sunroof switch will stop the sunroof.

Closing Sunroof — Express

Push the switch forward and release it within one-half second and the sunroof will close automatically from any position. The sunroof will close fully and stop automatically. This is called “Express Close.” During Express Close operation, any other actuation of the switch will stop the sunroof.

Pinch Protect Feature

This feature will detect an obstruction in the opening of the sunroof during Express Close operation. If an obstruction in the path of the sunroof is detected, the sunroof will automatically retract. Remove the obstruction if this occurs.

NOTE: If three consecutive sunroof close attempts result in Pinch Protect reversals, Pinch Protect will disable, and the sunroof must be closed in Manual Mode.

Venting Sunroof — Express

Push and release the Vent button within one half second and the sunroof will open to the vent position. This is called "Express Vent" and it will occur regardless of sunroof position. During Express Vent operation, any movement of the switch will stop the sunroof.

Sunshade Operation

The sunshade can be opened manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically as the sunroof opens.

NOTE: The sunshade cannot be closed if the sunroof is open.

Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down, or the sunroof (if equipped) in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting. If the buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening to minimize the buffeting or open any window.

Sunroof Maintenance

Use only a nonabrasive cleaner and a soft cloth to clean the glass panel.

Ignition Off Operation

The power sunroof switch will remain active in Accessory Delay for up to approximately ten minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position. Opening either front door will cancel this feature.

NOTE: Ignition Off time is programmable through the Uconnect System. Refer to "Uconnect Settings/Customer Programmable Features" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS

The auxiliary 12 Volt (13 Amp) power outlets can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard "cigar lighter" plug. The 12 Volt power outlets and USB Port (Charge Only) have a cap attached to the outlet indicating "12V DC," together with either a key symbol, battery symbol, or USB symbol.

A key symbol indicates that the key must be in the ON/RUN or ACC positions for the outlet to provide power. The battery symbol indicates that the outlet is connected to the battery, and can provide power at all times.

NOTE: To ensure proper operation, a MOPAR knob and element must be used.

The auxiliary power outlets can be found in the following locations:

CAUTION!

- **Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watts (13 Amps) power rating is exceeded, the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

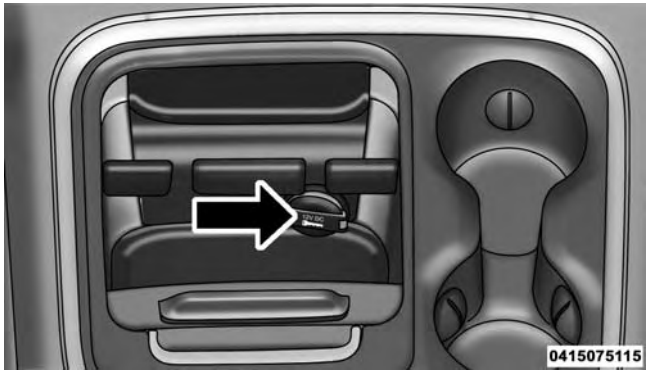
- **Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlets as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

- Lower left and lower right of the center stack when equipped with a bench seat.

Power Outlets — Center Stack

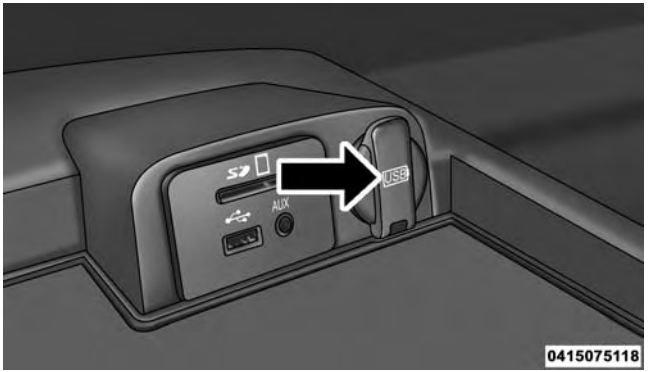
1 — Power Outlet
2 — USB Port (Charge Only)

- Center console when equipped with bucket seats.



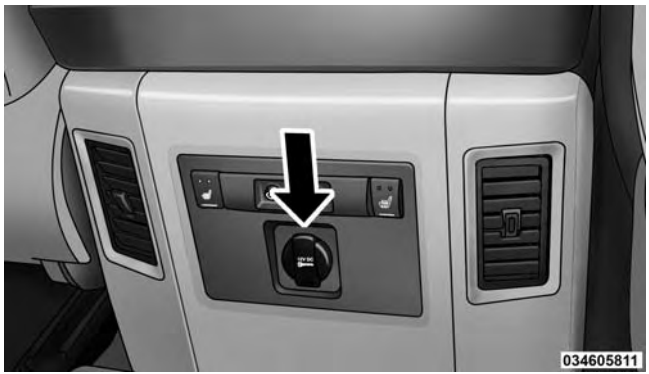
Power Outlet — Center Console

- Inside the upper lid of the center storage compartment — if equipped.

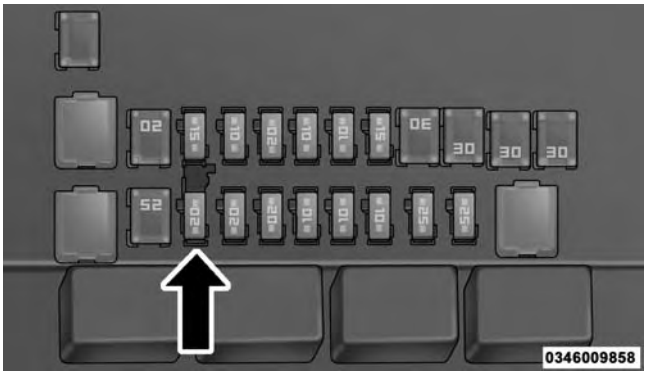


USB Port (Charge Only) — Upper Lid

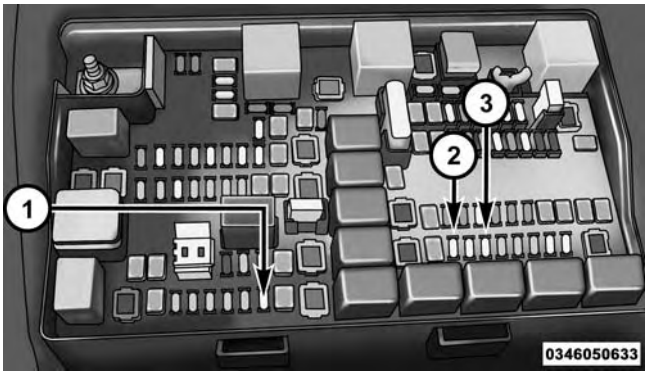
- Rear of the center console storage compartment — Quad Cab or Crew Cab.



Power Outlet — Rear Center Console



Power Outlet — Rear Center Console Fuse



Power Outlet Fuse Locations

1 — F104 Fuse 20 A Yellow Power Outlet Center Console Bin / USB Port (Charge Only)
2 — F90–F91 Fuse 20 A Yellow Power Outlet Rear Center Console
3 — F93 Fuse 20 A Yellow Cigar Lighter Instrument Panel

The key symbol indicates that this outlet can supply power when the key is in the ON/RUN or ACC positions.

All accessories connected to the outlet(s) should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:

- **Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.**
- **Do not touch with wet hands.**
- **Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.**
- **If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.**

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER — IF EQUIPPED

A removable cigar lighter and ash receiver are available. For vehicles with a bench seat the cupholder tray can be used to hold the ash receiver.

POWER INVERTER — IF EQUIPPED

A 115 Volt (150 Watts Maximum) outlet is located on the center stack of the instrument panel, to the right of the radio. This outlet can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 150 Watts. Certain high-end video game consoles will exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.

The power inverter is designed with built-in overload protection. If the power rating of 150 Watts is exceeded, the power inverter will automatically shut down. Once the electrical device has been removed from the outlet the inverter should automatically reset.

Power Inverter Outlet

To turn on the power outlet, simply plug in the device. The outlet automatically turns off when the device is unplugged.

NOTE: Due to built-in overload protection, the power inverter will shut down if the power rating is exceeded.

WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:
- **Do not insert any objects into the receptacles.**
- **Do not touch with wet hands.**
- **Close the lid when not in use.**
- **If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.**

AUXILIARY SWITCHES — IF EQUIPPED

There can be up to five auxiliary switches located in the lower switch bank of the instrument panel which can be used to power various electronic devices and PTO (Power Take Off) – If Equipped. If Power Take Off is equipped, it will take the place of the fifth Auxiliary switch. Connections to the switches are found under the hood in the connectors attached to the auxiliary Power Distribution Center.

You have the ability to configure the functionality of the auxiliary switches via the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). All switches can now be configured for setting the switch type operation to latching or momentary, power source of either battery or ignition, and ability to hold last state across key cycles.

NOTE: Holding last state conditions are met when switch type is set to latching and power source is set to ignition.

For further information on using the auxiliary switches, please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide by accessing www.rambodybuilder.com and choosing the appropriate links.

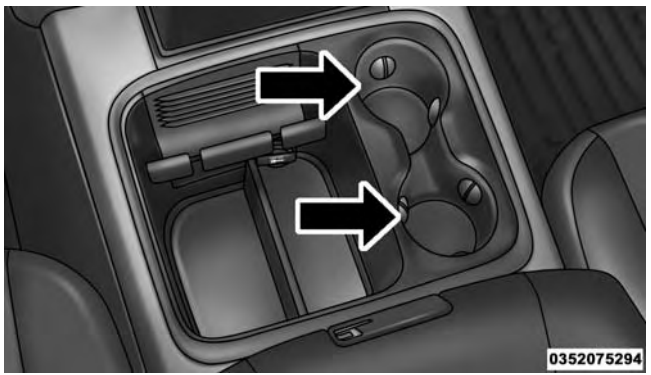
CUPHOLDERS

Front Seat Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats)

The cupholders are located on the backside of the center portion of the front seat (20). Fold down the center section of the front seat to gain access to the cupholders.

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Floor Storage Bin

For vehicles equipped with bucket seats two cupholders are located next to the center console storage bin.



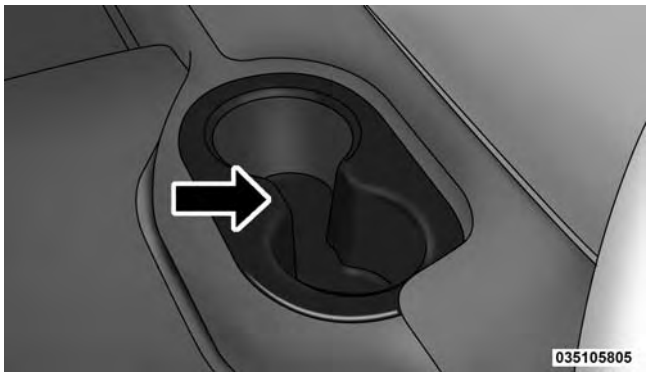
Front Cupholders For Bucket Seats

Rear Cupholders — If Equipped

Some vehicles are equipped with rear cupholders located in the center armrest.

Rear Armrest Cupholder

Some vehicles may be equipped with a rear cupholder that consists of two cup wells for rear passenger convenience.

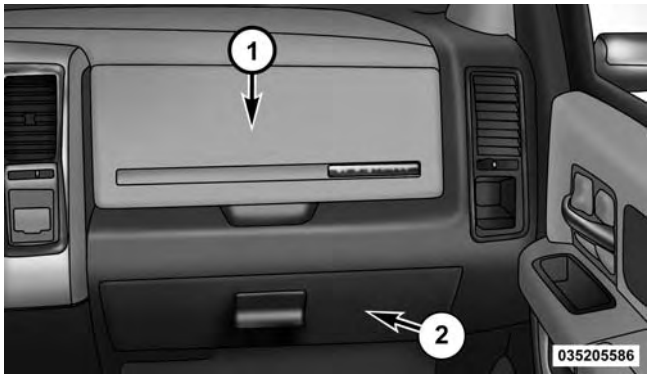


Rear Cup Wells

STORAGE

Glove Compartment

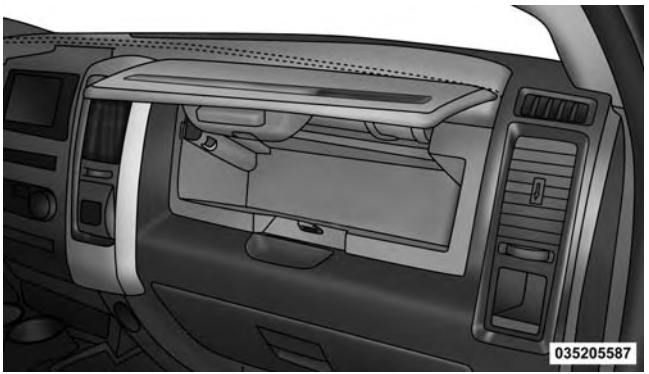
The glove compartment is located on the passenger side of the instrument panel and features both an upper and lower storage area.



Glove Compartment

1 — Upper Glove Compartment
2 — Lower Glove Compartment

To open the upper glove compartment push upward on the handle release. The glove compartment door will automatically open.



Upper Glove Compartment

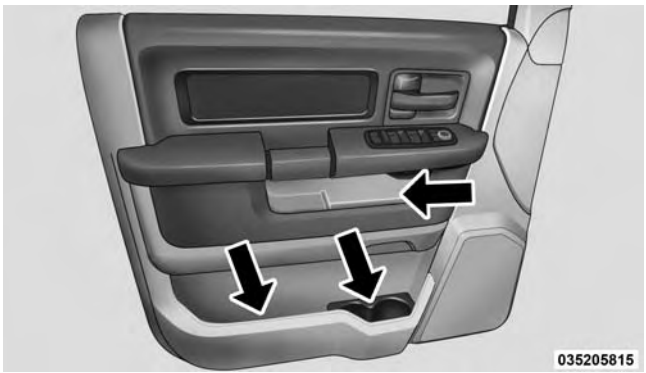
To open the lower glove compartment, pull on the handle to release the latch and lower the glove compartment door.

Lower Glove Compartment

Door Storage

Front Door Storage — If Equipped

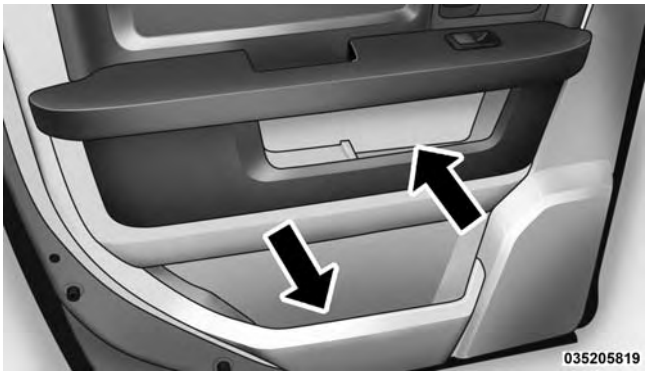
Storage areas and bottle holders (drivers side only) are located in the door trim panels.



Front Door Storage

Rear Door Storage — If Equipped

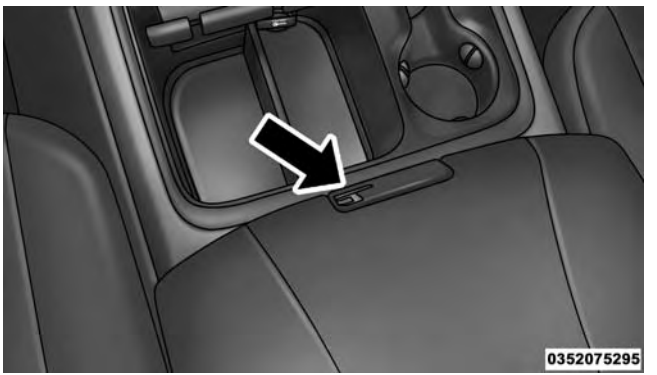
Storage compartments are located in both the driver and passenger rear door trim panels.



Rear Door Storage

Center Storage Compartment — If Equipped

The center storage compartment is located between the driver and passenger seats. The storage compartment provides an armrest and contains both and upper and lower storage area.

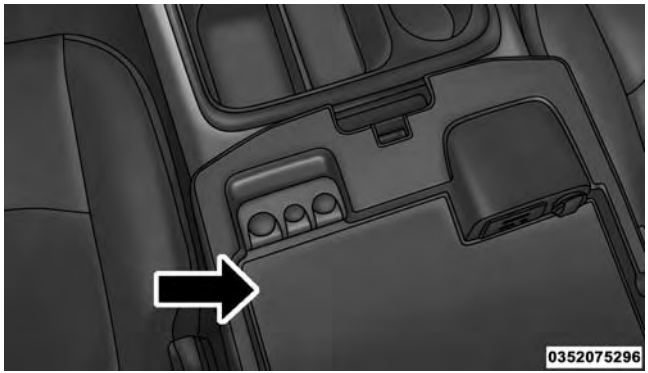


Center Storage Compartment

WARNING!

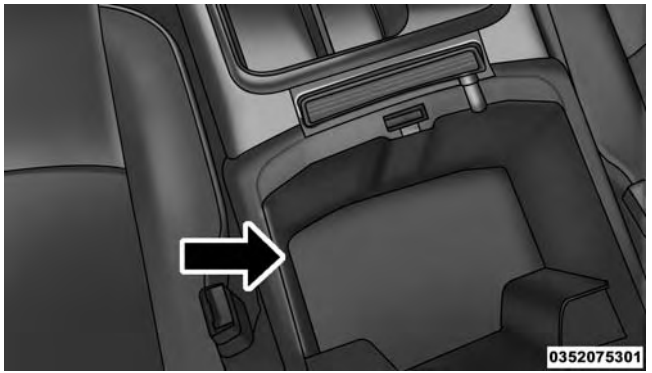
- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or a collision. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In a collision, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

Pull on the upper handle on the front of the armrest to raise the cover. The upper storage area contains a USB power outlet that can be used to power small electrical devices, refer to "Electrical Power Outlets" for further information.



Upper Storage Compartment

With the upper lid closed, pull on the lower handle to open the lower storage bin.

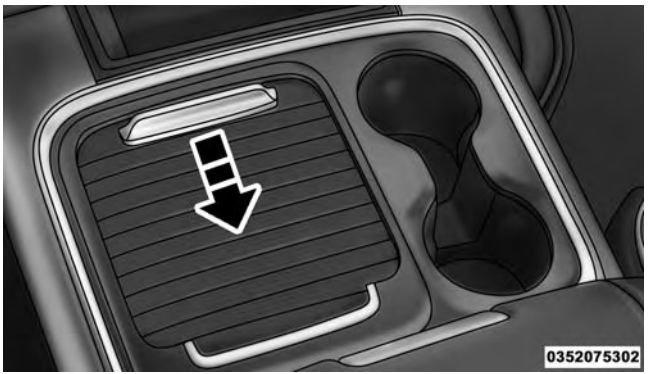


Lower Storage Bin

WARNING!

Do not operate this vehicle with a console compartment lid in the open position. Driving with the console compartment lid open may result in injury in a collision.

The center console is equipped with a front storage bin located next to the cupholders. This storage bin may be equipped with a manual sliding top door.



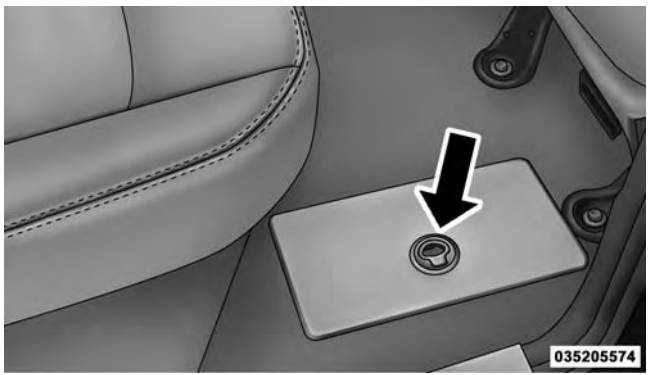
Front Storage Bin With Door — If Equipped

Second Row In-Floor Storage Bin — If Equipped

In-floor storage bins are located in front of the second row seats and can be used for extra storage. The storage bins have removable liners that can be easily removed for cleaning.

To open in-floor storage bin, lift upward on the handle of the latch and open the lid.

NOTE: The front seat may have to be moved forward to fully open the lid.



In-Floor Storage Bin And Latch

Opened Storage Bin

Seatback Storage

Located in the back of both the driver and passenger front seats are pockets that can be used for storage.

Drivers Side Seatback Storage

Storage (Regular Cab)

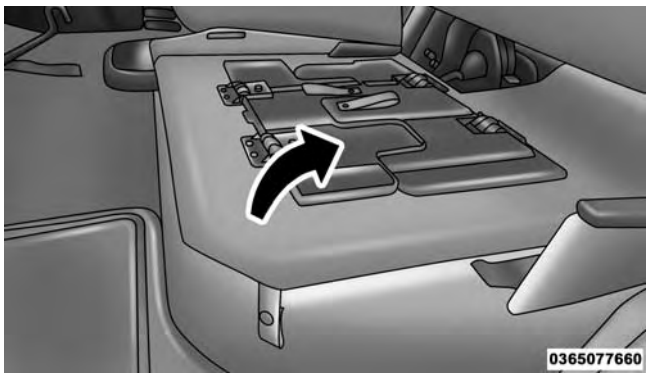
The storage bin is located behind the front seats and runs the length of the cab.

Storage Bin

Storage and Seats (Crew Cab)

The Crew Cab models provide additional storage under the rear seats. Lift the seats to access the storage compartment.

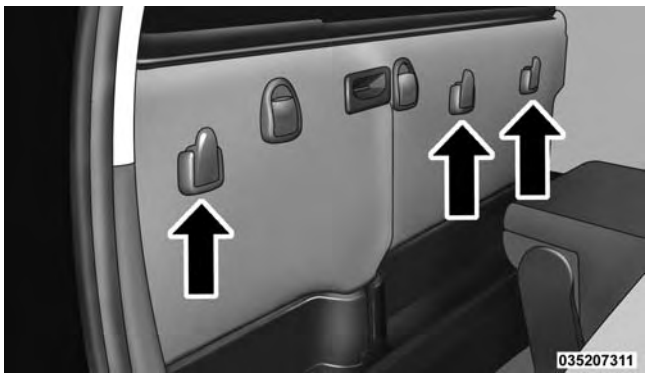
To open the storage compartments, lift upward on the fold flat lid.



Crew Cab Storage

Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers (Regular Cab Models)

Retainer hooks which will hold plastic grocery bag handles are built into the back panel of the cab, behind the rear seat.



Grocery Bag Hooks

REAR WINDOW FEATURES

Rear Window Defroster

The rear window defroster button is located on the climate control panel. Push this button to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator in the button will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 10 minutes. For an additional five minutes of operation, push the button a second time.

NOTE: To prevent excessive battery drain, use the rear window defroster only when the engine is operating.

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- **Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.**
- **Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.**
- **Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.**

Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

The switch for the power sliding rear window is located on the overhead console.

Rear Window Switch

Push the switch to the right to open the glass. Pull the switch to the left to close the glass.

Manual Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

FOLD FLAT LOAD FLOOR — IF EQUIPPED

Quad Cab and Crew Cab models with a 60/40 rear seat may be equipped with a folding load floor.

WARNING!

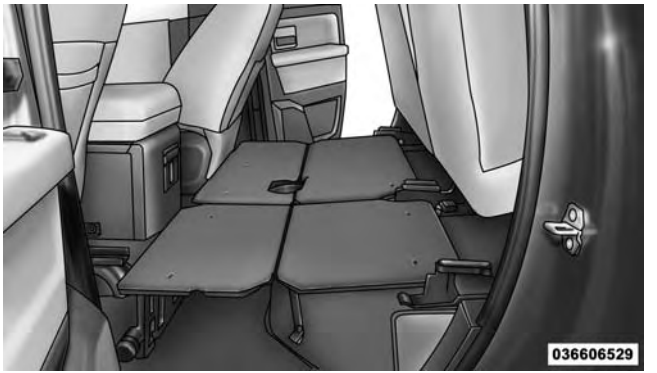
Do not operate the vehicle with loose items stored on the load floor. While driving or in an accident you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. Loose objects stored on the load floor may move around with force and strike occupants, resulting in serious or fatal injury.

Unfolding The Load Floor/Quad Cab

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.

Unfolding The Load Floor

2. Grasp the knob on the load floor and lift the knob until the load floor unfolds into position.

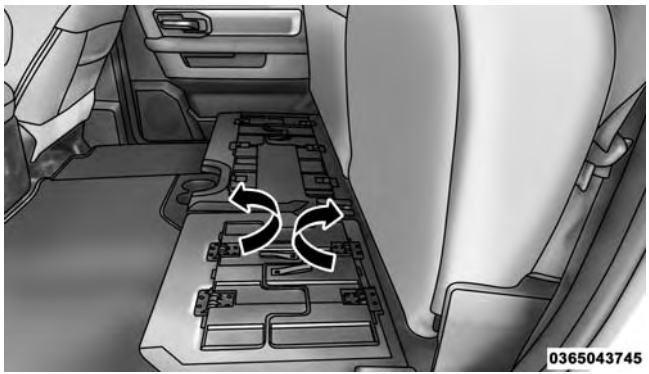


Load Floor In Open Position

3. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.

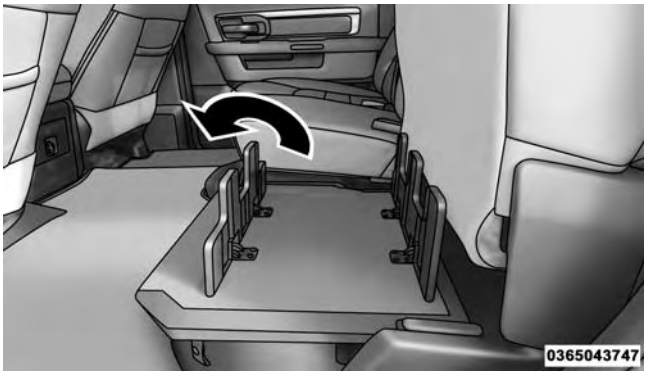
Unfolding The Load Floor/Crew Cab

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.



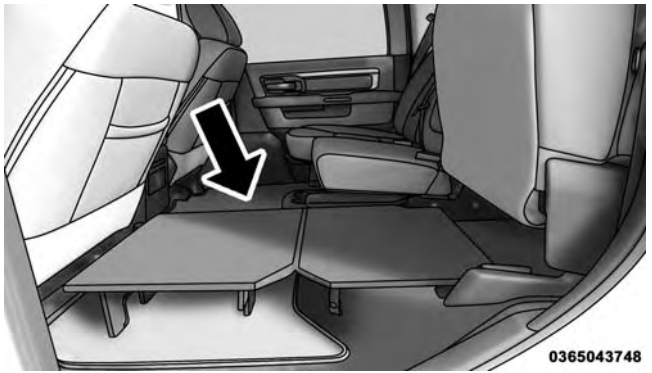
Load Floor Legs In Stowed Position

2. Unfold both the legs using the straps.



Load Floor Legs In Opened Position

3. Lift the front panel until the load floor unfolds into position.



Load Floor In Open Position

4. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.

Positioning The Load Floor For Storage Access Under The Seat

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.
2. Unsnap the securing snap located at either side of the load floor.
3. Lift the load floor up to access storage under the load floor.

WARNING!

Do not drive with the load floor in the up position. When stopping fast or in an accident, the load floor could move to the down position causing serious injury.

Quad Cab — If Equipped

Load Floor Securing Straps/Quad Cab

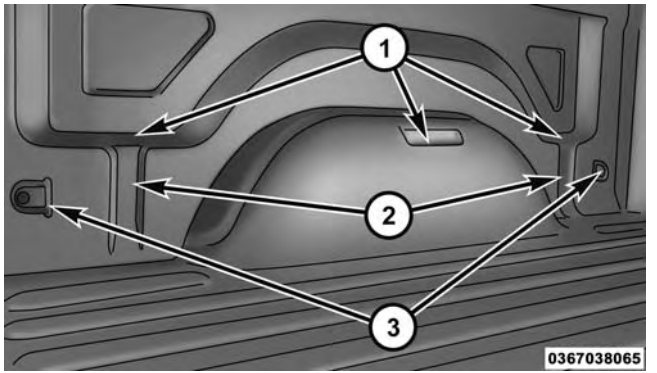
Crew Cab — If Equipped

Load Floor Securing Straps/Crew Cab

4. Reverse the procedure to put the load floor back in the secured down position before you operate the vehicle.

PICKUP BOX

The pickup box has many features designed for utility and convenience.



Pick Up Box Features

1 — Upper Load Floor Indents
2 — Bulk Head Dividers
3 — Cleats

NOTE: If you are installing a Toolbox, Ladder Rack or Headache Rack at the front of the Pickup Box, you must use Mopar Box Reinforcement Brackets that are available from your authorized dealer.

You can carry wide building materials (sheets of plywood, etc.) by building a raised load floor. Place lumber across the box in the indentations provided above the wheel housings and in the bulkhead dividers to form the floor.

WARNING!

- **The pickup box is intended for load carrying purposes only, not for passengers, who should sit in seats and use seat belts.**
- **Care should always be exercised when operating a vehicle with unrestrained cargo. Vehicle speeds may need to be reduced. Severe turns or rough roads may cause shifting or bouncing of the cargo**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

that may result in vehicle damage. If wide building materials are to be frequently carried, the installation of a support is recommended. This will restrain the cargo and transfer the load to the pickup box floor.

- **If you wish to carry more than 600 lbs (272 kg) of material suspended above the wheelhouse, supports must be installed to transfer the weight of the load to the pickup box floor or vehicle damage may result. The use of proper supports will permit loading up to the rated payload.**
- **Unrestrained cargo may be thrown forward in an accident causing serious or fatal injury.**

There are stampings in the sheet metal on the inner side bulkheads of the box in front of and behind both wheel housings. Place wooden boards across the box from side to side to create separate load compartments in the pickup box.

There are four tie-down cleats bolted to the lower sides of the pickup box that can sustain loads up to 1000 lbs (450 kg) total.

Cargo Camera — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Cargo Camera that allows you to see an image of the inside of the pickup box. The image will be displayed in the Uconnect screen.

A display timer is initiated when the cargo camera image is displayed. The image will continue to be displayed until the display timer exceeds 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) or the touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the Cargo Camera image is pressed.

NOTE: If the vehicle speed remains below 8 mph (13 km/h), the cargo camera image will be displayed continuously until the touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the Cargo Camera image is pressed.

The Cargo Camera is located in the bottom center area of the center high-mounted stoplamp (CHMSL).

A touchscreen button to indicate the current active Camera image being displayed is made available whenever the Cargo camera image is displayed.

Also, a touchscreen button to switch the display to Rear View camera image is made available whenever the Cargo camera image is displayed.

A touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the camera image is made available when the vehicle is not in REVERSE gear.

NOTE: If snow, ice, mud, or any foreign substance builds up on the camera lens, clean the lens, rinse with water, and dry with a soft cloth. Do not cover the lens.

Turning Cargo Camera On Or Off — With Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN

1. Press the "Controls" button located on the bottom of the Uconnect display.
2. Press the "Cargo Camera" button to turn the Cargo Camera system ON.

NOTE: Once initiated by the "Cargo Camera" button, the Cargo Camera image may be deactivated by pressing the "X" soft button. On deactivation, the previous selected screen will appear.

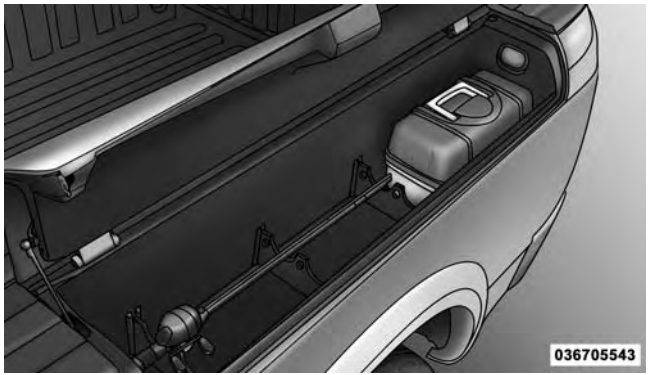
RAMBOX — IF EQUIPPED

The RamBox system is an integrated pickup box storage and cargo management system consisting of three features:

- Integrated box side storage bins
- Cargo extender/divider
- Bed rail tie-down system

RamBox Integrated Box Side Storage Bins

Cargo storage bins are located on both sides of the pickup box. The cargo storage bins provide watertight, lockable, illuminated storage for up to 150 lbs (68 kg) for 1500 series vehicles or 300 lbs (136 kg) for 2500 and 3500 series vehicles of evenly distributed cargo.



RamBox Cargo Storage Bins

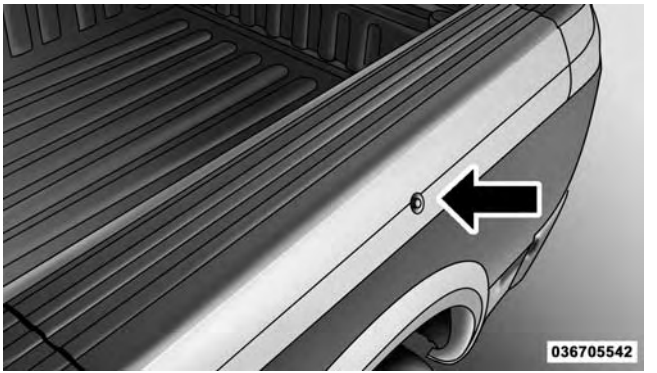
CAUTION!

Failure to follow the following items could cause damage to the vehicle:

- **Assure that all cargo inside the storage bins is properly secured.**
- **Do not exceed cargo weight rating of 150 lb (68 kg) 1500 series vehicles or 300 lbs (136 kg) for 2500 and 3500 series vehicles per bin.**

To open a storage bin with the RamBox unlocked, push and release the button located on the lid. The RamBox lid will open upward to allow hand access. Lift the lid to fully open.

NOTE: RamBox will not open when the pushbutton is pushed if the RamBox is locked.



RamBox Pushbutton And Lock

The interior of the RamBox will automatically illuminate when the lid is opened. In addition to the automatic illumination switch, there is a manual on/off switch located at the rear of each storage bin. Pushing the switch once will turn off the bin lights, pushing the switch again will turn the lights back on.

RamBox Light Switch

CAUTION!

Leaving the lid open for extended periods of time could cause the vehicle battery to discharge. If the lid is required to stay open for extended periods of time,

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

it is recommended that the bin lights be turned off manually using the on/off switch.

Cargo bins feature two removable drain plugs (to allow water to drain from bins). To remove plug, pull up on the edge. To install push plug downward into drain hole.

NOTE: Provisions are provided in the bins for cargo dividers and shelf supports. These accessories (in addition to other RamBox accessories) are available from MOPAR.

Locking And Unlocking RamBox

Push and release the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the RKE Key Fob to lock and unlock all doors, the tailgate and the RamBox (if equipped). Refer to "Remote Keyless Entry" for further details. The RamBox storage bins can be locked using the vehicle key. To lock and unlock the

storage bin, insert the key into the keyhole on the pushbutton and turn clockwise to lock or counterclockwise to unlock. Always return the key to the upright (vertical) position before removing the key from the pushbutton.

CAUTION!

- **Ensure cargo bin lids are closed and latched before moving or driving vehicle.**
- **Loads applied to the top of the bin lid should be minimized to prevent damage to the lid and latching/hinging mechanisms.**
- **Damage to the RamBox bin may occur due to heavy/sharp objects placed in bin that shift due to vehicle motion. In order to minimize potential for damage, secure all cargo to prevent movement and protect inside surfaces of bin from heavy/sharp objects with appropriate padding.**

RamBox Safety Warning

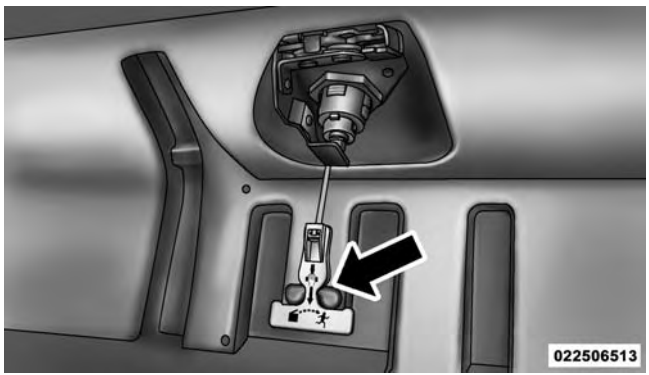
Carefully follow these warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

WARNING!

- **Always close the storage bin covers when your vehicle is unattended.**
- **Do not allow children to have access to the storage bins. Once in the storage bin, young children may not be able to escape. If trapped in the storage bin, children can die from suffocation or heat stroke.**
- **In an accident, serious injury could result if the storage bin covers are not properly latched.**
- **Do not drive the vehicle with the storage bin covers open.**
- **Keep the storage bin covers closed and latched while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Do not use a storage bin latch as a tie down.**

RamBox Storage Bin Cover Emergency Release Lever — If Equipped

As a security measure, a Storage Bin Cover Emergency Release is built into the storage bin cover latching mechanism.



Storage Bin Cover Emergency Release Lever

NOTE: In the event of an individual being locked inside the storage bin, the storage bin cover can be opened from inside of the bin by pulling on the glow-in-the-dark lever attached to the storage bin cover latching mechanism.

Bed Extender — If Equipped

The bed extender has three functional positions:

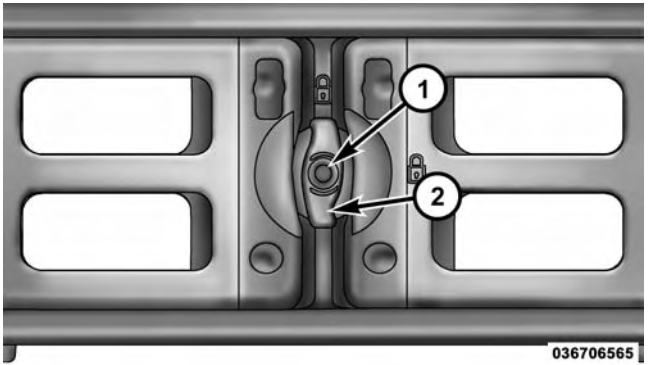
- Storage Position
- Divider Position
- Extender Position

Storage Position

The storage position for the bed extender is at the front of the truck bed which maximizes the bed cargo area when not in use.

To install the bed extender into the storage position, perform the following:

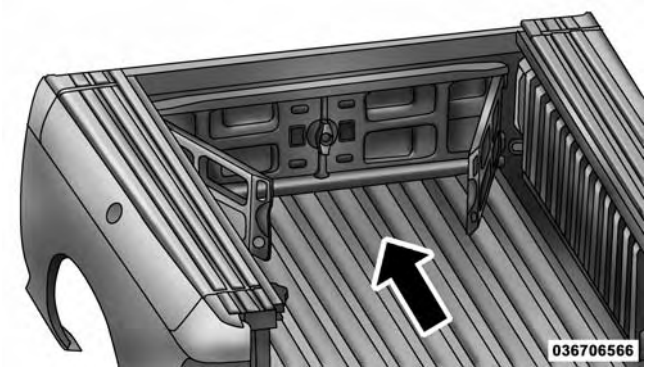
1. Make sure the center handle is unlocked using the vehicle key and rotate the center handle vertically to release the extender side gates.



Center Handle And Lock

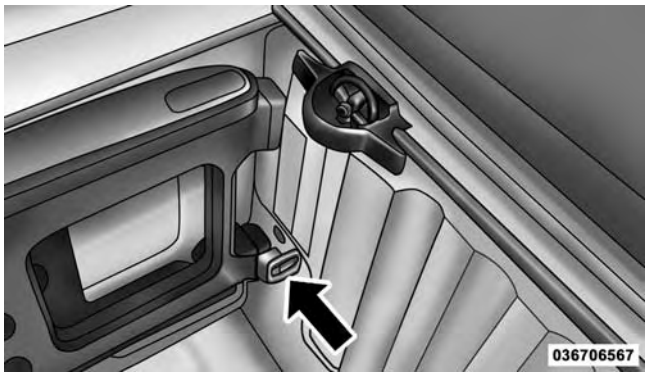
1 — Center Handle Lock
2 — Handle

2. With the side gates open, position the extender fully forward in the bed against the front panel.



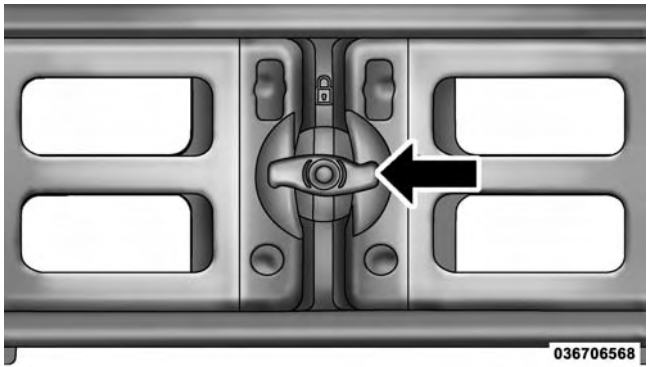
Storage Position

3. Rotate the side gates closed allowing the outboard ends to be positioned in front of the cargo tie down loops.



Cargo Tie Down Loop

4. Rotate the center handle horizontally to secure the side gates in the closed position.



Side Gates Closed

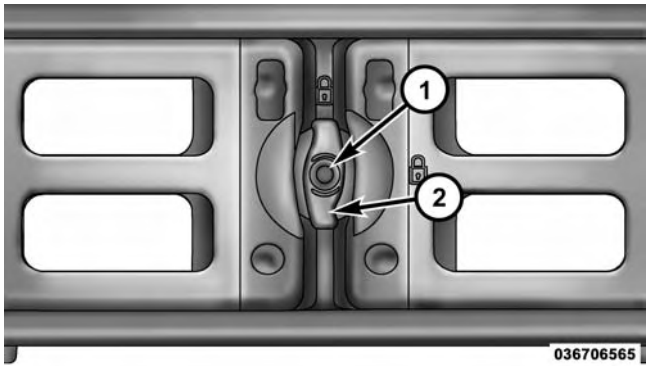
5. Lock the center handle using the vehicle key to secure the panel into place.

Divider Position

The divider position is intended for managing your cargo and assisting in keeping cargo from moving around the bed. There are 11 divider slots along the bed inner panels which allow for various positions to assist in managing your cargo.

To install the bed extender into a divider position perform the following:

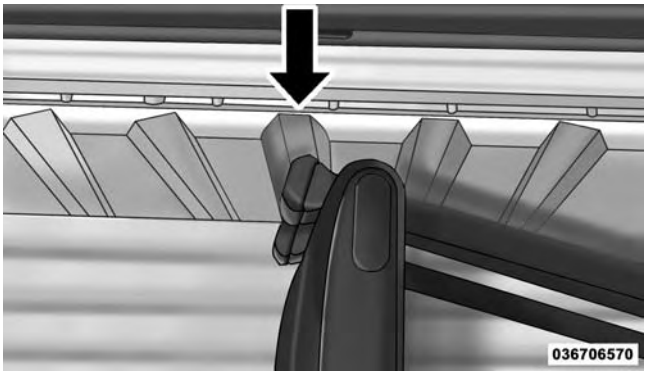
1. Make sure the center handle is unlocked using the vehicle key and rotate the center handle vertically to release the extender side gates.



Center Handle And Lock

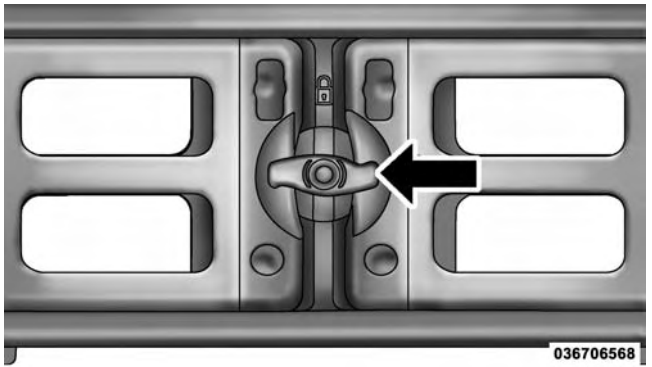
1 — Center Handle Lock
2 — Handle

2. With the side gates open, position the extender so the outboard ends align with the intended slots in the sides of the bed.



Aligning Gate To Slots

3. Rotate the side gates closed so that the outboard ends are secured into the intended slots of the bed.
4. Rotate the center handle horizontally to secure the side gates in the closed position.

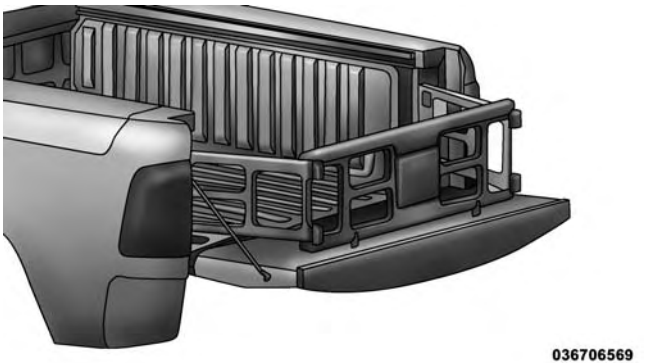


Side Gates Closed

5. Lock the center handle to secure the panel into place.

Extender Position

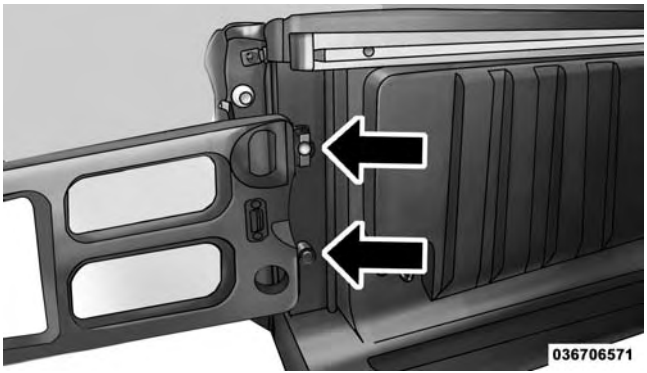
The extender position allows you to load the bed of the truck beyond the tail gate. The bed extender will add an additional 15 in (38 cm) in the back of the truck when additional cargo room is needed. The extender position utilizes a locating pin and rotating handle located on both sides of the truck bed near the tailgate.



Extender Position

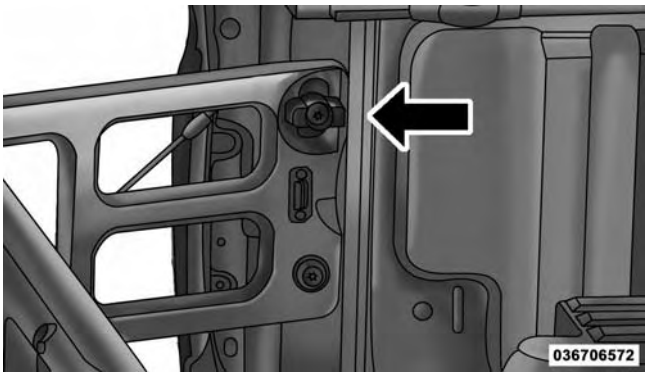
To install the bed extender into the extender position perform the following:

1. Lower the tailgate.
2. Make sure the center handle is unlocked and rotate the center handle vertically in order to release the extender side gates.
3. Fit the end of the side gate ends onto the pin and handle.



Extender Installation

4. Rotate the handles to the horizontal position to secure into place.



Locking Tab

WARNING!

To reduce the risk of potential injury or property damage:

- **Cargo must be secured.**
- **Do not exceed cargo load rating of your vehicle.**
- **Secure all loads to truck utilizing cargo tie downs.**
- **Extender should not be used as cargo tie down.**
- **When vehicle is in motion do not exceed 150 lbs (68 kg) load on the tailgate.**
- **The bed extender is not intended for off road use.**
- **When not in use, the extender/divider should be in stowed or divider position with the tailgate closed.**
- **When in use all handles are to be in the locked position.**

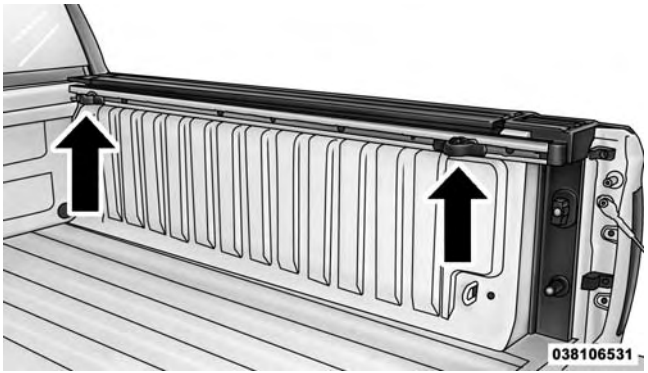
(Continued)

Bed Rail Tie-Down System

CAUTION!

The maximum load per cleat should not exceed 250 lbs (113 kg) and the angle of the load on each cleat should not exceed 45 degrees above horizontal, or damage to the cleat or cleat rail may occur.

There are two adjustable cleats on each side of the bed that can be used to assist in securing cargo.

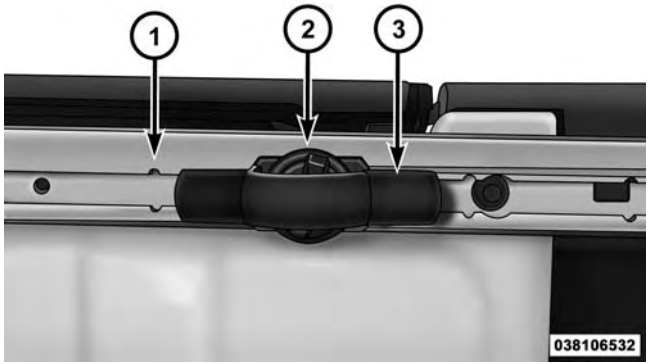


Adjustable Cleats

Each cleat must be located and tightened down in one of the detents, along either rail, in order to keep cargo properly secure.

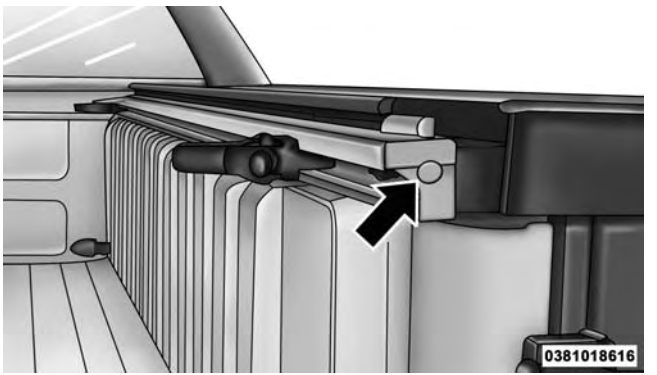
To move the cleat to any position on the rail, turn the nut counterclockwise, approximately three turns. Then pull

out on the cleat and slide it to the detent nearest the desired location. Make sure the cleat is seated in the detent and tighten the nut.



1 — Utility Rail Detent
2 — Cleat Retainer Nut
3 — Utility Rail Cleat

To remove the cleats from the utility rail, remove the end cap screw located in the center of the end cap, using a #T30 Torx head driver. Remove the end cap and slide the cleat off the end of the rail.



Utility Rail End Cap

SLIDE-IN CAMPERS

Camper Applications

Certain truck models are not recommended for slide-in campers. To determine if your vehicle is excluded, please refer to the "Consumer Information Truck-Camper Loading" document available from your authorized dealer. For safety reasons, follow all instructions in this important document.

NOTE: When a cap or pickup camper is installed on a vehicle, an alternate Center High-Mounted Stop Light (CHMSL) must be provided.

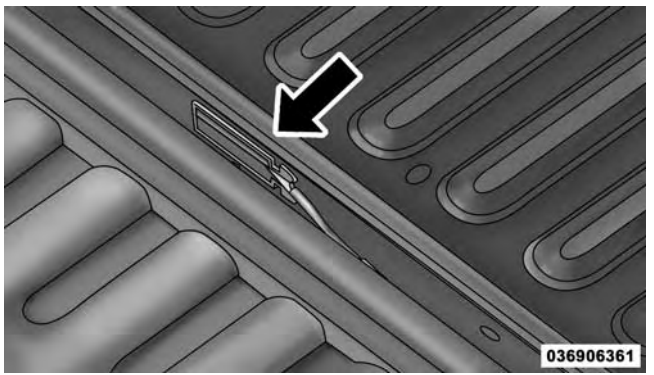
EASY-OFF TAILGATE

To simplify mounting of a camper unit with an overhang, the tailgate can be removed.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a rear camera or RKE (Remote Keyless Entry) the electrical connector must be disconnected prior to removing the tailgate.

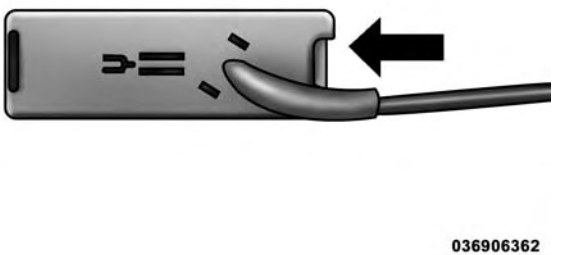
Disconnecting The Rear Camera Or Remote Keyless Entry — If Equipped

1. Open the tailgate to access the rear camera or RKE (Remote Keyless Entry) connector bracket located on the rear sill.



Connector Bracket

2. Remove the connector bracket from the sill by pushing inward in the locking tab.



Locking Tab

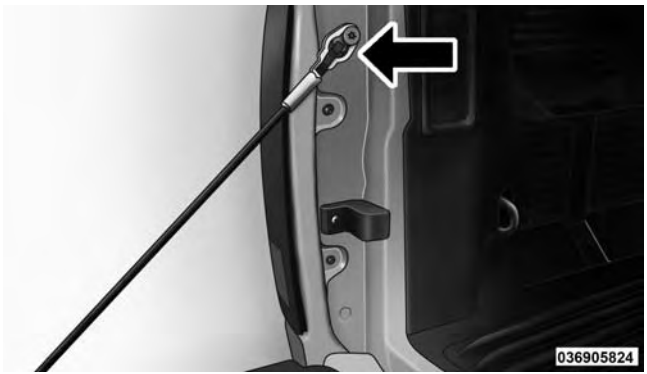
3. Disconnect the chassis wiring harness, ensuring the connector bracket does not fall into the sill.

4. Connect the chassis plug and bracket (provided in the glove box) to the chassis wiring harness and insert the bracket back into the sill.
5. Connect the tailgate plug (provided in the glove box) to the tailgate wiring harness to ensure that the terminals do not corrode.
6. Tape the tailgate harness and bracket against the forward-facing surface of the tailgate. This will prevent damaging the connector and bracket when storing or reinstalling the tailgate.

Removing The Tailgate

1. Disconnect the wiring harness for the rear camera and or power locks (if equipped), refer to "Disconnecting the Rear Camera — If Equipped" in this section.
2. Unlatch the tailgate and remove the support cables by releasing the lock tang from the pivot.

NOTE: Make sure tailgate is supported when removing support cables.



Locking Tang

3. Position the tailgate on a 45 degree angle.
4. Raise the right side of the tailgate until the right side pivot clears the hanger bracket.

5. Slide the entire tailgate to the right to free the left side pivot.
6. Remove the tailgate from the vehicle.

NOTE: Do not carry the tailgate loose in the truck pickup box.

WARNING!

To avoid inhaling carbon monoxide, which is deadly, the exhaust system on vehicles equipped with "Cap or Slide-In Campers" should extend beyond the overhanging camper compartment and be free of leaks.

Locking Tailgate

The lock is located next to the tailgate handle. The tailgate can be locked using the vehicle key or by locking the truck with the key-fob if equipped with remote keyless entry.

TRI-FOLD TONNEAU COVER — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover which consists of different features:

- Easy Tri-Fold cover
- Tonneau fore aft locator
- Crosscar inside bed locator
- Front and rear clamps
- Stowage strap
- Locking Capability

NOTE: The Tonneau Cover can be folded up and secured at the front of the box without removing completely.

Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover Removal

To remove the Tonneau Cover follow the following steps:

1. Lower the tailgate to gain access to the first set of two tonneau cover clamps located on the driver and passengers under side of the tonneau cover.

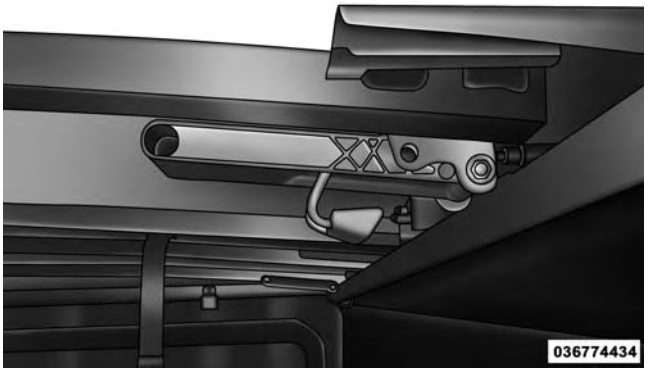
Clamped Position

NOTE: If clamp wire is damaged replace immediately.

2. Pull down on the first set of clamps on both driver and passenger sides to the semi clamped position.

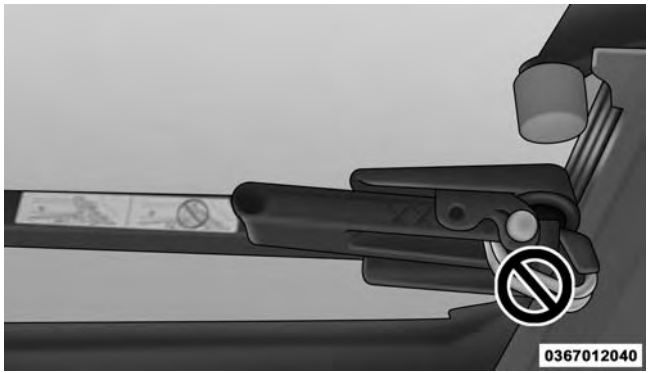
Semi Clamped Position

3. Pull down on the clamp wire and push the clamp up into the proper released position.



Proper Released Position

NOTE: Be sure the clamp and clamp wire is in the proper released position.



Improper Clamp Wire Released Position

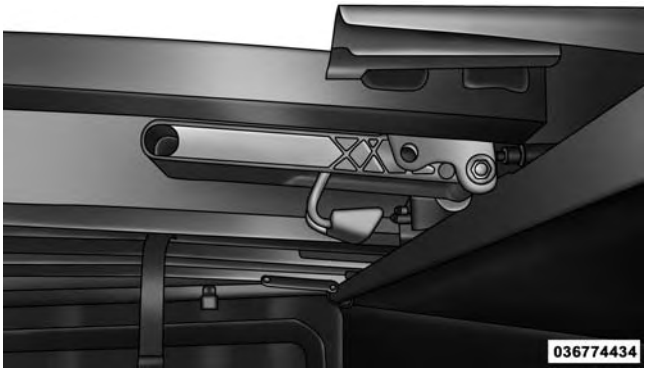
CAUTION!

Make sure the tonneau cover clamp and clamp wire is in the proper released position. If the clamp and clamp wire is not properly released, damage to the tonneau cover material will result.

4. Pick up on the tonneau cover and fold it back onto the second panel.
5. Pick up on the cover and fold it back onto the third panel.
6. Once in the third panel position pull down on the second set of clamps on both driver and passenger sides to the semi clamped position.

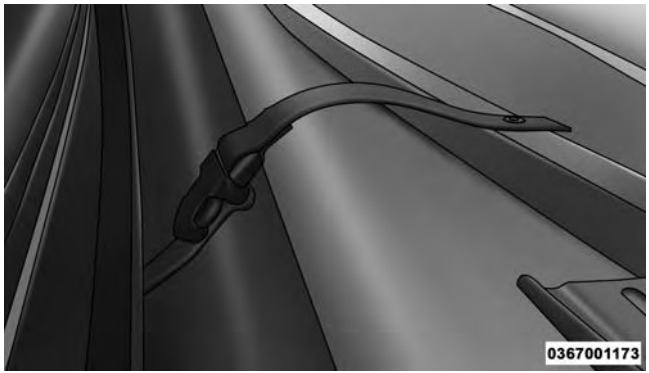
Semi Clamped Position

7. Pull down on the clamp wire and push the clamp up into the proper released position.



Proper Released Position

8. Be sure to clip both stowage straps together to insure the cover stays together.



Stowage Strap

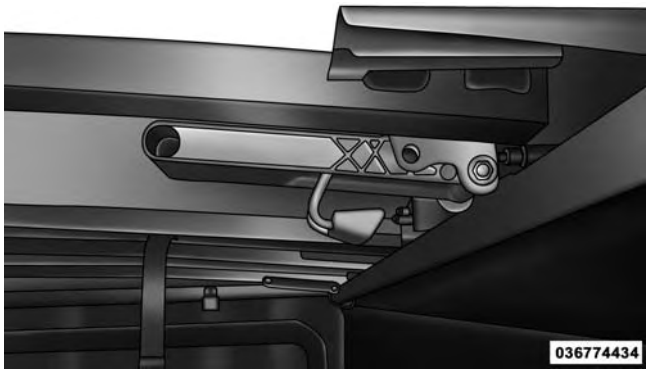
9. With two people remove the cover.

NOTE: Be sure the Tonneau Cover has been folded completely before removing.

Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover Installation

To install the Tonneau Cover follow the following steps:

1. Position the folded Tonneau Cover on the truck bed and push the Cover forward against the front of the truck bed. The Tonneau Cover centers itself when placed on the vehicle.
2. Pull down on the first set of clamp handles to release the clamps from the stowed position.



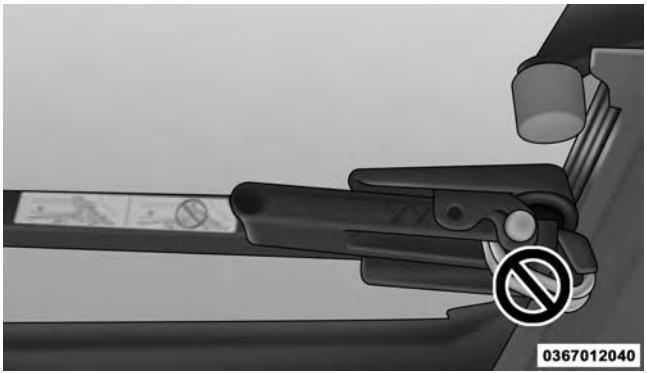
Stowed Position

3. Push clamp wires up and under the flange of box (or flange of Ram Box rail, if equipped) to the semi clamped position.

Semi Clamped Position

4. Push clamp handles upward to the clamped position to properly engage the clamps.

Clamped Position



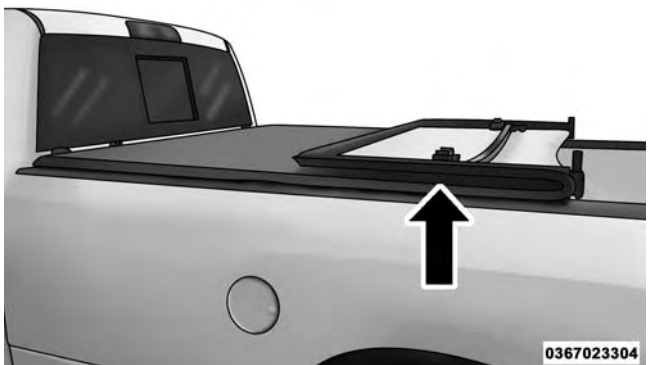
Improper Clamp Position

NOTE: Once clamped, be sure the clamps are not partially clamped to the truck bed flange.

5. Disengage the stowage straps.

6. Unfold Tonneau Cover to the intermediate position.

NOTE: The vehicle cannot be driven when the Tonneau Cover is in this position.

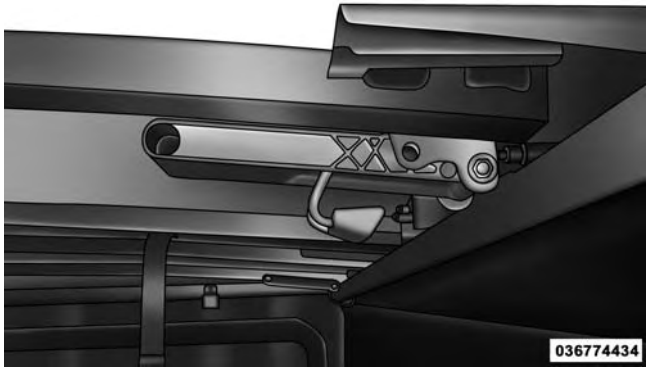


Intermediate Position (Vehicle Cannot Be Driven)

7. Completely unfold the Tonneau Cover.

Fully Unfolded Position

8. Pull down on the second set of clamp handles to release the clamps from the stowed position.

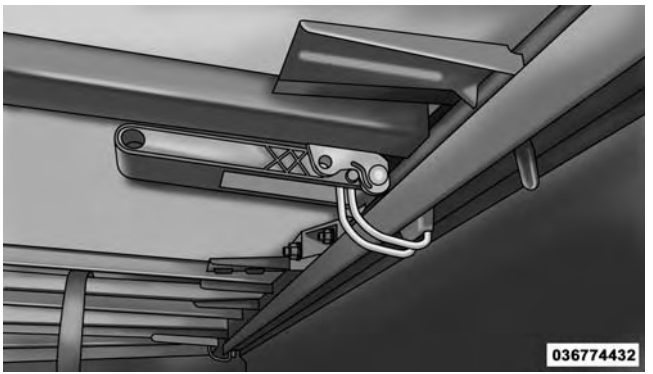


Stowed Position

9. Push clamp wires up and under the flange of box (or flange of Ram Box rail, if equipped) to the semi clamped position.

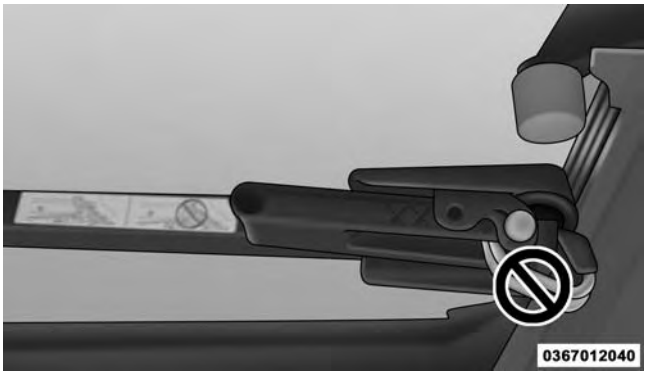
Semi Clamped Position

10. Push clamp handles upward to the clamped position to properly engage the clamps.



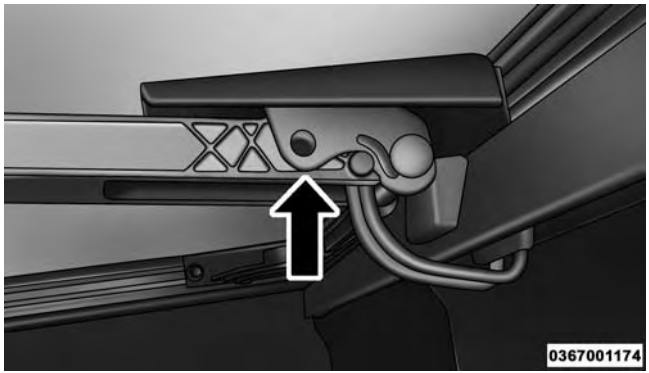
Clamped Position

NOTE: Once clamped, be sure the clamps are not partially clamped to the truck bed flange.



Improper Clamp Position

The Tonneau Cover clamps can be locked when in the clamped position by placing a lock through the locking hole.



Locking Hole

CAUTION!

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure the Tonneau Cover is properly installed on the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure can result in detachment of the Tonneau Cover from the vehicle and/or damage to the vehicle/Tonneau Cover.

Tri-Fold Tonneau Cover Cleaning

For proper cleaning of the Tonneau Cover use MOPAR Whitewall & Vinyl Top Cleaner and MOPAR Leather & Vinyl Conditioner/Protectant.

UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

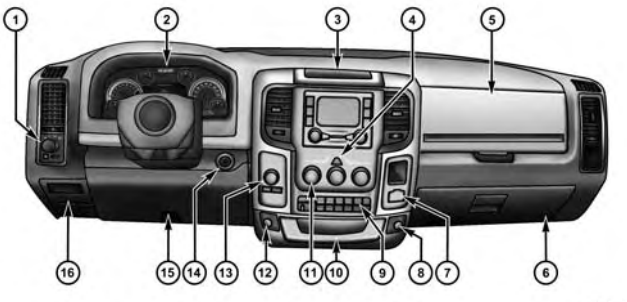
CONTENTS

- INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES 290
- INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — MIDLINE (EVIC) . .291
- INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — PREMIUM (DID) . .294
- WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS 297
  - Red Telltale Indicator Lights 298
  - Yellow Telltale Indicator Lights 310
  - Green Telltale Indicator Lights 328
  - White Telltale Indicator Lights 332
  - Blue Telltale Indicator Lights. 333
- ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER (EVIC) 334
  - Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Displays — 3.5″ Display 336
  - Oil Life Reset 338
  - EVIC Selectable Menu Items 340
- DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID) 355
  - Driver Information Display (DID) Displays . . .357
  - Oil Life Reset 359
  - DID Messages 360

- □ DID Selectable Menu Items 365
- ■ CYBERSECURITY. 379
- ■ UCONNECT SETTINGS 381
  - □ Buttons On The Faceplate. 383
  - □ Buttons On The Touchscreen. 383
  - □ Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 5.0 Personal Settings 383
  - □ Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Personal Settings 399
- ■ UCONNECT RADIOS 418
- ■ iPod/USB/MP3 CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED . . .419
- ■ STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED 420
  - □ Radio Operation 420
  - □ CD Player — If Equipped. 421
- ■ CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE 421
- ■ RADIO OPERATION AND MOBILE DEVICES . .422
  - □ Regulatory And Safety Information 422
- ■ CLIMATE CONTROLS 424
  - □ Manual Climate Controls Without Touchscreen — If Equipped 424
  - □ Manual Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped 429
  - □ Automatic Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped 434
  - □ Climate Control Functions 441
  - □ Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) 443
  - □ Operating Tips 444

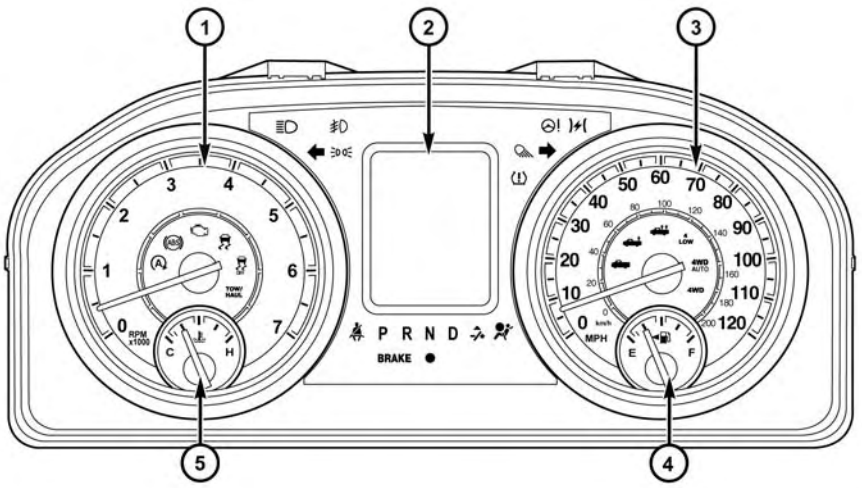
■ PERSONALIZED MENU BAR 447
■ UCONNECT VOICE RECOGNITION 447
□ Introducing Uconnect. 447
□ Get Started 449
□ Basic Voice Commands. 450
□ Radio 452
□ Media. 453
□ Phone. 455
□ Voice Text Reply 457
□ Climate (8.4A/8.4AN) 459
□ Navigation (8.4A/8.4AN) 460
□ Uconnect Access (8.4A/8.4AN) 461
□ Vehicle Health Alert 462
□ Register (8.4A/8.4AN) 462
□ Mobile App (8.4A/8.4AN) 463
□ Voice Texting (8.4A/8.4AN) 464
□ Yelp (8.4A/8.4AN). 466
□ SiriusXM Travel Link (8.4A/8.4AN). 467
□ Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped 468
□ Do Not Disturb 468
□ General Information. 469
□ Additional Information 470

INSTRUMENT PANEL FEATURES



1 — Headlight Switch
2 — Instrument Cluster
3 — Radio
4 — Hazard Switch
5 — Upper Glove Compartment
6 — Lower Glove Compartment
7 — 115v Power Inverter Outlet
8 — Power Outlet — If Equipped
9 — Lower Switch Bank
10 — Instrument Panel Drawer
11 — Climate Controls
12 — Power Outlet/Cigar Lighter — If Equipped
13 — Gear Selector/Transfer Case Position Switch — If Equipped
14 — Ignition Switch
15 — Hood Release
16 — Parking Brake Release

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — MIDLINE (EVIC)



Midline EVIC Instrument Cluster — If Equipped

1. Tachometer
   - Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM x 1000).
2. Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Display
   - When the appropriate conditions exist, this display shows the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) messages. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
3. Speedometer
   - Indicates vehicle speed.
4. Fuel Gauge
   - The pointer shows the level of fuel in the fuel tank when the Keyless Push Button Ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
   - The fuel pump symbol points to the side of the vehicle where the fuel door is located.
5. Temperature Gauge
   - The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the engine cooling system is operating satisfactorily.
   - The gauge pointer will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, or when towing a trailer. It should not be allowed to exceed the upper limits of the normal operating range.

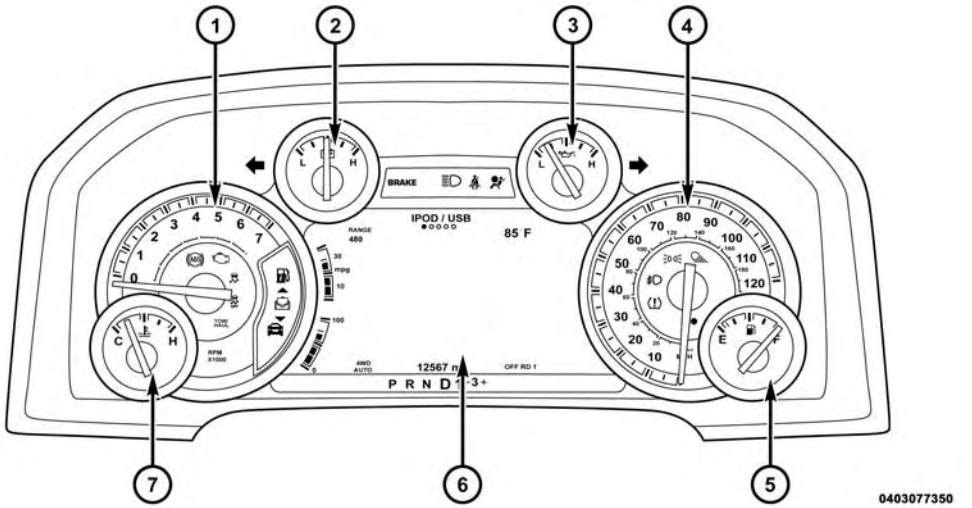
CAUTION!

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads "H" pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the "H", turn the engine off immediately and call an authorized dealer for service.

WARNING!

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call an authorized dealer for service if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see "Maintaining Your Vehicle". Follow the warnings under the Cooling System Pressure Cap paragraph.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER — PREMIUM (DID)



Premium DID Instrument Cluster — If Equipped

1. Tachometer
   - Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM x 1000).
2. Voltmeter
   - When the engine is running, the gauge indicates the electrical system voltage. The pointer should stay within the normal range if the battery is charged. If the pointer moves to either extreme left or right and remains there during normal driving, the electrical system should be serviced.

NOTE: The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

3. Oil Pressure Gauge
   - The pointer should always indicate some oil pressure when the engine is running. A continuous high or low reading under normal driving conditions may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained from an authorized dealer.
4. Speedometer
   - Indicates vehicle speed.
5. Fuel Gauge
   - The pointer shows the level of fuel in the fuel tank when the Keyless Push Button Ignition is in the ON/RUN position.
   - The fuel pump symbol points to the side of the vehicle where the fuel door is located.

6. Driver Information Display (DID)
   - When the appropriate conditions exist, this display shows the Driver Information Display (DID) messages. Refer to "Driver Information Display" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

7. Temperature Gauge
   - The temperature gauge shows engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the engine cooling system is operating satisfactorily.
   - The gauge pointer will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, or when towing a trailer. It should not be allowed to exceed the upper limits of the normal operating range.

CAUTION!

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads "H" pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on the "H", turn the engine off immediately and call an authorized dealer for service.

WARNING!

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call an authorized dealer for service if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see "Maintaining Your Vehicle". Follow the warnings under the Cooling System Pressure Cap paragraph.

WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

IMPORTANT: The warning / indicator lights switch on in the instrument panel together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner's Manual, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this chapter in the event of a failure indication.

All active telltales will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Some telltales are optional and may not appear.

Red Telltale Indicator Lights

Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light When the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN, this light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check. During the bulb check, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound. After the bulb check or when driving, if the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will flash or remain on continuously and a chime will sound. Refer to "Occupant Restraints" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.

Air Bag Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Air Bag Warning Light This light will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition is palaced in the ON/RUN position. If the light is either not on during startup, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag Warning Light has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving, have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately.

Brake Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
BRAKE **United States** **Canada**	**Brake Warning Light** This light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir. If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake, and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

NOTE: The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.

WARNING!

Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have a collision. Have the vehicle checked immediately.

Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by placing the ignition in the position ON/RUN position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position.

NOTE: This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

Vehicle Security Warning Light — If Equipped

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Vehicle Security Warning Light — If Equipped This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

Engine Temperature Warning Light

Red Warning Light	What It Means
	Engine Temperature Warning Light This light warns of an overheated engine condition. As engine coolant temperatures rise and the gauge approaches **H**, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound after reaching a set threshold. Further overheating will cause a continuous chime sound for 4 minutes, or until the engine is allowed to cool, whichever comes first. If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service. Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “What To Do In Emergencies” for further information.

Battery Charge Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Battery Charge Warning Light This light illuminates when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. This indicates a possible problem with the electrical system or a related component. If jump starting is required, refer to “Jump Starting Procedures” in “What To Do In Emergencies.”

Oil Pressure Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Oil Pressure Warning Light This light indicates low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on. Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Warning Light This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected while the engine is running, the light will either stay on or flash depending on the nature of the problem. Cycle the ignition key when the vehicle is safely and completely stopped and the transmission is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off. If the light remains on with the engine running, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light continues to flash when the engine is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle, or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned to ON/RUN and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Electric Power Steering Fail Warning — If Equipped

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Electric Power Steering Fail Warning — If Equipped This light is used to manage the electrical warning of the EPS (Power Steering System). Refer to “Power Steering” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light

Red Warning Light	What It Means
	Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light This telltale is on when the Trailer Brake has been disconnected.

Oil Pressure Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Oil Pressure Warning Light This light indicates low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. A chime will sound when this light turns on. Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

Door Open Warning Light

Red Telltale Light	What It Means
	Door Open Warning Light This indicator will illuminate when a door is open and not fully closed. **NOTE:** If the vehicle is moving there will also be a single chime.

NOTE: Door Open Warning Light will differ depending on the equipped instrument cluster display

Yellow Telltale Indicator Lights

Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) The Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is a part of an Onboard Diagnostic System called OBD II that monitors engine and automatic transmission control systems. The light will illuminate when the ignition is in the ON position before engine start. If the bulb does not come on when turning the key from OFF to ON/RUN, have the condition checked promptly. Certain conditions, such as a loose or missing gas cap, poor quality fuel, etc., may illuminate the light after engine start. The vehicle should be serviced if the light stays on through several typical driving styles. In most situations, the vehicle will drive normally and will not require towing. When the engine is running, the MIL may flash to alert serious conditions that could lead to immediate loss of power or severe catalytic converter damage. The vehicle should be serviced as soon as possible if this occurs.

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

WARNING!

A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants, wood, cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light — If Equipped The "ESC Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position, and when ESC is activated. It should go out with the engine running. If the "ESC Indicator Light" comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 MPH (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected. • The "ESC Off Indicator Light" and the "ESC Indicator Light" come on momentarily each time the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN position. • Each time the ignition is turned to ON/RUN, the ESC system will be ON, even if it was turned off previously. • The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive. • This light will come on when the vehicle is in an ESC event.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light — If Equipped This light indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is off.

Low Washer Fluid Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Low Washer Fluid Indicator Light — If Equipped This indicator will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Tire Pressure Monitoring Indicator Light

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Tire Pressure Monitoring Indicator Light The warning light switches on and a message is displayed to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed. Should one or more tires be in the condition mentioned above, the display will show the indications corresponding to each tire in sequence.

IMPORTANT: Do not continue driving with one or more flat tires as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. Repair immediately using the dedicated tire repair kit and contact your authorized dealership as soon as possible.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when

one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle, to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

CAUTION!

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size,

(Continued)

CAUTION! ***(Continued)***

type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.

Low Fuel Indicator Light

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Low Fuel Indicator Light When the fuel level reaches approximately 1.5 gal (5.8 L) this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.

Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Indicator Light

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Indicator Light After the ignition is turned on, the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) light illuminates to indicate function check at vehicle startup. If the light remains on after startup or comes on and stays on at road speeds, it may indicate that the ABS has detected a malfunction or has become inoperative. The system reverts to standard non-anti-lock brakes.

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	If both the Brake Warning Light and the ABS Warning Light are on, see an authorized dealer immediately. Refer to “Anti-Lock Brake System” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

Transmission Temperature Indicator Light

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Transmission Temperature Indicator Light This light indicates that the transmission fluid temperature is running hot. This may occur with severe usage, such as trailer towing. If this light turns on, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. Then, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and run the engine at idle or faster until the light turns off.

CAUTION!

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

WARNING!

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

Rear Fog Light Indicator — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Rear Fog Light Indicator This indicator will illuminate when the rear fog lights are on.

Low Coolant Level Indicator Light

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Low Coolant Level Indicator Light This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low.

Air Suspension Payload Protection Telltale — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Air Suspension Payload Protection Telltale This telltale will turn on to indicate that the maximum payload may have been exceeded or load leveling cannot be achieved at its current ride height. Protection Mode will automatically be selected in order to “protect” the air suspension system, air suspension adjustment is limited due to payload.

TOW/HAUL Indicator Light

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
TOW/ HAUL	**TOW/HAUL Indicator Light** This light will illuminate when TOW HAUL mode is selected.

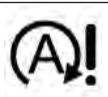
Cargo Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Cargo Light The cargo light will illuminate when the cargo light is activated by pressing the cargo light button on the headlight switch.

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Loose Fuel Filler Cap Indicator Light — If Equipped This light will illuminate when fuel filler cap is loose. Properly close the filler cap to disengage the light. If the light does not turn off, please see your authorized dealer.

Service Stop/Start System Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	**Service Stop/Start System Indicator Light — If Equipped** This telltale will turn on to indicate the Stop/Start system is not functioning properly and service is required.

Air Suspension Off-Road 1 Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Air Suspension Off-Road 1 Indicator Light This light will illuminate when the air suspension system is set to the Off-Road 1 setting. For further information, refer to “Air Suspension System” in “Starting And Operating”.

Air Suspension Off-Road 2 Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Air Suspension Off-Road 2 Indicator Light This light will illuminate when the air suspension system is set to the Off-Road 2 setting. For further information, refer to “Air Suspension System” in “Starting And Operating”.

Air Suspension Ride Height Raising Indicator Light— If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Air Suspension Ride Height Raising Indicator Light This light will blink and alert the driver that the vehicle is changing to a higher ride height.

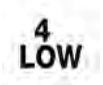
Air Suspension Ride Height Lowering Indicator Light— If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	Air Suspension Ride Height Lowering Indicator Light This light will blink and alert the driver that the vehicle is changing to a lower ride height.

4WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	4WD Indicator Light This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive mode, and the front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.

4 Low Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
	**4 Low Indicator Light** This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOW mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Low range provides a greater gear reduction ratio to provide increased torque at the wheels. Refer to "Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped" in "Starting And Operating" for further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use.

Service 4WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

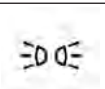
Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
SERV 4WD	**Service 4WD Indicator Light** If the light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required. We recommend you drive to the nearest service center and have the vehicle serviced immediately.

2WD Indicator Light — If Equipped

Yellow Telltale Light	What It Means
2WD	**2WD Indicator Light** This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the two-wheel drive mode.

Green Telltale Indicator Lights

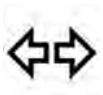
Park/Headlight ON Indicator Light

Green Telltale Light	What It Means
	**Park/Headlight ON Indicator Light** This indicator will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on.

Front Fog Indicator Light — If Equipped

Green Telltale Light	What It Means
	Front Fog Indicator Light — If Equipped This indicator will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

Turn Signal Indicator Lights

Green Telltale Light	What It Means
	**Turn Signal Indicator Lights** The instrument cluster directional arrow will flash independently for the LEFT or RIGHT turn signal as selected, as well as the exterior turn signal lamp(s) (front and rear) as selected when the multifunction lever is moved down (LEFT) or up (RIGHT). **NOTE:** • A continuous chime will sound if the vehicle is driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) with either turn signal on. • Check for an inoperative outside light bulb if either indicator flashes at a rapid rate.

Stop/Start Active Indicator Light — If Equipped

Green Telltale Light	What It Means
	Stop/Start Active Indicator Light — If Equipped This telltale will illuminate when the Stop/Start function is in "Autostop" mode.

Electronic Speed Control Set Indicator Light — If Equipped

Green Telltale Light	What It Means
	Electronic Speed Control Set Indicator Light — If Equipped This light will turn on when the electronic speed control has been set.

4WD AUTO Indicator Light — If Equipped

Green Telltale Light	What It Means
	4WD AUTO Indicator Light This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive auto mode, and the front axle is engaged, but the vehicle's power is sent to the rear wheels. Four-wheel drive will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. For further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use, refer to "Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped" in "Starting And Operating."

White Telltale Indicator Lights

Cruise Control ON Indicator Light

White Telltale Light	What It Means
	Cruise Control ON Indicator Light This light will turn on when the electronic speed control is ON, but not set.

Electronic Speed Control SET Indicator Light — If Equipped

White Telltale Light	What It Means
	Electronic Speed Control SET Indicator Light This light will turn on when the electronic speed control is set. Refer to “Electronic Speed Control” in “Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle” for further information.

Hill Decent Control (HDC) Indicator Light — If Equipped

White Telltale Light	What It Means
	Hill Decent Control (HDC) Indicator Light This indicator will illuminate when Hill Descent Control (HDC) has been selected using the Hill Descent Control Switch. Refer to “Electronic Brake Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

Blue Telltale Indicator Lights

High Beam Indicator Light

Blue Telltale Light	What It Means
	High Beam Indicator Light This indicator shows that the high beam headlights are on. Push the multifunction control lever away from you to switch the headlights to high beam. Pull the lever toward you to switch the headlights back to low beam. Pull the lever toward you for a temporary high beam on, ″flash to pass″ scenario.

ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER (EVIC)

The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)

The EVIC Menu items consists of the following:

- Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Fuel Economy Info
- Trip A
- Trip B
- Stop/Start Info (If Equipped)
- Air Suspension (If Equipped)
- Trailer Tow
- Messages
- Screen Setup
- Vehicle Settings (Not Equipped with a Uconnect 5.0 & 8.4 radio)

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following EVIC Control buttons located on the left side of the steering wheel:

EVIC Control Buttons

- *UP Arrow Button*

△ Push and release the **UP** arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu items.

- *DOWN Arrow Button*

▽ Push and release the **DOWN** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu items.

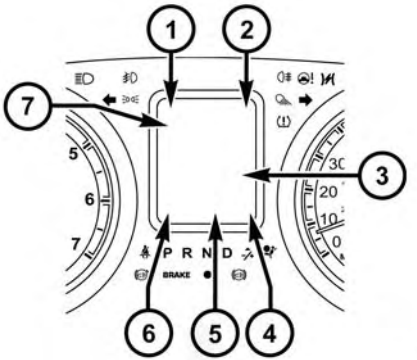
- *RIGHT Arrow Button*

Push and release the **RIGHT** arrow button to access/select the information screens or sub-menu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the RIGHT arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.

- *LEFT Arrow Button*

Push and release the **LEFT** arrow button to return to the main menu, to exit the main menu push and release the **UP** or **DOWN** arrow to highlight Turn Menu Off, then push and release the **RIGHT** arrow.

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Displays — 3.5" Display



The EVIC displays are located in the center portion of the cluster and consists of seven sections:

1. Compass Display

Displays the current direction. Refer to "Compass Settings" under "Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 5.0/8.4 Settings" for further information.

2. Temperature Display

Displays the temperature in degrees Celsius or degrees Fahrenheit.

3. Main Screen

Displays main menu, sub-menus, settings.

4. EVIC White Telltales

5. EVIC Amber Telltales

6. EVIC Red Telltales

7. Audio/Phone Information And Sub-menu Information

Whenever there are sub-menus available, the position within the sub-menu is shown here.

The main display area will normally display the main menu or the screens of a selected feature of the main menu. The main display area also displays "pop up" messages that consist of approximately 60 possible warning or information messages. These pop up messages fall into several categories:

- *Five Second Stored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. Most of the messages of this type are then stored (as long as the condition that activated it remains active) and can be reviewed from the "Messages" main menu item. As long as there is a stored message, an "i" will be displayed in

the EVIC's compass/outside temp line. Examples of this message type are "Right Front Turn Signal Lamp Out" and "Low Tire Pressure."

- *Unstored Messages*

This message type is displayed indefinitely or until the condition that activated the message is cleared. Examples of this message type are "Turn Signal On" (if a turn signal is left on) and "Lights On" (if driver leaves the vehicle).

- *Unstored Messages Until RUN*

These messages deal primarily with the Remote Start feature. This message type is displayed until the ignition is in the RUN state. Examples of this message type are "Remote Start Aborted - Door Ajar" and "Press Brake Pedal and Push Button to Start."

- *Five Second Unstored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. An example of this message type is "Automatic High Beams On."

Oil Life Reset

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The "Oil Change Required" message will display in the EVIC after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

NOTE: Use the steering wheel EVIC controls for the following procedure(s).

Vehicles Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without depressing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and place the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).

2. Push and release the **DOWN** ▽ arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to "Vehicle Info."
3. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to access the "Vehicle Info" screen, then scroll up or down to select "Oil Life."
4. Push and hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to select "Reset".
5. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to select **"NO"** or **"YES"** to reset the Oil Life to 100%.
6. Push and release the **UP** △ arrow button to exit the EVIC screen.

Vehicles Not Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without depressing the brake pedal, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **DOWN** ▽ arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to "Vehicle Info."
3. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to access the "Vehicle Info" screen then scroll up or down to select "Oil Life."
4. Push and hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to select "Reset," then select "NO" or "YES" by pushing the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow then push the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life to 100%.
5. Push and release the **UP** △ arrow button to exit the EVIC screen.

NOTE: If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the Oil Life indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

EVIC Selectable Menu Items

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow buttons until the desired Selectable Menu item is highlighted in the EVIC.

Speedometer Menu Item

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the speedometer menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to cycle the display between MPH and km/h.

Vehicle Info Menu Item

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Vehicle Info menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to enter the submenus items of Vehicle Info. follow the directional prompts to access or reset any of the following Vehicle Info submenu items:

- Tire Pressure
- Coolant Temp
- Transmission Temp (Automatic only)
- Oil Temp
- Oil Pressure
- Oil Life
- Battery Voltage
- Gauge Summary
- Engine Hours

Fuel Economy Menu Item

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Fuel Economy menu item is highlighted. Push and Hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to reset Average Fuel Economy.

- Current Fuel Economy Gauge
- Average Fuel Economy value
- To reset the following features (Range, Current MPG or L/100 km, or Average MPG / L/100 km), push hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button till features are reset.
- Range to Empty

Trip Menu Item

Trip A

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Trip A menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. The Trip A information will display the following:

- Distance
- Average MPG
- Elapsed Time

Push and hold **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to reset all information.

Trip B

Push and release **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Trip B menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. The Trip B information will display the following:

- Distance
- Average MPG
- Elapsed Time

Push and hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to reset all the information.

Stop/Start Menu Item – If Equipped

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Stop/Start menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to display the Stop/Start status.

Air Suspension Menu Item — If Equipped

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Air Suspension menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to display the Air Suspension status.

Trailer Tow Menu Item

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Trailer Tow menu item is highlighted. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button and the next screen will display the following trailer trip information:

- Trip (trailer specific) Distance: Push and hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to reset the distance.
- Trailer Brake
  - Output
  - Type
  - Gain

EVIC Messages (Stored)

Number of messages stored will be indicated on the highlighted Messages Menu bar.

When no message(s) have been stored, the right arrow will not be present in the highlighted Messages bar.

Message(s) remain stored until condition has been cleared by your authorized service provider.

Sample of stored EVIC Messages

- Front Seat Belts Unbuckled
- Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seat Belt Unbuckled
- Service Air Bag System
- Traction Control Off
- Washer Fluid Low
- Oil Pressure Low
- Oil Change Due
- Fuel Low
- Service Anti-lock Brake System
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Service Power Steering
- Cruise Off
- Cruise Ready
- Cruise Set To XXX MPH
- Tire Pressure Screen With Low Tire(s) “Inflate Tire to XX”
- Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)
- Service Tire Pressure System
- Parking Brake Engaged
- Brake Fluid Low
- Service Electronic Braking System
- Engine Temperature Hot
- Battery Voltage Low
- Service Electronic Throttle Control

- Lights On
- Right Turn Signal Light Out
- Left Turn Signal Light Out
- Turn Signal On
- Sound Horn with Remote Lock: Off; 1st Push; 2nd Push
- Vehicle Not In Park
- Key in Ignition
- Key in Ignition Lights On
- Remote Start Active Key To Run
- Remote Start Active Push Start Button
- Remote Start Aborted Fuel Low
- Remote Start Aborted Too Cold
- Remote Start Aborted Door Open
- Remote Start Aborted Hood Open
- Remote Start Aborted Trunk Open
- Remote Start Aborted Time Expired
- Remote Start Disabled Start To Reset
- Service Airbag System
- Service Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Door Open
- Doors Open
- Gear Not Available

- Shift Not Allowed
- Shift To Neutral Then Drive Or Reverse
- Autostick Unavailable Service Required
- Automatic Unavailable Use Autostick Service Req.
- Transmission Getting Hot Push Brake
- Trans. Hot Stop Safely Shift To Park Wait To Cool
- Transmission Cool Ready To Drive
- Trailer Brake Disconnected
- Service Transmission
- Service Shifter
- Engage Park Brake To Prevent Rolling
- Transmission Too Cold Idle With Engine On
- Washer Fluid Low
- Service Air Suspension System
- Heavy Duty Air Suspension System Disabled
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted Due To Speed
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted Due To Payload
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted - Payload Too Light
- Battery Low Start Engine To Change Ride Height
- Normal Ride Height Achieved
- Aerodynamic Ride Height Achieved
- Off Road 1 Ride Height Achieved
- Off Road 2 Ride Height Achieved
- Entry/Exit Ride Height Achieved
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted

- Service Air Suspension System Immediately
- Reduce Speed To Maintain Selected Ride Height
- Air Suspension System Cooling Down Please Wait
- Vehicle Cannot Be Lowered Door Open
- Off Road 2 Watch For Clearance
- Entry/Exit Watch For Clearance
- Air Suspension Temporarily Disabled For Jacking And Tire Change
- Battery Low Start Engine To Change Ride Height
- Stop/Start Ready – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Hood Open – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Battery Charging – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Trailer Tow/Haul Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready 4WD/Low Range Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Fuel Level Low – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Steep Incline – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Extreme Outside Temperature – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Engine Temperature Too High – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Engine Temperature Too Low – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Driver Door Open – If Equipped

- Stop/Start Not Ready Cabin Cooling Or Heating – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Not Ready Max Cooling Or Heating – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Max Cooling Or Heating Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Front Defrost Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Steering Wheel Turned – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Autostop Active – If Equipped
- Stop/Start To Restart Push Clutch Or Shift To Neutral – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Req'd Fault Detected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Cannot Autostart Hood Open – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Unavailable Service Battery – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Unavailable Service Stop/Start System – If Equipped
- Stop/Start To Restart Shift Out Of Park – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Off – If Equipped
- Autostop Duration – If Equipped

Screen Setup Menu Item

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Screen Setup menu item is highlighted in the EVIC. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to enter the Screen Setup submenu. The Screen Setup feature allows you to change what information is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the location that information is displayed.

Vehicle Settings Menu Item

Personal Settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK.

Push and release the **UP** △ and **DOWN** ▽ button until Settings displays in the EVIC.

Follow the prompts to display and set any of the following Vehicle Settings.

NOTE: Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with all the following settings.

- If equipped with a base radio (Non-Touchscreen) Vehicle Settings will be included in the EVIC.
- If equipped with a Touchscreen radio, the Vehicle Settings will be included in the radio head unit.

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
1	Language Select	Language	English, Spanish, French, Italian, German, Dutch
2	Units	Units	U.S.; Metric
3	ParkSense	ParkSense	• Notification — Sound Only; Sound & Display • Front Volume — Low; Medium; High • Rear Volume — Low; Medium; High

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
4	Tilt Mirror in Reverse	Tilt Mirror in R	On; Off
5	Rain Sensing Wipers	Auto Wipers	On; Off
6	Hill Start Assist	Hill Start Assist	On; Off
7	Headlights Off Delay	Lights Off Delay	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds
8	Illuminated Approach	Lights w/ Unlock	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds
9	Headlights On with Wipers	Lights w/ Wipers	On; Off
10	Automatic High-beams	Auto Highbeams	On; Off
11	Flash Lights with Lock	Lights w/ Lock	On; Off
12	Auto Lock Doors	Auto Lock Doors	On; Off

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
13	Auto Unlock Doors	Auto Unlock Doors	On; Off
14	Sound Horn with Remote Start	Horn w/ Rmt Start	On; Off
15	Sound Horn with Remote Lock	Horn w/ Rmt Lock	Off; 1st Press; 2nd Press
16	Remote Unlock Sequence	Remote Unlock	Driver Door; All Doors
17	Key Fob Linked to Memory	Key in Memory	On; Off
18	Passive Entry	Passive Entry	On; Off
19	Remote Start Comfort System	Rmt Start Comfort	Off; Remoter Start; All starts
20	Easy Exit Seat	Easy Exit Seat	On; Off
21	Key-off Power Delay	Power Off Delay	Off; 45 seconds; 5 minutes; 10 minutes

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
22	Air Suspension Display Alerts	Air Susp. Alerts	All; Warnings Only
23	Aero Ride Height Mode	Aero Mode	On; Off
24	Tire/Jack Mode	Tire/Jack Mode	On; Off
25	Transport Mode	Transport Mode	On; Off
26	Wheel Alignment Mode	Wheel Alignment	On; Off
27	Horn w/ Remote Lower	Horn w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
28	Lights w/ Remote Lower	Lights w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
29	Trailer Select	Trailer Select	Trailer 1; Trailer 2; Trailer 3; Trailer 4
30	Brake Type	Brake Type	Light Electric; Heavy Electric; Light EOH; Heavy EOH

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
31	Trailer Name	Trailer Name	• Trailer # (# is equal to slot position) • Boat • Car • Cargo • Dump • Equipment • Flatbed • Gooseneck • Horse • Livestock • Motorcycle • Snowmobile • Travel • Utility • 5th Wheel

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
32	Compass Variance	Compass Var	1-15 increments of 1
33	Calibrate Compass	Compass Cal	Cancel; Calibrate
34	Fuel Saver Display	Fuel Saver	On; Off

Turn Menu OFF

Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to exit the main menu.

Push and release any EVIC control button to enter the EVIC main menu again.

DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID)

The Driver Information Display (DID) features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.

Driver Information Display (DID)

The DID Menu items consists of the following:

- Digital Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Fuel Economy Info
- Trip A
- Trip B
- Stop/Start Info (If Equipped)
- Trailer Tow
- Audio
- Stored Messages
- Screen Setup
- Vehicle Settings (Not Equipped with a Uconnect 5.0 & 8.4 radio)

Vehicle Information (Customer Information Features)

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following buttons mounted on the steering wheel:

DID Controls

- *UP Arrow Button*

△ Push and release the **UP** arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu and submenus.

- *DOWN Arrow Button*

▽ Push and release the **DOWN** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu and submenus.

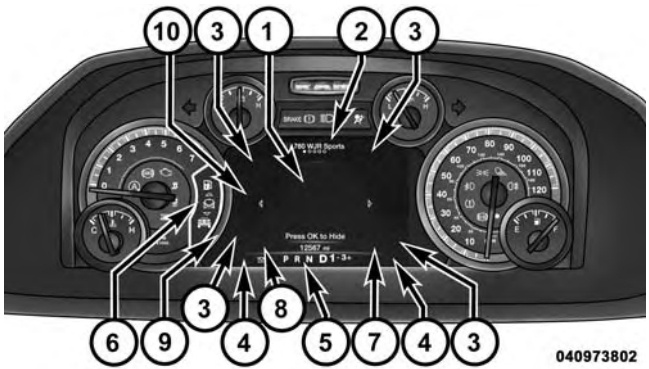
- *RIGHT Arrow Button*

▷ Push and release the **RIGHT** arrow button to access/select the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the **RIGHT** arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.

- *LEFT Arrow Button*

◁ Push and release the **LEFT** arrow button to return to the main menu from an info screen or submenu item.

Driver Information Display (DID) Displays



The DID displays are located in the center portion of the cluster and consists of eight sections:

1. Main Screen — The inner ring of the display will illuminate in grey under normal conditions, yellow for non critical warnings, red for critical warnings, and white for on demand information.
2. Audio / Phone Information and Sub-menu Information — Whenever there are sub-menus available, the position within the sub-menus is shown here.
3. Selectable Information (Compass, Temp, Range to Empty, Trip A, Trip B, Average MPG, Trailer Trip (distance only), Trailer Brake Gain, Time)
4. Telltales/Indicators
5. Gear Selector Status (PRNDL)
6. Selectable Menu Icons
7. Air Suspension Status – If Equipped

8. 4WD Status
9. Selectable Gauge 2 (Trans Temp, Oil Temp, Oil Life, Trailer Brake, Current MPG)
10. Selectable Gauge 1 (Trans Temp, Oil Temp, Oil Life, Trailer Brake, Current MPG)

The main display area will normally display the main menu or the screens of a selected feature of the main menu. The main display area also displays "pop up" messages that consist of approximately 60 possible warning or information messages. These pop up messages fall into several categories:

- ***Five Second Stored Messages***

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. Most of the messages of this type are then stored (as long as the condition that activated it remains active) and can be reviewed from the "Messages" main menu item. As long as there is a stored message, an "i" will be displayed in the DID's compass/outside temp line. Examples of this message type are "Right Front Turn Signal Lamp Out" and "Low Tire Pressure."

- ***Unstored Messages***

This message type is displayed indefinitely or until the condition that activated the message is cleared. Examples of this message type are "Turn Signal On" (if a turn signal is left on) and "Lights On" (if driver leaves the vehicle).

- ***Unstored Messages Until RUN***

These messages deal primarily with the Remote Start feature. This message type is displayed until the ignition is in the RUN state. Examples of this message type are "Remote Start Aborted - Door Ajar" and "Press Brake Pedal and Push Button to Start."

- *Five Second Unstored Messages*

When the appropriate conditions occur, this type of message takes control of the main display area for five seconds and then returns to the previous screen. An example of this message type is "Automatic High Beams On."

Oil Life Reset

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The "Oil Change Required" message will flash in the DID display for approximately 10 seconds after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

NOTE: Use the steering wheel DID controls for the following procedure(s).

Vehicles Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **DOWN** ▽ arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to "Vehicle Info."
3. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to access the "Oil Life" screen.
4. Push and hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button for one second to access the "Oil Life Reset" screen.
5. Push and release the **DOWN** ▽ arrow button to select "Yes," then push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life.
6. Push and release the **UP** △ arrow button to exit the DID screen.

Vehicles Not Equipped With Passive Entry

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **DOWN** ▽ arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to "Vehicle Info."
3. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to access the "Oil Life" screen.
4. Push and hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button for one second to access the "Oil Life Reset" screen.
5. Push and release the **DOWN** ▽ arrow button to select "Yes," then push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to select reset of the Oil Life.
6. Push and release the **UP** △ arrow button to exit the DID screen.

NOTE: If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

DID Messages

- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Service Airbag System
- Traction Control Off
- Washer Fluid Low
- Oil Pressure Low
- Oil Change Due
- Fuel Low
- Service Antilock Brake System

- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Service Power Steering
- Cruise Off
- Cruise Ready
- Cruise Set To XXX MPH
- Tire Pressure Screen With Low Tire(s) “Inflate Tire to XX”
- Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)
- Service Tire Pressure System
- Parking Brake Engaged
- Brake Fluid Low
- Service Electronic Braking System
- Engine Temperature Hot
- Battery Voltage Low
- Service Electronic Throttle Control
- Lights On
- Right Turn Signal Light Out
- Left Turn Signal Light Out
- Turn Signal On
- Sound Horn with Remote Lock: Off; 1st Push; 2nd Push
- Vehicle Not in Park
- Key in Ignition
- Key in Ignition Lights On
- Remote Start Active Key to Run
- Remote Start Active Push Start Button

- Remote Start Aborted Fuel Low
- Remote Start Aborted Too Cold
- Remote Start Aborted Door Open
- Remote Start Aborted Hood Open
- Remote Start Aborted Trunk Open
- Remote Start Aborted Time Expired
- Remote Start Disabled Start to Reset
- Service Airbag System
- Service Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Passenger Seatbelt Unbuckled
- Front Seatbelts Unbuckled
- Door Open
- Doors Open
- Gear Not Available
- Shift Not Allowed
- Shift to Neutral then Drive or Reverse
- Autostick Unavailable Service Required
- Automatic Unavailable Use Autostick Service Req.
- Transmission Getting Hot Push Brake
- Trans. Hot Stop Safely Shift to Park Wait to Cool
- Transmission Cool Ready to Drive
- Trailer Brake Disconnected
- Service Transmission
- Service Shifter
- Engage Park Brake to Prevent Rolling

- Transmission Too cold Idle with Engine On
- Washer Fluid Low
- Service Air Suspension System
- Heavy Duty Air Suspension System Disabled
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted Due To Speed
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted Due To Payload
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted - Payload Too Light
- Battery Low Start Engine To Change Ride Height
- Normal Ride Height Achieved
- Aerodynamic Ride Height Achieved
- Off Road 1 Ride Height Achieved
- Off Road 2 Ride Height Achieved
- Entry/Exit Ride Height Achieved
- Selected Ride Height Not Permitted
- Service Air Suspension System Immediately
- Reduce Speed To Maintain Selected Ride Height
- Air Suspension System Cooling Down Please Wait
- Vehicle Cannot Be Lowered Door Open
- Off Road 2 Watch For Clearance
- Entry/Exit Watch For Clearance
- Air Suspension Temporarily Disabled For Jacking And Tire Change
- Battery Low Start Engine To Change Ride Height
- Stop/Start Ready – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready – If Equipped

- Stop/Start Not Ready Hood Open – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Battery Charging – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Trailer Tow/Haul Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready 4WD/Low Range Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Fuel Level Low – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Steep Incline – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Extreme Outside Temperature – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Engine Temperature Too High – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Engine Temperature Too Low – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Driver Seatbelt Unbuckled – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Driver Door Open – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Cabin Cooling Or Heating – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Not Ready Max Cooling Or Heating – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Max Cooling Or Heating Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Front Defrost Selected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Not Ready Steering Wheel Turned – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Autostop Active – If Equipped

- Stop/Start To Restart Push Clutch Or Shift To Neutral – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Req'd Fault Detected – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Cannot Autostart Hood Open – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Unavailable Service Battery – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Unavailable Service Stop/Start System – If Equipped
- Stop/Start To Restart Shift Out Of Park – If Equipped
- Stop/Start Off – If Equipped
- Autostop Duration – If Equipped

The Reconfigurable Telltales section is divided into the white telltales area on the right, yellow telltales in the middle, and red telltales on the left.

DID Selectable Menu Items

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow buttons until the desired Selectable Menu icon/title is highlighted in the DID.

Digital Speedometer

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Digital display icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to change the display between mph and km/h.

Vehicle Info

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Vehicle Info icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the

4

RIGHT ▷ arrow button to enter the submenus items of Vehicle Info. follow the directional prompts to access or reset any of the following Vehicle Info submenu items:

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (1500 & 2500 Series)

A vehicle ICON is displayed with tire pressure values in each corner of the ICON.

- Tire Pressure:
  - Tire Pressure Information System (3500 Series Heavy Duty Ram Trucks)
  - A vehicle ICON is displayed with the tire pressure values in each corner of the ICON.
  - If the Tire Pressure system requires service, "Service Tire Pressure System" is displayed.
  - Tire Pressure is an information only function and cannot be reset.
  - Refer to the "Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)" under "Starting and Operating" for further information.
- Transmission Temperature – Automatic Transmission Only
- Oil Temperature
- Oil Life
- Battery Voltage — If Equipped
- Gauge Summary:
  - Coolant Temperature
  - Transmission Temperature (automatic only)
  - Oil Temperature
  - Oil Pressure
- Engine Hours

Fuel Economy

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Fuel Economy Menu icon/title is highlighted.

Submenu item:

- Range
- Current MPG or L/100 km
- Average MPG or L/100 km
- To reset the following features (Range, Current MPG or L/100 km, or Average MPG / L/100 km), push hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button till features are reset.

Trip A

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Trip A icon/title is highlighted in the DID. The Trip A information will display the following:

- Distance MI or km
- Average MPG or L/100 km
- Average MPH or km/h
- Elapsed Time

Hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to reset all the information.

Trip B

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Trip B icon/title is highlighted in the DID. The Trip B information will display the following:

- Distance MI or km
- Average MPG or L/100 km
- Average MPH or km/h
- Elapsed Time

Hold the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to reset all the information.

Stop/Start – If Equipped

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Stop/Start icon is highlighted in the DID. The DID will display the Stop/Start status.

Trailer Tow

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Trailer Tow icon is highlighted. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button and the next screen will display the following trailer trip information:

- Trailer Trip
- Trailer Brake

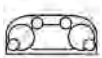
Audio

Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Audio display icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to display the active source.

Stored Messages

Push and release the **UP** △ arrow button until the Messages display icon is highlighted in the DID. This feature shows the number of stored warning messages. Pushing the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button will allow you to see what the stored messages are.

Screen Setup



Push and release the **UP** △ or **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until the Screen Setup display icon is highlighted in the DID. Push and release the **RIGHT** ▷ arrow button to enter the Screen Setup submenu. The Screen Setup feature allows you to change what information is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the location that information is displayed.

	Settings	Options
1	Upper Left	• None • Compass • Outside Temp. • Time • Range to Empty • Average MPG (not available for CNG models) • Current MPG (not available for CNG models) • Trip A • Trip B • Trailer Trip • Trailer Brake Gain

	Settings	Options
2	Upper Right	• None • Compass • Outside Temp. (Default) • Time • Range to Empty • Average MPG (not available for CNG models) • Current MPG (not available for CNG models) • Trip A • Trip B • Trailer Trip • Trailer Brake Gain

	Settings	Options
3	Lower Left	• None (Default) • Compass • Outside Temp. • Time • Range to Empty • Average MPG (not available for CNG models) • Current MPG (not available for CNG models) • Trailer Brake Gain
4	Lower Right	• None (Default) • Compass • Outside Temp. • Time • Range to Empty • Average MPG (not available for CNG models)

	Settings	Options
		• Current MPG (not available for CNG models) • Trailer Brake Gain
5	Upper Gauge	• None (Default) • Trans Temp. • Oil Temp. • Oil Life • Current MPG (not available for CNG models) • Trailer Brake Gain
6	Lower Gauge	• None (Default) • Trans Temp. • Oil Temp. • Oil Life • Current MPG (not available for CNG models) • Trailer Brake Gain

	Settings	Options
7	Odometer	• 000 • 000.0
8	Restore Defaults	• Cancel • OK

Vehicles Settings (Customer-Programmable Features)

NOTE: This feature is only available on 5.0 and 8.4 Uconnect Radios

Personal Settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK.

Push and release the **UP** △ and **DOWN** ▽ arrow button until Personal Settings displays in the DID.

Follow the prompts to display and set any of the following Personal Settings.

NOTE: Your vehicle may or may not be equipped with all the following settings.

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
1	Language Select	Language	English, Spanish, French, Italian, German, Dutch
2	Units	Units	U.S.; Metric
3	ParkSense	ParkSense	• Notification — Sound Only; Sound & Display • Front Volume — Low; Medium; High • Rear Volume — Low; Medium; High
4	Tilt Mirror in Reverse	Tilt Mirror in R	On; Off
5	Rain Sensing Wipers	Auto Wipers	On; Off
6	Hill Start Assist	Hill Start Assist	On; Off
7	Headlights Off Delay	Lights Off Delay	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
8	Illuminated Approach	Lights w/ Unlock	0 seconds; 30 seconds; 60 seconds; 90 seconds
9	Headlights On with Wipers	Lights w/ Wipers	On; Off
10	Automatic Highbeams	Auto Highbeams	On; Off
11	Flash Lights with Lock	Lights w/ Lock	On; Off
12	Auto Lock Doors	Auto Lock Doors	On; Off
13	Auto Unlock Doors	Auto Unlock Doors	On; Off
14	Sound Horn with Remote Start	Horn w/ Rmt Start	On; Off
15	Sound Horn with Remote Lock	Horn w/ Rmt Lock	On; Off
16	Remote Unlock Sequence	Remote Unlock	Driver Door; All Doors
17	Key Fob Linked to Memory	Key in Memory	On; Off
18	Passive Entry	Passive Entry	On; Off
19	Remote Start Comfort System	Rmt Start Comfort	On; Off
20	Easy Exit Seat	Easy Exit Seat	On; Off

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
21	Key-off Power Delay	Power Off Delay	Off; 45 seconds; 5 minutes; 10 minutes
22	Commercial Settings	Commercial	• Aux Switches • Power Take-Off • PIN Setup
23	Air Suspension Display Alerts	Air Susp. Alerts	All; Warnings Only
24	Aero Ride Height Mode	Aero Mode	On; Off
25	Tire/Jack Mode	Tire/Jack Mode	On; Off
26	Transport Mode	Transport Mode	On; Off
27	Wheel Alignment Mode	Wheel Alignment	On; Off
28	Horn w/ Remote Lower	Horn w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
29	Lights w/ Remote Lower	Lights w/ Rmt Lwr	On; Off
30	Trailer Select	Trailer Select	Trailer 1; Trailer 2; Trailer 3; Trailer 4

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
31	Brake Type	Brake Type	Light Electric; Heavy Electric; Light EOH; Heavy EOH
32	Trailer Name	Trailer Name	• Trailer # (# is equal to slot position) • Boat • Car • Cargo • Dump • Equipment • Flatbed • Gooseneck • Horse • Livestock • Motorcycle • Snowmobile • Travel

	Setting Names	Setting Names Abbreviated (Left Submenu Layer)	Sub-Menus (Right Submenu Layer)
			• Utility • 5th Wheel
33	Compass Variance	Compass Var	1-15 increments of 1
34	Calibrate Compass	Compass Cal	Cancel; Calibrate
35	Fuel Saver Display	Fuel Saver	On; Off
36	Park Assist Front Chime Volume	Park Assist Front Chime Volume	On; Off
37	Park Assist Rear Chime Volume	Park Assist Rear Chime Volume	On; Off

CYBERSECURITY

Your vehicle may be a connected vehicle and may be equipped with both wired and wireless networks. These networks allow your vehicle to send and receive information. This information allows systems and features in your vehicle to function properly.

Your vehicle may be equipped with certain security features to reduce the risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems and wireless communications. Vehicle software technology continues to evolve over time and FCA US LLC, working with its suppliers, evaluates and takes appropriate steps as needed. Similar to a computer or other devices, your vehicle may require

software updates to improve the usability and performance of your systems or to reduce the potential risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems.

The risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems may still exist, even if the most recent version of vehicle software (such as Uconnect software) is installed.

WARNING!

- **It is not possible to know or to predict all of the possible outcomes if your vehicle's systems are breached. It may be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **ONLY insert media (e.g., USB, SD card, or CD) into your vehicle if it came from a trusted source. Media of unknown origin could possibly contain malicious software, and if installed in your vehicle, it may increase the possibility for vehicle systems to be breached.**
- **As always, if you experience unusual vehicle behavior, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized dealer immediately.**

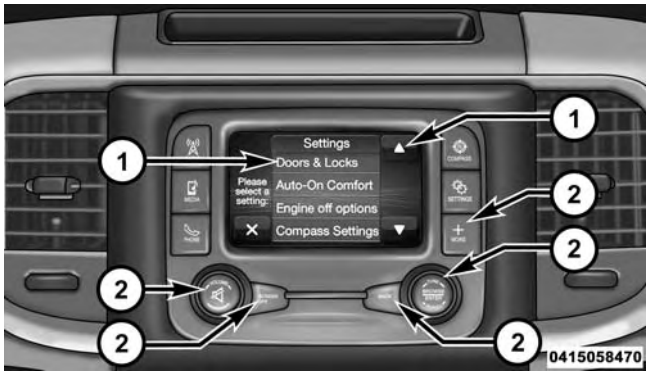
NOTE:

- FCA or your dealer may contact you directly regarding software updates.
- To help further improve vehicle security and minimize the potential risk of a security breach, vehicle owners should:
  - Routinely check www.driveuconnect.com/software-update to learn about available Uconnect software updates.
  - Only connect and use trusted media devices (e.g. personal mobile phones, USBs, CDs).

Privacy of any wireless and wired communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept information and private communications without your consent. For further information, refer to "Privacy Practices – If Equipped with Uconnect 8.4 radio" in "All About Uconnect Access" in your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement and "Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle".

UCONNECT SETTINGS

The Uconnect system uses a combination of buttons on the touchscreen and buttons on the faceplate located on the center of the instrument panel that allows you to access and change the customer programmable features. Many features can vary by vehicle.



Uconnect 5.0 Buttons On The Touchscreen And Buttons On The Faceplate

1 — Uconnect Buttons On The Touchscreen
2 — Uconnect Buttons On The Faceplate

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Buttons On The Touchscreen And Buttons On The Faceplate

1 — Uconnect Buttons On The Touchscreen
2 — Uconnect Buttons On The Faceplate

Buttons On The Faceplate

Buttons on the faceplate are located below the Uconnect system in the center of the instrument panel. In addition, there is a Scroll/Enter control knob located on the right side of the Climate Controls in the center of the instrument panel. Turn the control knob to scroll through menus and change settings (i.e., 30, 60, 90), push the center of the control knob one or more times to select or change a setting (i.e., ON, OFF).

Your Uconnect system may also have Screen Off and Back buttons located below the Uconnect system.

Push the Screen Off button to turn off the Uconnect touchscreen. Push the Screen Off button a second time to turn the touchscreen on.

Push the Back button to exit out of a Menu or certain option on the Uconnect system.

Buttons On The Touchscreen

Buttons on the touchscreen are accessible on the Uconnect display.

Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 5.0 Personal Settings

Push the MORE or SETTINGS button on the faceplate, then press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen (if equipped) to display the settings menu screen. In this mode the Uconnect system allows you to access programmable features that may be equipped such as Display, Units, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort (if equipped), Engine Off Options, Suspension, Trailer Brake, Audio, Compass Settings, Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup (if equipped), Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data and System Information.

NOTE: Only one category may be selected at a time.

When making a selection, press the button on the touchscreen to enter the desired mode. Once in the desired mode, press and release the preferred setting until the button is highlighted. Once the setting is complete, either press the back arrow or Done button on the touchscreen or the Back button on the faceplate to return to the previous menu. Pressing the Up or Down Arrow buttons on the touchscreen on the right side of the screen will allow you to toggle up or down through the list of available settings.

NOTE: All settings should be changed with the ignition in the "Run" position.

Display

After pressing the "Display" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- ***Display Mode***

When in this display you may select the Auto or Manual display settings. To change Mode status, press and release the "Auto" or "Manual" button on the touchscreen.

- ***Set Language***

When in this display, you may select one of multiple languages (English/Français/Español) for all display nomenclature, including the trip functions and the navigation system (if equipped). Press the "Language" button on the touchscreen and select from "English," "Français," or "Español."

- ***Touchscreen Beep***

When in this display, you may turn on or shut off the sound heard when a touchscreen button is pressed. To change the Mode status, press and release the "On" or "Off" button on the touchscreen.

- *Fuel Saver Display — If Equipped*

This feature will allow you to enable fuel saver mode and will be displayed in the EVIC/DID. Press the "Fuel Saver Display" button on the touchscreen select from "On" or "Off."

Units — If Equipped

Press the Units button to select "US" or "Metric".

Voice

After pressing the "Voice" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Voice Response Length*

When in this display, you may change the Voice Response Length settings. To change the Voice Response Length, press the "Voice Response Length" button on the touchscreen and select from "Brief" or "Detailed."

- *Show Command List*

When in this display, you may change the Show Command List settings. To change the Show Command List settings, press the "Show Command List" button on the touchscreen and select from "Always," "With Help" or "Never."

Clock & Date

After pressing the "Clock & Date" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Set Time*

When in this display, you may set the time and format manually. Press the "Set Time" button then choose from a "12 hour" or "24 hour format." Press the corresponding arrow above and below the current time to adjust, then select "AM" or "PM."

- *Set Date*

When in this display, you may set the date manually. Press the "Set Date" button then press the corresponding arrows above and below the current date to adjust.

Safety/Assistance

After pressing the "Safety/Assistance" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *ParkSense — If Equipped*

The ParkSense system will scan for objects behind the vehicle when the transmission gear selector is in REVERSE and the vehicle speed is less than 11 mph (18 km/h). It will provide an alert (audible and/or visual) to indicate the proximity to other objects. The system can be enabled with Sound Only, or Sound and Display. To change the ParkSense status, press and release the "Sound Only" or "Sounds and Display" button. Refer to "ParkSense" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for system function and operating information.

- *Front ParkSense Chime Volume*

The Front ParkSense Chime Volume settings can be selected from the EVIC/DID or Uconnect System — if equipped. The chime volume settings include LOW, MEDIUM, and HIGH. The factory default volume setting is MEDIUM. To change the mode status, press the "Front ParkSense Volume" button and select the "Low" "Med" or "High" buttons on the touchscreen. ParkSense will retain its last known configuration state through ignition cycles.

- *Rear ParkSense Chime Volume — If Equipped*

The Rear ParkSense Chime Volume settings can be selected from the EVIC/DID or Uconnect System — if equipped. The chime volume settings include LOW, MEDIUM, and HIGH. The factory default volume setting

is MEDIUM. To change the mode status, press the "Rear ParkSense Volume" button and select the "Low" "Med" or "High" buttons on the touchscreen. ParkSense will retain its last known configuration state through ignition cycles.

- *Tilt Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the exterior sideview mirrors will tilt downward when the ignition is in the RUN position and the transmission gear selector is in the REVERSE position. The mirrors will move back to their previous position when the transmission is shifted out of REVERSE. To make your selection, press the "Tilt Mirrors In Reverse" button on the touchscreen and make your selection.

- *ParkView Backup Camera Active Guidelines*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera Active Guidelines that allows you to see active guidelines over the ParkView Back up camera display whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE. The image will be displayed on the radio touchscreen display along with a caution note to "check entire surroundings" across the top of the screen. After five seconds, this note will disappear. To make your selection, press the "ParkView Backup Camera Active Guidelines" button on the touchscreen and make your selection. Press arrow button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

- *ParkView Backup Camera Delay*

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned OFF), the rear camera mode is exited and the navigation or audio screen appears again. When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned ON), the rear view image with dynamic grid lines will be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting out of "REVERSE" unless the forward vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (12 km/h), the transmission is shifted into PARK

or the ignition is switched to the OFF position. To set the ParkView Backup Camera Delay push the SETTINGS button on the faceplate, then the "Safety & Driving Assistance" button on the touchscreen. Press the "Parkview Backup camera Delay" button on the touchscreen to turn the ParkView Delay ON or OFF.

- ***Rain Sensing Auto Wipers — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the system will automatically activate the windshield wipers if it senses moisture on the windshield. To make your selection, press the "Rain Sensing" button on the touchscreen and make your selection.

- ***Hill Start Assist — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the Hill Start Assist (HSA) system is active. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control System" in "Starting And Operating" for system function and operating information. To make your selection, press the "Hill Start Assist" button on the touchscreen and make your selection.

Lights

After pressing the "Lights" button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

- ***Headlight Off Delay***

When this feature is selected, it allows the adjustment of the amount of time the headlights remain on after the engine is shut off. To change the Headlight Off Delay setting, press the "Headlight Off Delay" button on the touchscreen and choose either "0," "30," "60," or "90" buttons on the touchscreen to select your desired time interval.

- ***Headlight Illumination On Approach***

When this feature is selected, it allows the adjustment of the amount of time the headlights remain on when the

doors are unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob. To change the Illuminated Approach status, press the "Illuminated Approach" button on the touchscreen and choose either "0," "30," "60," or "90" buttons on the touchscreen to select your desired time interval.

- ***Headlights With Wipers — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, and the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on. The headlights will also turn off when the wipers are turned off, if they were turned on by this feature. To make your selection, press the "Lights w/Wipers" button and select from "On" or "Off."

- ***Auto Dim High Beams — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the high beam headlights will activate/deactivate automatically under certain conditions. To make your selection, press the "Auto High Beams" button on the touchscreen, and select from "On" or "Off." Refer to "Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for further information.

- ***Flash Lights With Lock***

When this feature is selected, the exterior lights will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. To make your selection, press the "Flash Lights w/Lock" button on the touchscreen, and select from "On" or "Off."

Doors & Locks

After pressing the "Doors & Locks" button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

- ***Auto Door Locks***

When this feature is selected, all doors will lock automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 mph

(24 km/h). To make your selection, press the "Auto Door Locks" button on the touchscreen and select from "On" or "Off."

- ***Auto Unlock On Exit***

When this feature is selected, all doors will unlock when the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is in the PARK or NEUTRAL position and the driver's door is opened. To make your selection, press the "Auto Unlock On Exit" button on the touchscreen and select from "On" or "Off."

- ***Sound Horn With Lock***

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the door locks are activated. To make your selection, press the "Horn w/Lock" Button and choose "Off," "1st Press" or "2nd Press."

- ***Sound Horn With Remote Start***

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the remote start is activated. To make your selection, press the "Horn w/Remote Start" button on the touchscreen and select from "On" or "Off."

- ***Remote Door Unlock***

This feature will allow you to program your remote door locks to open "All doors" or only the "Driver door" with the first push of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob or grabbing the Passive Entry door handle. To make your selection, press the "Remote Door Unlock" button on the touchscreen and choose from "All" or "Driver."

NOTE: If "Driver Door" is selected, the (RKE) Key Fob will have to be pushed two times in order to unlock all doors.

- *Memory Linked to Fob — If Equipped*

This feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle. To make your selection, press the "Memory Linked to Fob" button on the touchscreen and select from "On" or "Off."

NOTE: The seat will return to the memorized seat location if "Memory Linked to Fob" is set to (ON) when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob is used to unlock the door. Refer to "Driver Memory Seat" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for further information.

- *Passive Entry — If Equipped*

This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) without having to push the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob lock or unlock buttons. It automatically unlocks the doors when the outside door handle is grabbed. To make your selection, press the "Passive Entry" button on the touchscreen and select from "On" or "Off." Refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.

- *Flash Lights With Lock*

When this feature is selected, the exterior lights will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. To make your selection, press the "Flash Lights w/Lock" button on the touchscreen, and select from "On" or "Off."

Auto Comfort Systems — If Equipped

After pressing the "Auto-On Comfort" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Auto-On Driver Heated/Ventilated Seat & Steering Wheel With Vehicle Start — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected the driver's heated seat and heated steering wheel will automatically turn ON when temperatures are below 40° F (4.4° C). When temperatures are above 80° F (26.7° C) the driver vented seat will turn ON. To make your selection, press the "Auto Heated Seats" button on the touchscreen, then select either "On" or "Off."

Engine Off Options

After pressing the "Engine Off Options" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- *Easy Exit Seats — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the Driver's seat will automatically move rearward once the engine is shut off. To make your selection, press the "Easy Exit Seats" button on the touchscreen and make your selection.

- *Headlight Off Delay*

When this feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle. Press the "Headlight Off Delay" button on the touchscreen and choose from "0," "30," "60," or "90" seconds to select your desired time interval.

- *Engine Off Power Delay*

When this feature is selected, the power window switches, radio, Uconnect phone system (if equipped), DVD video system (if equipped), power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is cycled to OFF. Opening

either front door will cancel this feature. Press the "Engine Off Power Delay" button on the touchscreen and choose from "0 sec," "45 sec," "5 min" or "10 min" to select your desired time interval.

- *Auto Entry/Exit — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, it automatically lowers the vehicle ride height position when shifted into park. Press the "Auto Entry/Exit" button on the touchscreen and choose from "On" or "Off."

Suspension — If Equipped

After pressing the "Suspension" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Sound Horn With Lower*

When this feature is selected, a short horn sound will occur when the RKE Key Fob REMOTE LOWER button is pressed. To make your selection, press the "Horn w/lower" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Flash Lights With Lower*

When this feature is selected, the front and rear turn signals will flash when the RKE Key Fob REMOTE LOWER button is pressed twice. To make your selection, press the "Light w/Lower" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Auto Entry/Exit Suspension*

When this feature is selected, the vehicle automatically lowers from ride height position when vehicle shifted to park for easy entry/exit. To make your selection, press the "Auto Entry/Exit" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Display Suspension Messages*

When "All" is selected, all the Air Suspension Alerts will be displayed. When "Warning Only" is selected only the Air Suspension Warnings will be displayed.

- *Automatic Aero Mode (1500 Model Only)*

When this feature is selected the Ride Height will automatically be adjusted depending on the vehicle speed. To make your selection, press the "Aero Mode" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Tire Jack Mode*

When this feature is selected the air suspension system is disabled to prevent auto leveling of the suspension, while the vehicle is on a jack changing a tire. To make your selection, press the "Tire Jack Mode" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Transport Mode*

When this feature is selected the air suspension system is disabled to assist with flat bed towing. To make your selection, press the "Transport Mode" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."• ***Wheel Alignment Mode***

This feature prevents auto leveling of the air suspension while performing a wheel alignment service. Before performing a wheel alignment this mode must be enabled. Refer to your authorized dealer for further information.

Trailer Brake

After pressing the "Trailer Brake" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Trailer Select*

When this feature is selected, the Trailer Type can be selected between "Trailer 1," "Trailer 2," "Trailer 3" and "Trailer 4."

- *Trailer Brake Type*

When this feature is selected, the Trailer Brake Type can be changed between "Light Electric," "Heavy Electric," "Light EOH" and "Heavy EOH." Refer to "Integrated Trailer Brake Module" in "Starting And Operating."

Audio

After pressing the "Audio" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Balance/Fade*

This feature allows you to adjust the Balance and Fade settings. Press and drag the speaker icon or use the arrows to adjust, tap the "C" icon to readjust to the center.

- *Equalizer*

When in this display you may adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble settings. Adjust the settings with the "+" and "–" buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any point on the scale between the "+" and "–" buttons on the touchscreen.

- *Speed Adjusted Volume*

This feature increases or decreases volume relative to vehicle speed. To change the Speed Adjusted Volume

press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen and select from “Off,” “1,” “2” or “3” buttons on the touchscreen.

- *Surround Sound — If Equipped*

This feature provides simulated surround sound mode. To make your selection, press the “Surround Sound” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off.”

- *AUX Volume Offset — If Equipped*

This feature provides the ability to tune the audio level for portable devices connected through the AUX input. To make your selection, press the “AUX Volume Offset” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off.”

- *Loudness — If Equipped*

This feature improves sound quality at lower volumes. To make your selection, press the “Loudness” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off.”

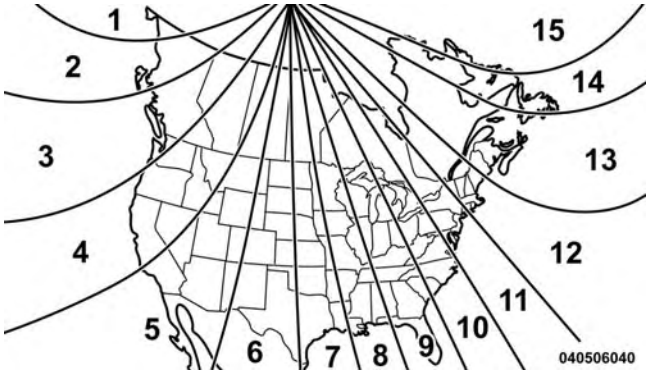
Compass Settings — If Equipped

After pressing the “Compass Settings” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Variance*

Compass Variance is the difference between Magnetic North and Geographic North. To compensate for the differences the variance should be set for the zone where the vehicle is driven, per the zone map. Once properly set, the compass will automatically compensate for the differences, and provide the most accurate compass heading.

NOTE: Keep magnetic materials away from the top of the instrument panel, such as iPod’s, Mobile Phones, Laptops and Radar Detectors. This is where the compass module is located, and it can cause interference with the compass sensor, and it may give false readings.



Compass Variance Map

- *Perform Compass Calibration*

Press the "Calibration" button on the touchscreen to change this setting. This compass is self-calibrating, which eliminates the need to manually reset the compass. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic until it is calibrated. You may also calibrate the compass by pressing the "ON" button on the touchscreen and completing one or more 360-degree turns (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects). The compass will now function normally.

Phone/Bluetooth

After pressing the "Phone/Bluetooth" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Paired Devices*

This feature shows which phones are paired to the Phone/Bluetooth system. For further information, refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.

SiriusXM Setup — If Equipped

After pressing the "SiriusXM Setup" button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

- *Channel Skip*

SiriusXM can be programmed to exclude undesirable channels while scanning. To make your selection, press the "Channel Skip" button on the touchscreen, select the channels you would like to skip.

- *Subscription Information*

New vehicle purchasers or lessees will receive a free limited time subscription to SiriusXM Satellite Radio with your radio. Following the expiration of the free services, it will be necessary to access the information on the Subscription Information screen to re-subscribe.

Press the "Subscription Info" button on the touchscreen to access the Subscription Information screen.

Write down the SIRIUS ID numbers for your receiver. To reactivate your service, either call the number listed on the screen or visit the provider online.

NOTE: SiriusXM Travel Link is a separate subscription and is available for U.S. residents only.

Restore Settings

After pressing the "Restore Settings" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Restore Settings*

When this feature is selected it will reset the Display, Clock, Audio, and Radio Settings to their default settings. To restore the settings to their default setting, press the "Restore Settings" button and select from "Yes" or "No." If "Yes" is selected a pop-up will appear asking ″Are you sure you want to reset your settings to default?" select "Yes" to restore, or "Cancel" to exit.

Clear Personal Data

After pressing the "Clear Personal Data Settings" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Clear Personal Data*

When this feature is selected it will remove all personal data including Bluetooth devices and presets. To remove all personal information, press the "Clear Personal Data" button and select from "Yes" or "No." If "Yes" is selected a pop-up will appear asking "Are you sure you want to clear all personal data?" select "Yes" to Clear, or "Cancel" to exit.

System Information

After pressing the "System Information" button on the touchscreen the following information will be available:

- *System Information*

When System Information is selected, a System Information screen will appear displaying the system software version.

Customer Programmable Features — Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Personal Settings

Press the "Apps" button on the touchscreen then press the "Settings" button on the touchscreen to display the settings menu screen. In this mode the Uconnect system allows you to access programmable features that may be equipped such as Display, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort (if equipped), Engine Off Options, Suspension, Trailer Brake, Audio, Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup (if equipped), Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data and System Information.

NOTE: Only one category may be selected at a time.

When making a selection, press the button on the touchscreen to enter the desired mode. Once in the desired mode, press and release the preferred setting until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. Once the setting is complete,

either press the back arrow button on the touchscreen or the Back button on the faceplate to return to the previous menu or press the "X" button on the touchscreen to close out of the settings screen. Pressing the Up or Down Arrow buttons on the touchscreen on the right side of the screen will allow you to toggle up or down through the list of available settings.

NOTE: All settings should be changed with the ignition in the "Run" position.

Display

After pressing the "Display" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- ***Display Mode***

When in this display you may select one of the auto display settings. To change Mode status, select from "Day," "Night" or "Auto" until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

NOTE: When Day or Night is selected for the Display Mode, the usage of the Parade Mode feature will cause the radio to activate the Display Brightness Day control even though the headlights are on.

- ***Display Brightness With Headlights ON***

When in this display, you may select the brightness with the headlights on. Adjust the brightness with the "+" and "–" setting buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any point on the scale between the "+" and "–" buttons on the touchscreen.

NOTE: To make changes to the ″Display Brightness with Headlights ON″ setting, the headlights must be on and the interior dimmer switch must not be in the ″party″ or ″parade″ positions.

- *Display Brightness With Headlights OFF*

When in this display, you may select the brightness with the headlights off. Adjust the brightness with the "+" and "–"setting buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any point on the scale between the "+" and "–" buttons on the touchscreen.

NOTE: To make changes to the ″Display Brightness with Headlights OFF″ setting, the headlights must be off and the interior dimmer switch must not be in the ″party″ or ″parade″ positions.

- *Set Theme*

This feature will allow you to choose a background theme for the display screen. The theme will change the background color, highlight color, and button color of the display screen. Press the "Set Theme" button on the touchscreen and select one of the pre-configured themes available.

- *Set Language*

When in this display, you may select one of multiple languages (English / Français / Español) for all display nomenclature, including the trip functions and the navigation system (if equipped). Press the Set Language button on the touchscreen, then press the desired language button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the language, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Touchscreen Beep*

When in this display, you may turn on or shut off the sound heard when a touchscreen button (button on the touchscreen) is pressed. Press the "Touchscreen Beep" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Navigation Turn-By-Turn In Cluster — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the turn-by-turn directions will appear in the display as the vehicle approaches a designated turn within a programmed route. To make your selection, press the "Navigation Turn-By-Turn In Cluster" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Controls Screen Time-Out — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the Controls Screen will stay open for five seconds before the screen times out. With the feature deselected, the screen will stay open until it is manually closed. Press the "Controls Screen Time-Out" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Fuel Saver Display — If Equipped*

This feature will allow you to enable fuel saver mode and will be displayed in the DID. Press the "Fuel Saver Display" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

Units

After pressing the "Units" button on the touchscreen you may select each unit of measure independently displayed in the Driver Information Display (DID), and navigation system (if equipped). The following selectable units of measure are listed below:

- *Speed*

Select from: "MPH" or "km/h."

- *Distance*

Select from: "mi" or "km."

- *Fuel Consumption*

Select from: “MPG” (US), “MPG” (UK), “L/100 km” or “km/L.”

- *Capacity*

Select from: “gal” (US), “gal” (UK), “L/100 km” or “L.”

- *Pressure*

Select from: “psi,” “kPa,” or “bar.”

- *Temperature*

Select from: “°C,” or “°F.”

- *Power*

Select from: “HP” (US), “HP” (UK), and “kW.”

- *Torque*

Select from: “lb-ft” or “Nm.”

After the desired setting has been selected, press the back arrow/Done button on the touchscreen to return to the previous menu.

Units — If Equipped

Press the Units button to select “US” or “Metric”.

Voice

After pressing the “Voice” button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Voice Response Length*

When in this display, you may change the Voice Response Length settings. To change the Voice Response Length, select from the “Brief” or “Detailed” buttons on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Show Command List*

When in this display, you may change the Show Command List settings. To change the Show Command List settings, select from the "Always," "With Help" or "Never" buttons on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected.

Clock

After pressing the "Clock" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Sync Time With GPS — If Equipped*

This feature will allow you to automatically have the radio set the time. To change the Sync Time setting, press the "Sync with GPS Time" button on the touchscreen to turn the feature on or off.

- *Set Time Hours*

This feature will allow you to adjust the hours. The "Sync with GPS Time" button on the touchscreen must not be selected. To make your selection, press the "+" or "–" buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the hours up or down.

- *Set Time Minutes*

This feature will allow you to adjust the minutes. The "Sync with GPS Time" button on the touchscreen must be unchecked. To make your selection, press the "+" or "–" buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the minutes up or down.

- *Time Format*

This feature will allow you to select the time format display setting. Press the "Time Format" button on the touchscreen and select from "12hrs" or "24hrs."

- *Show Time In Status Bar — If Equipped*

This feature will allow you to turn on or shut off the digital clock in the status bar. To change the Show Time Status setting press the "Show Time in Status Bar" button on the touchscreen to turn the feature on or off.

Safety & Driving Assistance

After pressing the "Safety & Driving Assistance" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- *ParkSense*

The Rear Park Assist system will scan for objects behind the vehicle when the transmission gear selector is in REVERSE and the vehicle speed is less than 11 mph (18 km/h). The system can be enabled with Sound Only or Sound and Display. To change the Park Assist status, select the "Sound Only" or the "Sound and Display" button on the touchscreen. Refer to "ParkSense Rear Park Assist" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for system function and operating information.

- *Front ParkSense Chime Volume*

The Front ParkSense Chime Volume settings can be selected from the EVIC/DID or Uconnect System — if equipped. The chime volume settings include LOW, MEDIUM, and HIGH. The factory default volume setting is MEDIUM. To change the mode status, press the "Front ParkSense Volume" button and select the "Low" "Med" or "High" buttons on the touchscreen. ParkSense will retain its last known configuration state through ignition cycles.

- *Rear ParkSense Chime Volume*

The Rear ParkSense Chime Volume settings can be selected from the EVIC/DID or Uconnect System — if equipped. The chime volume settings include LOW, MEDIUM, and HIGH. The factory default volume setting is MEDIUM. To change the mode status, press the "Rear

ParkSense Volume" button and select the "Low" "Med" or "High" buttons on the touchscreen. ParkSense will retain its last known configuration state through ignition cycles.

- *Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped*

When this feature is selected, the outside sideview mirrors will tilt downward when the ignition is in the RUN position and the transmission gear selector is in the REVERSE position. The mirrors will move back to their previous position when the transmission is shifted out of REVERSE. To make your selection, press the "Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse" button on the touchscreen to select from on or off.

- *ParkView Backup Camera*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera that allows you to see an on-screen image of the rear surroundings of your vehicle whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE. The image will be displayed on the radio touchscreen display along with a caution note to "check entire surroundings" across the top of the screen. After five seconds, this note will disappear. The ParkView camera is located on the rear of the vehicle above the rear License plate. To make your selection, press the "ParkView Backup Camera" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to the setting, indicating that the setting had been selected.

- *ParkView Backup Camera Active Guidelines*

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera Active Guidelines that allows you to see Active (Dynamic) Guidelines which deflect with steering wheel angle over the ParkView Back up Camera display whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE. The image will be displayed on the radio touchscreen display along with a caution note to "check entire surroundings" across the top of the screen. After five seconds, this note

will disappear. To make your selection, press the "ParkView Backup Camera Active Guidelines" and select from on or off.

- ***ParkView Backup Camera Delay***

When this feature is enabled, it will allow the ParkView Backup Camera display to remain on while in drive for up to 10 seconds, or 8 mph. To make your selection, press the "ParkView Backup Camera Delay" button on the touchscreen to select from on or off.

- ***Rain Sensing Auto Wipers — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the system will automatically activate the windshield wipers if it senses moisture on the windshield. To make your selection, press the "Rain Sensing" button on the touchscreen to select from on or off.

- ***Hill Start Assist — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the Hill Start Assist (HSA) system is active. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control System" in "Starting And Operating" for system function and operating information. To make your selection, press the "Hill Start Assist" button on the touchscreen to select from on or off.

- ***Two Or Four Corner Air Suspension Modes — If Equipped***

There are four air suspension modes designed to protect the system in unique situations. Tire Jack Mode is selected to assist in changing a spare tire. Transport Mode is selected to assist when the vehicle is being flat bed towed. Wheel Alignment Mode is selected before performing a wheel alignment, refer to your authorized

dealer for information. Protection Mode will automatically be selected to "protect" the air suspension system when the payload has been exceeded or load leveling cannot be achieved.

Lights

After pressing the "Lights" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- ***Headlight Off Delay***

When this feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle. To make your selection, press the "+" or "–" buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the seconds up or down.

- ***Headlight Illumination On Approach***

When this feature is selected, the headlights will activate and remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when the doors are unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob. To make your selection, press the "+" or "–" buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the seconds up or down.

- ***Headlights With Wipers — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, and the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on. The headlights will also turn off when the wipers are turned off if they were turned on by this feature. To make your selection, press the "Headlights With Wipers" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- ***Auto Dim High Beams — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the high beam headlights will deactivate automatically under certain conditions. To make your selection, press the "Auto Dim High Beams" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

Refer to "Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for further information.

- *Flash Lights With Lock*

When this feature is selected, the exterior lamps will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. To make your selection, press the "Flash Lights with Lock" button on the touchscreen, until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

Doors & Locks

After pressing the "Doors & Locks" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Auto Door Locks*

When this feature is selected, all doors will lock automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h). To make your selection, press the "Auto Door Lock" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Auto Unlock On Exit*

When this feature is selected, all doors will unlock when the vehicle is stopped and the transmission is in the PARK or NEUTRAL position and the driver's door is opened. To make your selection, press the "Auto Unlock On Exit" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Flash Lights With Lock*

When this feature is selected, the front and rear turn signals will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the RKE Key Fob. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. To make your selection, press the "Flash Lights With Lock" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *Sound Horn With Lock*

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the door locks are activated. To make your selection, press the "Sound Horn With Lock" button on the touchscreen and select from "Off", "1st Press" or "2nd Press".

- *Sound Horn With Remote Start*

When this feature is selected, the horn will sound when the remote start is activated. To make your selection, press the "Sound Horn With Remote Start" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- *1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks*

When 1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks "Driver Door" is selected, only the driver's door will unlock on the first press of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob UNLOCK button you must push the RKE Key Fob UNLOCK button twice to unlock the passenger's doors. When Unlock "All Doors" On 1st Press is selected, all of the doors will unlock on the first push of the RKE Key Fob UNLOCK button.

NOTE: If the vehicle is programmed 1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks "All Doors", all doors will unlock no matter which Passive Entry equipped door handle is grasped. If 1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks "Driver Door" is programmed, only the driver's door will unlock when the driver's door is grasped. With Passive Entry, if 1st Press Of Key Fob Unlocks "Driver Door" is programmed pushing the handle more than once will only result in the driver's door opening. If driver door is selected, once the driver door is opened, the interior door lock/unlock switch can be used to unlock all doors (or use RKE Key Fob).

- ***Passive Entry — If Equipped***

This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicles door(s) without having to push the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob lock or unlock buttons. To make your selection, press the "Passive Entry" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected. Refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle".

- ***Personal Settings Linked To Key Fob — If Equipped***

This feature provides automatic driver seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle. To make your selection, press the "Personal Settings Linked To Key Fob" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

NOTE: The seat will return to the memorized seat location (if Personal Settings Linked To Key Fob is set to ON) when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) Key Fob is used to unlock the door. Refer to "Driver Memory Seat" in "Understanding The Features Of Your Vehicle" for further information.

Auto Comfort Systems — If Equipped

After pressing the "Auto-On Comfort" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- ***Auto-On Driver Heated/Ventilated Seat & Steering Wheel With Vehicle Start — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected the driver's heated seat and heated steering wheel will automatically turn ON when temperatures are below 40° F (4.4° C). When temperatures are above 80° F (26.7° C) the driver vented seat will turn ON. To make your selection, press the "Auto Heated Seats" button on the touchscreen, then select either "Off," "Remote Start" or "All Starts".

Engine Off Options

After pressing the "Engine Off Options" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- ***Easy Exit Seat — If Equipped***

When this feature is selected, the Driver's seat will automatically move rearward once the engine is shut off. To make your selection, press the "Easy Exit Seat" button on the touchscreen until a check-mark appears next to setting, showing that setting has been selected.

- ***Engine Off Power Delay***

When this feature is selected, the power window switches, radio, Uconnect phone system (if equipped), DVD video system (if equipped), power sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to

10 minutes after the ignition is cycled to OFF. Opening either front door will cancel this feature. To change the Engine Off Power Delay status press the "+" or "–" buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the time delay up or down.

- *Headlight Off Delay*

When this feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle. To make your selection press the "+" or "–" buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the seconds up or down.

Air Suspension — If Equipped

After pressing the "Suspension" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available.

- *Sound Horn With Lower*

When this feature is selected, a short horn sound will occur when the RKE Key Fob REMOTE LOWER button is pressed. Press the box next to your selection and a check-mark appears next to the feature showing the system has been activated or the check-mark is removed showing the system has been deactivated.

- *Flash Lights With Lower*

When this feature is selected, the front and rear turn signals will flash when the RKE Key Fob REMOTE LOWER button is pressed twice. This feature may be selected with or without the Sound Horn on Lower feature selected. Press the box next to your selection and a check-mark appears next to the feature showing the system has been activated or the check-mark is removed showing the system has been deactivated.

- *Suspension Display Messages*

When "All" is selected, all the Air Suspension Alerts will be displayed. When "Warning" is selected only the Air Suspension Warnings will be displayed.

- *Automatic Aero Mode (1500 Model Only)*

When this feature is selected the Ride Height will automatically be adjusted depending on the vehicle speed. Press the box next to your selection and a check-mark appears next to the feature showing the system has been activated or the check-mark is removed showing the system has been deactivated.

- *Tire Jack Mode*

When this feature is selected the air suspension system is disabled to assist with changing a spare tire. Press the box next to your selection and a check-mark appears next to the feature showing the system has been activated or the check-mark is removed showing the system has been deactivated.

- *Transport Mode*

When this feature is selected the air suspension system lowers and then disables to assist with flat bed towing. Press the box next to your selection and a check-mark appears next to the feature showing the system has been activated or the check-mark is removed showing the system has been deactivated.

- *Wheel Alignment Mode*

Before performing a wheel alignment this mode must be enabled. Refer to your authorized dealer for further information.

Trailer Brake

After pressing the "Trailer Brake" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Trailer Select*

When this feature is selected, the Trailer Type can be selected between "Trailer 1," "Trailer 2," "Trailer 3" and "Trailer 4." To make your selection, scroll up or down until the preferred setting is highlighted, then press and

release the SELECT button until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected.

- *Trailer Brake Type*

When this feature is selected, the Trailer Brake Type can be changed between "Light Electric," "Heavy Electric," "Light EOH" and "Heavy EOH." To make your selection, scroll up or down until the preferred setting is highlighted, then press and release the SELECT button until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that the setting has been selected. Refer to "Integrated Trailer Brake Module" in "Starting And Operating."

Audio

After pressing the "Audio" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Balance/Fade*

This feature allows you to adjust the Balance and Fade settings. Press and drag the speaker icon or use the arrows to adjust, tap the "C" icon to readjust to the center.

- *Equalizer*

When in this display you may adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble settings. Adjust the settings with the "+" and "–" buttons on the touchscreen or by selecting any point on the scale between the "+" and "–" buttons on the touchscreen.

- *Speed Adjusted Volume*

This feature increases or decreases volume relative to vehicle speed. To change the Speed Adjusted Volume press the "Speed Adjusted Volume" button on the touchscreen and select from "Off," "1," "2" or "3" buttons on the touchscreen.

- *Surround Sound — If Equipped*

This feature provides simulated surround sound mode. To make your selection, press the "Surround Sound" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *AUX Volume Offset — If Equipped*

This feature provides the ability to tune the audio level for portable devices connected through the AUX input. To make your selection, press the "AUX Volume Offset" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Loudness — If Equipped*

This feature improves sound quality at lower volumes. To make your selection, press the "Loudness" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

Phone/Bluetooth

After pressing the "Phone/Bluetooth" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Paired Phones*

This feature shows which phones are paired to the Phone/Bluetooth system. For further information, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.

- *Paired Audio Sources*

This feature shows which audio devices are paired to the Phone/Bluetooth system. For further information, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.

SiriusXM Setup — If Equipped

After pressing the "SiriusXM Setup" button on the touchscreen, the following settings will be available:

- *Tune Start*

Tune Start begins playing the current song from the beginning when you tune to a music channel using one of the twelve presets, so you can enjoy the complete song. This feature occurs the first time the preset is selected

during that current song. Tune Start works in the background, so you will not even realize it's on, except that you will miss the experience of joining your favorite song with only a few seconds left to play. To make your selection, press the "Tune Start" button on the touchscreen, select "On" or "Off."

- *Channel Skip*

SiriusXM can be programmed to designate a group of channels that are the most desirable to listen to or to exclude undesirable channels while scanning. To make your selection, press the "Channel Skip" button on the touchscreen, select the channels you would like to skip followed by pressing the back arrow button on the touchscreen.

- *Subscription Information*

New vehicle purchasers or lessees will receive a free limited time subscription to SiriusXM Satellite Radio with your radio. Following the expiration of the free services, it will be necessary to access the information on the Subscription Information screen to re-subscribe.

Press the "Subscription Info" button on the touchscreen to access the Subscription Information screen.

Write down the Sirius ID numbers for your receiver. To reactivate your service, either call the number listed on the screen or visit the provider online.

NOTE: SiriusXM Travel Link is a separate subscription and is available for U.S. residents only.

Restore Settings

After pressing the "Restore Settings" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Restore Settings*

When this feature is selected it will reset the Display, Clock, Audio, and Radio Settings to their default settings.

To restore the settings to their default setting, press the "Restore Settings" button on the touchscreen and pop-up will appear asking ″Are you sure you want to reset your settings to default?" select "OK" to restore, or "Cancel" to exit. Once the settings are restored, a pop-up appears stating ″Settings Reset To Default.″

Clear Personal Data

After pressing the "Clear Personal Data" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *Clear Personal Data*

When this feature is selected it will remove personal data including Bluetooth devices and presets. To remove personal information, press the "Clear Personal Data" button and a pop-up will appear asking ″Are you sure you want to clear all personal data?" select "OK" to Clear, or "Cancel" to exit. Once the data has been cleared, a pop up appears stating ″Personal Data Cleared."

System Information

After pressing the "System Information" button on the touchscreen the following settings will be available:

- *System Information*

When System Information is selected, a System Information screen will appear displaying the system software version.

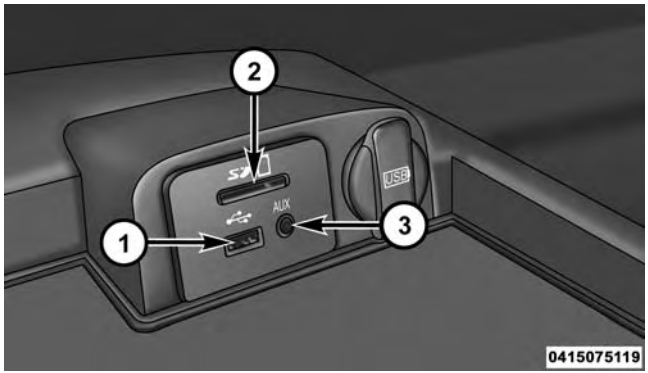
UCONNECT RADIOS

For detailed information about your Uconnect 3.0, 5.0 and 8.4A/AN radio, refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.

iPod/USB/MP3 CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED

Located inside the center console upper lid, this feature allows an iPod or external USB device to be plugged into the USB port.

iPod control supports Mini, 4G, Photo, Nano, 5G iPod and iPhone devices. Some iPod software versions may not fully support the iPod control features. Please visit Apple's website for software updates.



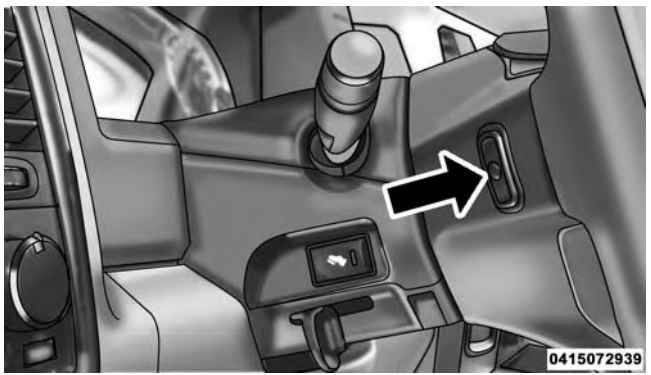
Center Console USB/AUX SD Card Media Hub

1 — USB Port
2 — SD Card Slot
3 — Aux Jack

For further information, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement or visit UconnectPhone.com.

STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the back surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



Remote Sound System Controls (Rearview Of Steering Wheel)

The right hand control is a rocker type switch with a push-button in the center. Pushing the top of the switch will increase the volume, and pushing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume.

The button located in the center of the right hand control will switch modes to Radio, CD or other valid audio sources.

The left hand control is a rocker type switch with a push-button in the center. The function of the left hand control is different depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left hand control operation in each mode.

Radio Operation

Pushing the top of the switch will SEEK up for the next listenable station and pushing the bottom of the switch will SEEK down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left hand control will tune to the next pre-set station that you have programmed in the radio pre-set buttons.

CD Player — If Equipped

Pushing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within eight seconds after the current track begins to play.

If you push the switch up or down twice, it plays the second track. If you push the switch up or down three times, it will play the third, etc.

CD/DVD DISC MAINTENANCE

To keep a CD/DVD in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.
2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.
3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.
4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or anti-static sprays.
5. Store the disc in its case after playing.
6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.
7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

NOTE: If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged (e.g., scratched, reflective coating removed, a hair, moisture or dew on the disc) oversized, or have protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

RADIO OPERATION AND MOBILE DEVICES

Under certain conditions, an "on" mobile device in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the mobile device antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily "clear" by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during mobile device operation when not using Uconnect (if equipped).

Regulatory And Safety Information

USA/CANADA

Exposure to Radio Frequency Radiation

The radiated output power of the internal wireless radio is far below the FCC radio frequency exposure limits. Nevertheless, the wireless radio will be used in such a manner that the radio is 20 cm or further from the human body.

The internal wireless radio operates within guidelines found in radio frequency safety standards and recommendations, which reflect the consensus of the scientific community.

The radio manufacturer believes the internal wireless radio is safe for use by consumers. The level of energy emitted is far less than the electromagnetic energy emitted by wireless devices such as mobile phones. However, the use of wireless radios may be restricted in some situations or environments, such as aboard airplanes. If you are unsure of restrictions, you are encouraged to ask for authorization before turning on the wireless radio.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE:

- This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
- If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

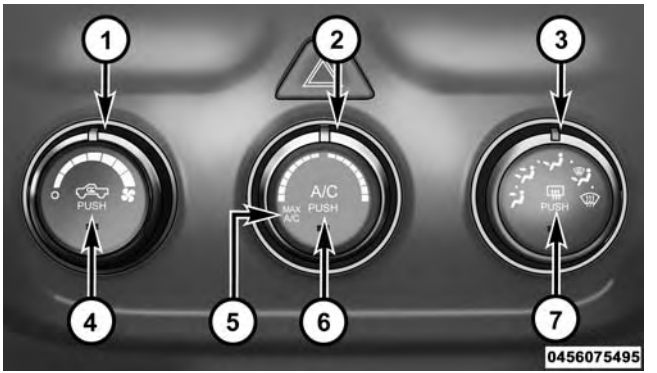
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio technician for help.

CLIMATE CONTROLS

The Climate Control System allows you to regulate the temperature, amount, and direction of air circulating throughout the vehicle. The controls are located on the instrument panel below the radio.

Manual Climate Controls Without Touchscreen — If Equipped

The controls for the manual heating and air conditioning system in this vehicle consist of a series of outer rotary dials and inner push knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.



Manual Climate Controls

1 — Front Blower
2 — Temperature Control
3 — MODE Control
4 — RECIRCULATION Control
5 — MAX A/C
6 — Air Conditioning (A/C)
7 — DEFROST Mode

Front Blower Control

There are seven blower speeds. Use this control to regulate the amount of air forced through the system in any mode you select. The blower speed increases as you move the control clockwise from the OFF position.

NOTE: Depending on the configuration, your vehicle may be equipped with four blower speeds.

Temperature Control

045671420

Use this control to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. Rotating the knob counterclockwise, from top center into the blue area of the scale, indicates cooler temperatures. Rotating the knob clockwise, into the red area, indicates warmer temperatures.

Air Conditioning Operation

045671422

Push the A/C button to engage the Air Conditioning (A/C). A LED will illuminate when the A/C system is engaged.

MAX A/C

For maximum cooling, when MAX A/C is selected the A/C is turned on automatically and the air is recirculated.

NOTE: A/C cannot be deselected when in MAX A/C position. The LED will blink three times if the A/C button is pushed. If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from behind the radiator and through the condenser. Fabric front fascia protectors may reduce airflow to the condenser, reducing air conditioning performance.

Mode Control (Air Direction)

045671421

Mode control allows you to choose from several patterns of air distribution. You can select either a primary mode, as identified by the symbols, or a blend of two of these modes. The closer the control is to a particular mode, the more air distribution you receive from that mode.

Panel Mode

Air is directed through the outlets in the instrument panel. These outlets can be adjusted to direct airflow.

Bi-Level Mode

Air is directed through the panel and floor outlets.

NOTE: There is a difference in temperature (in any conditions other than full cold or full hot), between the upper and lower outlets for added comfort. The warmer air goes to the floor outlets. This feature gives improved comfort during sunny but cool conditions.

Floor Mode

Air is directed through the floor outlets with a small amount through the defrost and side window demist outlets.

Mix Mode

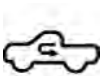
Air is directed through the floor, defrost and side window demist outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat at the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort, while reducing moisture on the windshield.

Defrost Mode

Air is directed through the windshield and side window demist outlets. Use the DEFROST mode with maximum blower and warm temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting.

NOTE: The air conditioning compressor operates in MIX and DEFROST, or a blend of these modes even if the A/C button is not pushed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield. To improve fuel economy, use these modes only when necessary.

Recirculation Control



Push the Recirculation Control button to choose between outside air intake or recirculation of the air inside the vehicle. A LED will illuminate when you are in Recirculation mode. Only use the Recirculation mode to temporarily block out any outside odors, smoke, or dust, and to cool the interior rapidly upon initial start-up in very hot or humid weather.

NOTE:

- If the RECIRCULATION button is pushed when the system is in Defrost mode, the Recirculation LED indicator will flash three times and then turn off to indicate Recirculation mode is not allowed.
- Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.
- In cold or damp weather, the use of the Recirculation mode will cause windows to fog on the inside because of moisture buildup inside the vehicle. For maximum defogging, select the outside air position.
- The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection by pushing the A/C button.

Air Outlets

The airflow from each of the instrument panel outlets can be adjusted for direction, and turned on or off to control airflow.

NOTE: For maximum airflow to the rear, the center instrument panel outlets can be directed toward the rear seat passengers.

Economy Mode

If ECONOMY mode is desired, push the A/C button to turn off the LED indicator and the A/C compressor. Rotate the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level or Floor modes.

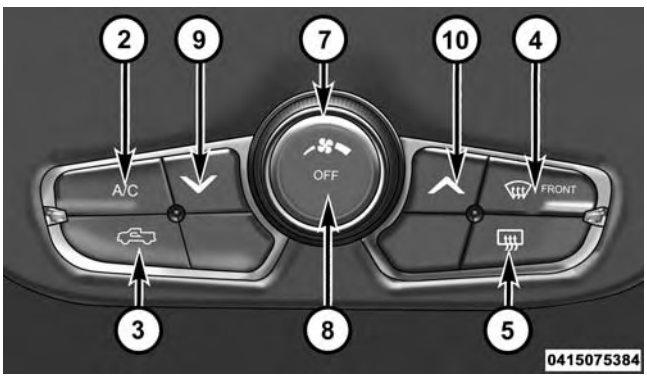
Stop/Start System — If Equipped

While in an Autostop, the Climate Controls system may automatically adjust airflow to maintain cabin comfort. Customer settings will be maintained upon return to an engine running condition.

Manual Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped

Buttons On The Faceplate

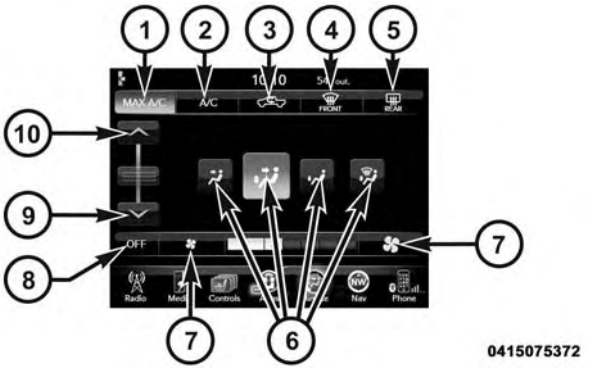
The buttons on the faceplate are located below the radio touchscreen.



Climate Controls — Buttons On The Faceplate

Buttons On The Touchscreen

Buttons on the touchscreen are accessible on the radio.



Temperature Controls — Buttons On The Touchscreen

Button Descriptions (Applies To Both Buttons On The Faceplate and Buttons On The Touchscreen)

1. MAX A/C Button

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button on the touchscreen illuminates when MAX A/C is ON. In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the prior settings and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.

2. A/C Button

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is ON. Performing this function again will cause the A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the A/C indicator will turn off.

3. Recirculation Button

Press and release to change the current setting; the indicator illuminates when ON.

4. Front Defrost Button

Press and release to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is ON. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level will increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. Performing this function will cause the ATC to switch into manual mode. If the front defrost mode is turned off the climate system will return the previous setting.

5. Rear Defrost Button

Press and release this button to turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped) and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after 10 minutes.

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- **Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.**
- **Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.**
- **Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.**

6. Modes

The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, and demist outlets. The Mode settings are as follows:

- *Panel Mode*

Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.

- *Bi-Level Mode*

Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

NOTE: BI-LEVEL mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.

- *Floor Mode*

Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

- *Mix Mode*

Air comes from the floor, defrost and side window demister outlets. This mode works best in cold or snowy conditions.

NOTE: The air conditioning compressor operates in MIX and DEFROST modes even if the A/C button is not pressed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield. To improve fuel economy, utilize these modes only when required.

7. Blower Control

Blower control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. Adjusting the blower will cause automatic mode to switch to manual operation. The speeds can be selected using either buttons on the faceplate or buttons on the touchscreen as follows:

Blower Control Knob On The Faceplate

The blower speed increases as you turn the control clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.

Buttons On The Touchscreen

Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons.

8. Climate Control OFF Button

Press and release this button to turn the Climate Control ON/OFF.

9. Temperature Control Down Button

Push the button on the faceplate for cooler temperature settings. On the touchscreen, slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button for cooler temperature settings.

10. Temperature Control Up Button

Push the button on the faceplate for warmer temperature settings. On the touchscreen, slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button for cooler temperature settings.

Recirculation Control

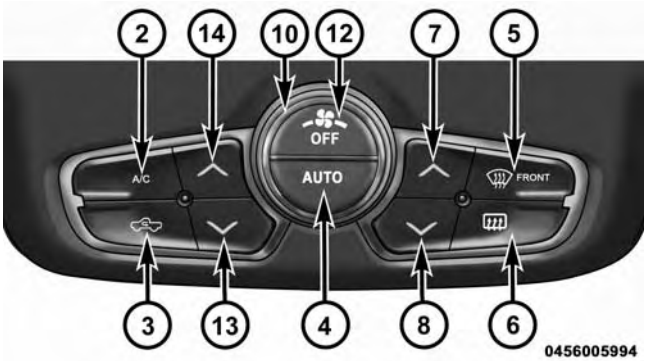
When outside air contains smoke, odors, or high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired, you may wish to recirculate interior air by pressing the RECIRCULATION control button. Recirculation mode should only be used temporarily. The recirculation LED will illuminate on the blower control knob when this button is selected. Push the button a second time to turn off the Recirculation mode LED and allow outside air into the vehicle.

NOTE: In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The Recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to improve window clearing operation. Recirculation will be disabled automatically if these modes are selected.

Automatic Climate Controls With Touchscreen — If Equipped

Buttons On The Faceplate

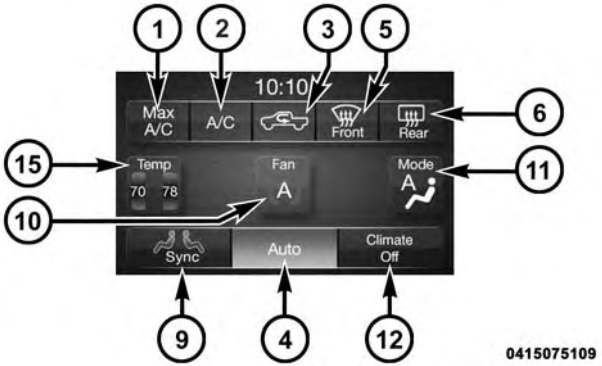
The buttons on the faceplate are located below the Uconnect screen.



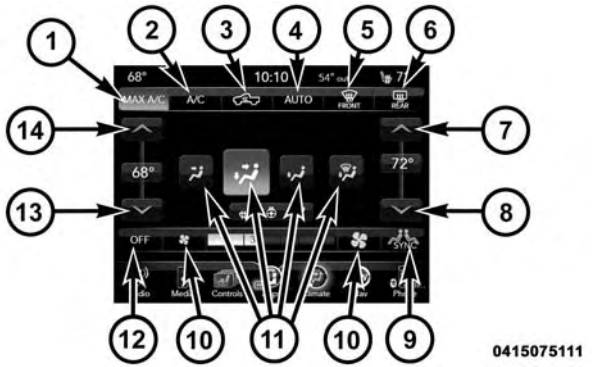
Automatic Climate Controls — Buttons On The Faceplate

Buttons On The Touchscreen

Buttons on the touchscreen are accessible on the Uconnect system screen.



Uconnect 5.0 Automatic Temperature Controls — Buttons On The Touchscreen



Uconnect 8.4 Automatic Temperature Controls — Buttons On The Touchscreen

Button Descriptions (Applies To Both Buttons On The Faceplate And Buttons On The Touchscreen)

1. MAX A/C Button

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when MAX A/C is ON. Performing this function again will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.

2. A/C Button

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is ON. Performing this function again will cause the A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the A/C indicator will turn off.

3. Recirculation Button

Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when ON.

4. AUTO Operation Button

Automatically controls the interior cabin temperature by adjusting airflow distribution and amount. Performing this function will cause the ATC to switch between manual mode and automatic modes. Refer to "Automatic Operation" for more information.

5. Front Defrost Button

Press and release to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is ON. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level will increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. Performing this function will cause the ATC to switch into manual mode. If the front defrost mode is turned off the climate system will return the previous setting.

6. Rear Defrost Button

Press and release this button to turn on the rear window defroster (if equipped) and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after 10 minutes.

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- **Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.**
- **Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.**

7. Passenger Temperature Control Up Button (Uconnect 8.4)

Provides the passenger with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate for warmer temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow for warmer temperature settings.

NOTE: Pressing this button while in Sync mode will automatically exit Sync.

8. Passenger Temperature Control Down Button (Uconnect 8.4)

Provides the passenger with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate for cooler temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow for cooler temperature settings.

NOTE: Pressing this button while in Sync mode will automatically exit Sync.

9. SYNC

Press the Sync button on the touchscreen to toggle the Sync feature On/Off. The Sync indicator is illuminated when this feature is enabled. Sync is used to synchronize the passenger temperature setting with the driver temperature setting. Changing the passenger temperature setting while in Sync will automatically exit this feature.

10. Blower Control

Blower control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. Adjusting the blower will cause automatic mode to switch to manual operation. The speeds can be selected using either the blower control knob on the faceplate or buttons on the touchscreen as follows:

Blower Control Knob On The Faceplate

The blower speed increases as you turn the blower control knob clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.

Button On The Touchscreen

Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons.

11. Modes

The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, demist outlets and defrost outlets. The Mode settings are as follows:

- **Panel Mode**

Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.

- **Bi-Level Mode**

Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

NOTE: BI-LEVEL mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.

- **Floor Mode**

Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.

- **Mix Mode**

Air comes from the floor, defrost and side window demist outlets. This mode works best in cold or snowy conditions.

12. Climate Control OFF Button

Press and release this button to turn the Climate Control ON/OFF.

13. Driver Temperature Control Down Button (Uconnect 8.4)

Provides the driver with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate for cooler temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow for cooler temperature settings.

NOTE: In Sync mode, this button will also automatically adjust the passenger temperature setting at the same time.

14. Driver Temperature Control Up Button (Uconnect 8.4)

Provides the driver with independent temperature control. Push the button on the faceplate button for warmer temperature settings or on the touchscreen, press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow for warmer temperature settings.

NOTE: In Sync mode, this button will also automatically adjust the passenger temperature setting at the same time.

15. Temperature Control (Uconnect 5.0)

Press the temperature button on the touchscreen to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. Moving the temperature bar into the red area, indicates warmer temperatures. Moving the temperature bar into the blue area indicates cooler temperatures.

Climate Control Functions

A/C (Air Conditioning)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) button allows the operator to manually activate or deactivate the air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is turned on, cool dehumidified air will flow through the outlets into the cabin. For improved fuel economy, press the A/C button to turn off the air conditioning and manually adjust the blower and airflow mode settings. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level or Floor modes.

NOTE:

- For Manual Climate Controls, if the system is in Mix, Floor or Defrost Mode, the A/C can be turned off, but the A/C system shall remain active to prevent fogging of the windows.
- If fog or mist appears on the windshield or side glass, select Defrost mode and adjust blower speed if needed.
- If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from behind the radiator and through the condenser. Fabric front fascia protectors may reduce airflow to the condenser, reducing air conditioning performance.

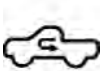
MAX A/C

MAX A/C sets the control for maximum cooling performance.

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button on the touchscreen illuminates when MAX A/C is ON.

In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the prior settings and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.

Recirculation Control



When outside air contains smoke, odors, or high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired, you may wish to recirculate interior air by pressing the RECIRCULATION control button on the touchscreen or faceplate. Recirculation mode should only be used temporarily. The recirculation LED button on the faceplate will illuminate when either button is selected. Push either button a second time to turn off the Recirculation mode LED and allow outside air into the vehicle.

NOTE: In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The recirculation feature may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield. On systems with Manual Climate Controls, the recirculation mode is not allowed in Defrost mode to improve window clearing operation. Recirculation will be disabled automatically if this mode is selected. Attempting to use Recirculation while in this mode will cause the LED in the control button on the faceplate to blink and then turn off.

Automatic Temperature Control (ATC)

Automatic Operation

1. Push the AUTO button on the faceplate or press the "AUTO" button on the touchscreen.
2. Adjust the temperature you would like the system to maintain by adjusting the driver and passenger temperature buttons on the faceplate or buttons on the touchscreen. Once the desired temperature is displayed, the system will achieve and automatically maintain that comfort level.
3. When the system is set up for your comfort level, it is not necessary to change the temperature. You will experience the greatest efficiency by simply allowing the system to function automatically.

NOTE:

- It is not necessary to move the temperature settings. The system automatically adjusts the temperature, mode, and blower speed to provide comfort as quickly as possible.
- The temperature can be displayed in U.S. or Metric units by selecting the Uconnect customer-programmable feature. Refer to the "Uconnect Settings" in this section of the manual.

To provide you with maximum comfort in the Automatic mode, during cold start-ups the blower fan will remain on low until the engine warms up. The blower will increase in speed and transition into Auto mode.

Manual Operation Override

The system allows for manual selection of blower speed, air distribution mode, A/C status and recirculation control.

The blower fan speed can be set to any fixed speed by adjusting the blower control. The fan will now operate at a fixed speed until additional speeds are selected. This allows the front occupants to control the volume of air circulated in the vehicle and cancel the Auto mode.

The operator can also select the direction of the airflow by selecting one of the available mode settings. A/C operation and Recirculation control can also be manually selected in Manual operation.

NOTE: Each of these features operates independently from each other. If any feature is controlled manually, temperature control will continue to operate automatically.

Operating Tips

NOTE: Refer to the chart at the end of this section for suggested control settings for various weather conditions.

Summer Operation

The engine cooling system must be protected with a high-quality antifreeze coolant to provide proper corrosion protection and to protect against engine overheating. OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) is recommended. Refer to “Maintenance Procedures” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for proper coolant selection.

Winter Operation

To ensure the best possible heater and defroster performance, make sure the engine cooling system is functioning properly and the proper amount, type, and concentration of coolant is used. Refer to “Maintenance Procedures” in “Maintaining Your Vehicle” for proper

coolant selection. Use of the air Recirculation mode during Winter months is not recommended because it may cause window fogging.

Vacation/Storage

Any time you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in fresh air with the blower setting in high. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

Window Fogging and Frosting

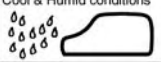
Vehicle windows tend to fog on the inside of the glass in mild, rainy and/or humid weather. Windows may frost on the inside of the glass in very cold weather. To clear the windows, select Defrost or Mix mode and increase the front blower speed. Do not use the Recirculation mode without A/C for long periods, as fogging may occur.

NOTE: Automatic Temperature Controls (ATC) will automatically adjust the climate control settings to reduce or eliminate window fogging on the front windshield. When this occurs, recirculation will be unavailable.

Outside Air Intake

Make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of obstructions such as leaves. Leaves collected in the air intake may reduce airflow, can cause odor, and if they enter the plenum they could plug the water drains. In winter months, ensure the air intake is clear of ice, slush and snow.

Control Setting Suggestions For Various Weather Conditions

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
Hot weather and vehicle interior is very hot	Set the mode control to , A/C on, and blower on high. Roll down the windows for a minute to flush out the hot air. Once comfort is achieved adjust controls for comfort.
Warm weather	Turn A/C on and set the mode control to the position.
Cool Sunny	Operate in position.
Cool & Humid conditions 	Set the mode control to and turn on A/C to keep windows clear.
Cold Weather	Set the mode control to the position. If windshield fogging starts to occur, move the control towards the position.

0456001003

Operating Tips Chart

PERSONALIZED MENU BAR

The Uconnect features and services in the main menu bar are easily changed for your convenience. Simply follow these steps:

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Main Menu

1. Press the "Apps" button to open the App screen.
2. Press and hold, then drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

The replaced shortcut will now be an active App/shortcut on the main menu bar.

4

UCONNECT VOICE RECOGNITION

Introducing Uconnect

Start using Uconnect Voice Recognition with these helpful quick tips. It provides the key Voice Commands and tips you need to know to control your Uconnect 3.0, 5.0 or 8.4A/8.4AN system.

Uconnect 3.0

Uconnect 5.0

Uconnect 8.4AN

If you see the icon on your touchscreen, you have the Uconnect 8.4AN system. If not, you have a Uconnect 8.4A system.

Get Started

1. Visit UconnectPhone.com to check mobile device and feature compatibility and to find phone pairing instructions.
2. Reduce background noise. Wind and passenger conversations are examples of noise that may impact recognition.
3. Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead. The microphone is positioned on the rearview mirror and aimed at the driver.
4. Each time you give a Voice Command, you must first push either the VR or Phone button, wait until **after** the beep, then say your Voice Command.
5. You can interrupt the help message or system prompts by pushing the VR or Phone button and saying a Voice Command from current category.

Two buttons are all you need to control your Uconnect system with your voice.

Voice Recognition (VR)/Phone Buttons

1 — Push To Begin Radio, Media, Navigation, Apps And Climate Functions
2 — Push To Initiate Or To Answer A Phone Call, Send Or Receive A Text

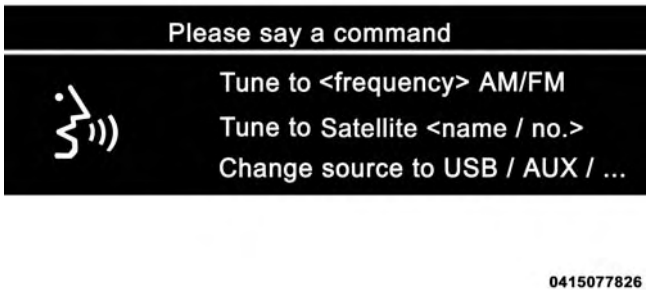
Basic Voice Commands

The basic Voice Commands below can be given at any point while using your Uconnect system.

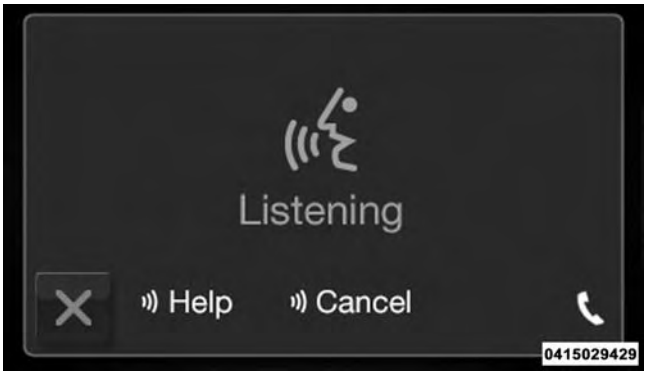
Push the VR button . After the beep, say...

- **Cancel** to stop a current voice session
- **Help** to hear a list of suggested Voice Commands
- **Repeat** to listen to the system prompts again

Notice the visual cues that inform you of your voice recognition system's status. Cues appear on the screen.



Uconnect 3.0



Uconnect 5.0

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN

Radio

Use your voice to quickly get to the AM, FM or SiriusXM Satellite Radio stations you would like to hear. (Subscription or included SiriusXM Satellite Radio trial required.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say...

- **Tune to** ninety-five-point-five FM
- **Tune to** Satellite Channel Hits 1

TIP: At any time, if you are not sure of what to say or want to learn a Voice Command, press the VR button and say **"Help."** The system will provide you with a list of commands.

Uconnect 5.0 Radio

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Radio

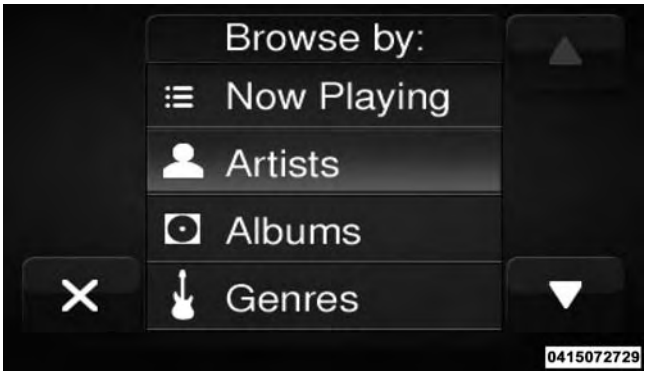
Media

Uconnect offers connections via USB, SD, Bluetooth and auxiliary ports (If Equipped). Voice operation is only available for connected USB and iPod devices. (Remote CD player optional and not available on all vehicles.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands and follow the prompts to switch your media source or choose an artist.

- **Change source** to Bluetooth
- **Change source** to iPod
- **Change source** to USB
- **Play artist** Beethoven; **Play album** Greatest Hits; **Play song** Moonlight Sonata; **Play genre** Classical

TIP: For the Uconnect 5.0 and 8.4A/8.4AN systems, press the Browse button on the touchscreen to see all of the music on your iPod or USB device. Your Voice Command must match **exactly** how the artist, album, song and genre information is displayed.



Uconnect 5.0 Media

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Media

Phone

Making and answering hands-free phone calls is easy with Uconnect. When the Phonebook button is illuminated for the Uconnect 5.0 and 8.4A/AN radios, your system is ready. Check UconnectPhone.com for mobile phone compatibility and pairing instructions.

Push the Phone button . After the beep, say one of the following commands...

- **Call** John Smith
- **Dial** 123-456-7890 and follow the system prompts
- **Redial** (call previous outgoing phone number)
- **Call back** (call previous incoming phone number)

TIP: When providing a Voice Command, push the Phone button and say **"Call,"** then pronounce the name **exactly** as it appears in your phone book. When a contact has multiple phone numbers, you can say **"Call** John Smith **work."**

Uconnect 5.0 Phone

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Phone

Voice Text Reply

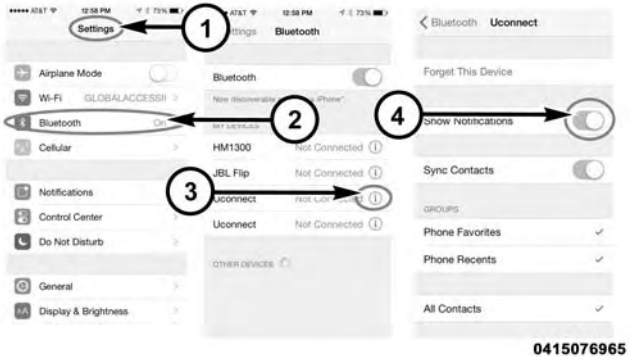
Uconnect will announce **incoming** text messages. Push the Phone button and say **Listen.** (Must have compatible mobile phone paired to Uconnect system.)

1. Once an incoming text message is read to you, push the Phone button . After the beep, say: **"Reply."**
2. Listen to the Uconnect prompts. After the beep, repeat one of the pre-defined messages and follow the system prompts.

PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES		
Yes.	Stuck in traffic.	See you later.
No.	Start without me.	I'll be late.
Okay.	Where are you?	I will be <number> minutes late.
Call me.	Are you there yet?	
I'll call you later.	I need directions.	See you in <number> of minutes.
I'm on my way.	Can't talk right now.	
I'm lost.		Thanks.

TIP: Your mobile phone must have the full implementation of the **Message Access Profile (MAP)** to take advantage of this feature. For details about MAP, visit UconnectPhone.com.

Apple iPhone iOS 6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only. To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these 4 simple steps:



iPhone Notification Settings

1 — Select “Settings”
2 — Select “Bluetooth”
3 — Select the (i) for the paired vehicle
4 — Turn on “Show Notifications”

TIP: Voice Text Reply is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.

Climate (8.4A/8.4AN)

Too hot? Too cold? Adjust vehicle temperatures hands-free and keep everyone comfortable while you keep moving ahead. (If vehicle is equipped with climate control.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- **Set driver temperature to** 70 **degrees**
- **Set passenger temperature to** 70 **degrees**

TIP: Voice Command for Climate may only be used to adjust the interior temperature of your vehicle. Voice Command will not work to adjust the heated seats or steering wheel if equipped.

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Climate

Navigation (8.4A/8.4AN)

The Uconnect navigation feature helps you save time and become more productive when you know exactly how to get to where you want to go. (Navigation is optional on the Uconnect 8.4A system. See your dealer to activate navigation at any time.)

1. To enter a destination, push the VR button . After the beep, say:
   - For the 8.4A Uconnect System, say: **"Enter state."**
   - For the 8.4AN Uconnect System, say: **"Find address** 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills, Michigan."
2. Then follow the system prompts.

TIP: To start a POI search, push the VR button . After the beep, say: " **Find nearest** coffee shop."

Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Navigation

Uconnect Access (8.4A/8.4AN)

WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some Uconnect Access services, including 9-1-1 and Assist, will NOT work without an operable 1X (voice/data) or 3G (data) network connection.

NOTE: Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

An included trial and/or subscription is required to take advantage of the Uconnect Access services in the next section of this guide. To register with Uconnect Access, press the Apps button on the 8.4-inch touchscreen to get started. Detailed registration instructions can be found on the next page.

NOTE: Uconnect Access is available only on equipped vehicles purchased within the continental United States, Alaska and Hawaii. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.

- 9-1-1 Call
- Security Alarm Notification
- Remote Door Lock/Unlock
- Stolen Vehicle Assistance
- Remote Vehicle Start**
- Remote Horn and Lights
- Yelp Search
- Voice Texting
- Roadside Assistance Call
- WiFi Hotspot***

**If vehicle is equipped.

***Extra charges apply.

Vehicle Health Alert

Your vehicle will send you an email alert if it senses a problem under the hood with one of your vehicles key systems. For further information go to the Mopar Owner Connect website moparownerconnect.com.

Register (8.4A/8.4AN)

To unlock the full potential of Uconnect Access in your vehicle, you first need to register with Uconnect Access.

1. Push the ASSIST button on your rearview mirror.

Assist Button

2. Press the "Uconnect Care" button on the touchscreen.
3. A helpful Uconnect Care Agent will register your vehicle and handle all of the details.

Signing up is easy! Simply follow the steps above. Or, press the "Apps" button on the touchscreen to "Register By Web" to complete the process using your smartphone or computer.

For further information, please visit DriveUconnect.com.

Mobile App (8.4A/8.4AN)

You're only a few steps away from using remote commands and playing your favorite music in your vehicle.

0415083930

Mobile App

To link your internet radio accounts:

1. Download the Uconnect Access App to your mobile device.
2. Press the Via Mobile icon on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app.

3. Press the app you'd like to connect to your vehicle.
4. Enter your login information for the selected app and press Link.
5. Next time you're in your vehicle, enable Bluetooth, pair your phone and select the Via Mobile app you want to play from the Uconnect touchscreen to stream your personalized music.

NOTE:

- You can also complete this process on the web. Simply visit moparownerconnect.com log in and click Set Up Via Mobile Profile (under Quick Links).
- Once you download the app to your compatible mobile device, you will also be able to start your vehicle and lock/unlock its doors from virtually anywhere.

Voice Texting (8.4A/8.4AN)

1. To send a message, push the Phone button . After the beep, say the following command: **"Send message** to John Smith."
2. Listen to the prompt. After the beep, dictate the message you would like to send. Wait for Uconnect to process your message.
3. The Uconnect system will repeat your message and provide a variety of options to add to, delete, send or hear the message again. After the beep, tell Uconnect what you'd like to do. For instance, if you're happy with your message, after the beep, say: **"Send."**

You must be registered with Uconnect Access and have a compatible MAP – enabled smartphone to use your voice to send a personalized text message. For details about MAP, visit UconnectPhone.com.

Apple iPhone iOS6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only. To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these 4 simple steps:

iPhone Notification Settings

1 — Select “Settings”
2 — Select “Bluetooth”
3 — Select the (i) for the paired vehicle
4 — Turn on “Show Notifications”

TIP:

- Voice Texting is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.
- Messages are limited to 140 characters.
- The Messaging button on the touchscreen must be illuminated to use the feature.

Yelp (8.4A/8.4AN)

Once registered with Uconnect Access, you can use your voice to search for the most popular places or things around you.

1. Press the "Apps" button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the "Yelp" button on the touchscreen.
3. Once the YELP home screen appears on the touchscreen, push the VR button, then say: **"YELP search."**
4. Listen to the system prompts and after the beep, tell Uconnect the place or business that you'd like Uconnect to find.

TIP: Once you perform a search, you can reorganize the results by selecting either the Best Match, Rating or Distance tab on the top of the touchscreen display.

Yelp

SiriusXM Travel Link (8.4A/8.4AN)

Need to find a gas station, view local movie listings, check a sports score or the 5 - day weather forecast? SiriusXM Travel Link is a suite of services that brings a wealth of information right to your Uconnect 8.4AN system. (Not available for 8.4A system.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- **Show fuel prices**
- **Show 5 - day weather forecast**
- **Show extended weather**

4

TIP: Traffic alerts are not accessible with Voice Command.

SiriusXM Travel Link

Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped

If your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send text messages, schedule meetings, set reminders, and more. For further information go to the Mopar Owner Connect website moparownerconnect.com.

Do Not Disturb

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience, there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- "I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly."
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

NOTE: Only the first 25 characters can been seen on the touchscreen while typing a custom message.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

NOTE:

- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.
- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that supporting Bluetooth MAP.

General Information

This device complies with FCC rules Part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE:

- The transmitter has been tested and it complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.
- The term IC before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Additional Information

© 2016 FCA US LLC. All rights reserved. Mopar and Uconnect are registered trademarks and Mopar Owner Connect is a trademark of FCA US LLC. Android is a trademark of Google Inc. SiriusXM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of SiriusXM Radio Inc. Yelp, Yelp logo, Yelp burst and related marks are registered trademarks of Yelp.

For Uconnect system support, call: 1-877-855-8400 (24 hours a day 7 days a week) or visit DriveUconnect.com.

Uconnect Access services support, call: 1-855-792-4241 Please have your Uconnect Security PIN ready when you call.

STARTING AND OPERATING

CONTENTS

■ STARTING PROCEDURES 479
- □ Normal Starting. 479
- □ Automatic Transmission 480
- □ Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition 480
- □ Normal Starting. 481
- □ Extreme Cold Weather (Below –22°F Or –30°C) 482
- □ If Engine Fails To Start 482
- □ After Starting 484

■ STOP/START SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED 484
- □ Automatic Mode 484
- □ Possible Reasons The Engine Does Not Autostop 485
- □ To Start The Engine While In Autostop Mode. .486
- □ To Manually Turn Off The Stop Start System . .487
- □ To Manually Turn On The Stop Start System . .488
- □ System Malfunction 488

■ ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED . . .488

■ AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION 489
- □ Key Ignition Park Interlock. 491

- Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System . . .491
- Eight-Speed Automatic Transmission — If Equipped 492
- Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — 1500 Models Only (If Equipped) 501
- Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — 2500/3500 Models Only 514

■ FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED 525

- Manually Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped.525
- Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) — If Equipped 529
- Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Five-Position Switch) — If Equipped 535
- Four-Position Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Eight Speed Transmission Only) — If Equipped 543
- Five-Position Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Eight Speed Transmission Only) — If Equipped 549

■ AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (1500 MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED 556

- Description 556
- Air Suspension Modes 561
- Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) Display Messages 563
- Operation 563

■ AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (2500/3500 MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED 565

- □ Description 565
- □ Air Suspension Modes 567
- □ Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) Display Messages 569
- □ Operation 569

■ AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (REBEL MODELS ONLY) — IF EQUIPPED 570

- □ Description 570
- □ Air Suspension Modes 574
- □ Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Infromation Display (DID) Display Messages 575
- □ Operation 576

■ AXLE LOCKER SYSTEM — POWER WAGON MODELS ONLY (IF EQUIPPED) 577

■ STABILIZER/SWAY BAR SYSTEM — POWER WAGON ONLY 580

■ SAFE OFF-ROAD DRIVING — POWER WAGON ONLY 582

- □ Off-Road Driving Tips And Vehicle Characteristics 582
- □ Driving In Snow, Mud And Sand 585
- □ Crossing Obstacles (Rocks And Other High Points) 587
- □ Hill Climbing 589
- □ Driving Through Water 593
- □ Airing Down For Off-Road Driving 595
- □ Vehicle Recovery 596

- □ After Driving Off-Road 600
- ■ LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL 601
- ■ DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES 602
  - □ Acceleration 602
  - □ Traction 602
- ■ DRIVING THROUGH WATER 603
  - □ Flowing/Rising Water 603
  - □ Shallow Standing Water 603
- ■ OFF-ROAD DRIVING TIPS 605
  - □ After Driving Off-Road 605
- ■ WINCH USAGE — POWER WAGON ONLY — (IF EQUIPPED) 606
  - □ Things To Know Before Using Your Winch. . . .606
  - □ Understanding The Features Of Your Winch. . .608
  - □ Winch Accessories 610
  - □ Operating Your Winch 611
  - □ Rigging Techniques 623
- ■ POWER STEERING 625
  - □ Electric Power Steering — 1500 Models 625
  - □ Hydraulic Power Steering — 2500/3500 Models 626
- ■ FUEL SAVER TECHNOLOGY 5.7L/6.4L ENGINES ONLY — IF EQUIPPED 628
- ■ PARKING BRAKE 628
- ■ BRAKE SYSTEM 630
  - □ Hydraulic Brake Assist — 2500/3500 Models Only (Except Power Wagon) 630

■ ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM 631
- □ Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) 631
- □ Brake System Warning Light. 631
- □ Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 632
- □ Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light. 633
- □ Brake Assist System (BAS) 634
- □ Hill Start Assist (HSA) 634
- □ Traction Control System (TCS) 638
- □ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 638
- □ Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM) 643
- □ Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 644
- □ Hill Descent Control (HDC) — If Equipped . . .644

■ TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION 648
- □ Tire Markings 648
- □ Tire Identification Number (TIN). 651
- □ Tire Terminology And Definitions 653
- □ Tire Loading And Tire Pressure 654

■ TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION 659
- □ Tire Pressure 659
- □ Tire Inflation Pressures 661
- □ Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation 662
- □ Radial Ply Tires 662
- □ Tire Types. 663
- □ Run Flat Tires — If Equipped 665
- □ Spare Tires — If Equipped 665
- □ Tire Spinning 668

- □ Tread Wear Indicators 668
- □ Life Of Tire 669
- □ Replacement Tires 670

■ SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED 672

■ TIRE CHAINS (TRACTION DEVICES) 672

■ TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS 674

- □ Directional Tires — If Equipped 675
- □ Dual Rear Wheels — If Equipped 676

■ TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR SYSTEM (TPMS) . .677

- □ Premium System 680
- □ Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) 3500 Series Trucks 685
- □ General Information 686

■ FUEL REQUIREMENTS 687

- □ 3.6L Engine 687
- □ 5.7L Engine 687
- □ 6.4L Engine 688
- □ Reformulated Gasoline 689
- □ Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends 689
- □ E-85 Usage In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles 690
- □ MMT In Gasoline 690
- □ Materials Added To Fuel 691
- □ Fuel System Cautions 691
- □ Carbon Monoxide Warnings 692

■ FLEXIBLE FUEL (3.6L ENGINE ONLY) — IF EQUIPPED 693

- □ E-85 General Information 693
- □ Ethanol Fuel (E-85) 693
- □ Fuel Requirements 694
- □ Selection Of Engine Oil For Flexible Fuel Vehicles (E-85) And Gasoline Vehicles 695
- □ Starting 695
- □ Cruising Range 695
- □ Replacement Parts 695
- □ Maintenance 696

■ ADDING FUEL 696

- □ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message 698

■ VEHICLE LOADING 699

- □ Certification Label 699

■ TRAILER TOWING 701

- □ Common Towing Definitions 701
- □ Trailer Hitch Type and Maximum Trailer Weight 709
- □ Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) 710
- □ Trailer And Tongue Weight 710
- □ Towing Requirements 711
- □ Towing Tips 721

■ SNOWPLOW 722

- □ 1500 Models Only 722
- □ 2500/3500 Models Only 723

■ RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.) 727

□ Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle . .727

□ Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive Models 728

□ Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive Models 729

STARTING PROCEDURES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belt.

The starter should not be operated for more than 10-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

WARNING!

- **When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in the "OFF" mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.

- **Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**
- **Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.**

5

Normal Starting

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal. Cycle the ignition to the START position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start

within 10 seconds, cycle the ignition to the OFF position, wait five seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

Automatic Transmission

Start the engine with the transmission in PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting into any driving range.

NOTE:

- This vehicle is equipped with a transmission shift interlocking system. The brake pedal must be pressed to shift out of PARK.
- If equipped with an 8 speed transmission starting the vehicle in NEUTRAL is not possible unless the Manual Park Release has been activated. For the Manual Park Release operation refer to Manual Park Release in "What To Do In Emergencies".

Tip Start Feature

Do not press the accelerator. Cycle the ignition switch briefly to the START position and release it. The starter motor will continue to run but will automatically disengage when the engine is running.

Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the Remote Start/Keyless Enter-N-Go Key Fob is in the passenger compartment.

Normal Starting

To Turn On The Engine Using The ENGINE START/STOP Button

1. The transmission must be in PARK or NEUTRAL.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal while pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button once.
3. The system takes over and attempts to start the vehicle. If the vehicle fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically after 10 seconds.
4. If you wish to stop the cranking of the engine prior to the engine starting, push the button again.

NOTE: Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.

To Turn Off The Engine Using ENGINE START/STOP Button

1. Place the gear selector in PARK, then push and release the ENGINE START/STOP button.
2. The ignition switch will return to the OFF position.
3. If the gear selector is not in PARK, the ENGINE START/STOP button must be held for two seconds or three short pushes in a row with the vehicle speed above 5 mph (8 km/h) before the engine will shut off. The ignition switch position will remain in the ACC position until the gear selector is in PARK and the button is pushed twice to the OFF position. If the gear selector is not in PARK and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once, the EVIC/DID will display a "Vehicle Not In Park" message and the engine will remain running. Never leave a vehicle out of the PARK position, or it could roll.

NOTE: If the ignition switch is left in the ACC or RUN (engine not running) position and the transmission is in PARK, the system will automatically time out after 30 minutes of inactivity and the ignition will switch to the OFF position.

ENGINE START/STOP Button Functions — With Driver's Foot OFF The Brake Pedal (In PARK Or NEUTRAL Position)

The ENGINE START/STOP button operates similar to an ignition switch. It has three positions, OFF, ACC, RUN. To change the ignition switch positions without starting the vehicle and use the accessories follow these steps:

1. Starting with the ignition in the OFF position:
2. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to change the ignition to the ACC position.
3. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time to change the ignition to the RUN position.
4. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a third time to return the ignition to the OFF position.

Extreme Cold Weather (Below –22°F Or −30°C)

To ensure reliable starting at these temperatures, use of an externally powered electric engine block heater (available from your authorized dealer) is recommended.

If Engine Fails To Start

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the "Normal Starting" procedure, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while the engine is cranking. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

The starter motor will engage automatically, run for 10 seconds, and then disengage. Once this occurs, release the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

CAUTION!

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

WARNING!

- **Never pour fuel or other flammable liquids into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire causing serious personal injury.**
- **Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. Refer to "Jump-Starting" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.**

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the ignition button/key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the ignition button/key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after a 10 second period of engine cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, wait 10 to 15 seconds, then repeat the "Normal Starting" procedure.

After Starting

The idle speed is controlled automatically, and it will decrease as the engine warms up.

STOP/START SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

The Stop/Start function is developed to save fuel and reduce emissions. The system will stop the engine automatically during a vehicle stop if the required conditions are met. Releasing the brake pedal will automatically restart the vehicle.

Automatic Mode

The Stop/Start feature is enabled after every normal customer engine start. It will remain in STOP/START NOT READY until you drive forward with a vehicle speed greater than 5 mph (8 km/h). At that time, the system will go into STOP/START READY and if all other conditions are met, can go into an STOP/START AUTO STOP ACTIVE "Autostop" mode.

To Activate The Autostop Mode, The Following Must Occur:

1. The system must be in STOP/START READY state. A STOP/START READY message will be displayed in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/ Driver Information Display (DID) within the Stop/ Start section. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
2. The vehicle must be completely stopped.
3. The transmission Gear Selector must be in DRIVE and the brake pedal depressed.

The engine will shut down, the tachometer will move to the zero position and the stop/start telltale will illuminate indicating you are in an Autostop. While in an

Autostop, the Climate Controls system may automatically adjust airflow to maintain cabin comfort. Customer settings will be maintained upon return to an engine running condition.

Possible Reasons The Engine Does Not Autostop

Prior to engine shut down, the system will check many safety and comfort conditions to see if they are fulfilled. In following situations, the engine will not stop:

- Driver's seat belt is not buckled.
- Driver's door is not closed.
- Outside temperature is less than 1°F (–17°C) or greater than 104°F (40°C).
- Battery temperature too warm or cold.
- The vehicle is on a steep grade.
- Cabin heating or cooling is in process and an acceptable cabin temperature has not been achieved.
- HVAC is set to full defrost mode at a high blower speed.
- Engine has not reached normal operating temperature.
- Battery discharged.
- The transmission is not in DRIVE.
- Hood is open.
- Vehicle is in 4LO transfer case mode.

Other factors which can inhibit AutoStop include: fuel level, accelerator pedal input, engine temp too high and steering angle.

It may be possible for the vehicle to be driven several times without the STOP/START system going into a STOP/START READY state under more extreme conditions of the items listed above.

To Start The Engine While In Autostop Mode

While in DRIVE, the engine will start when the brake pedal is released or the throttle pedal is depressed. The transmission will automatically reengage upon engine restart. During this transition, the brakes will hold the vehicle to avoid undesired vehicle movement.

Conditions That Will Cause The Engine To Start Automatically While In Autostop Mode

The engine will start automatically when:

- The transmission selector is moved from DRIVE to REVERSE or NEUTRAL
- To maintain cabin temperature near the HVAC settings
- HVAC is set to full defrost mode
- Autostop time exceeds 5 minutes
- Battery voltage drops too low
- Low brake vacuum (e.g. after several brake pedal applications)
- STOP/START OFF switch is pushed
- 4WD system is put into 4LO mode
- The emissions system requires it
- A STOP/START system error occurs

Conditions That Force An Automatic Shift To Park While In Autostop Mode

The engine will not start automatically and the transmission will be placed in PARK if:

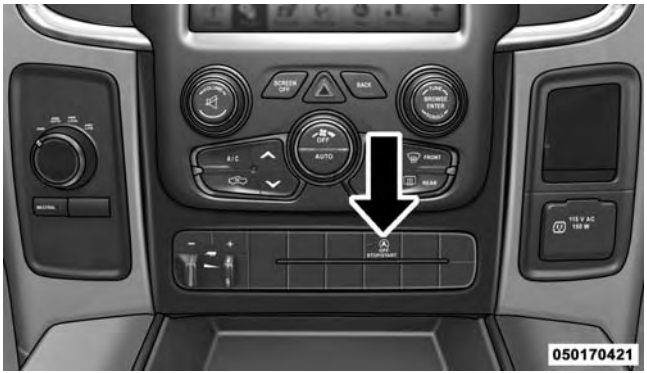
- The driver door is open and brake pedal released
- The driver door is open and the driver seat belt is unbuckled
- The engine hood has been opened
- A STOP/START system error occurs

The engine may then be restarted by moving the transmission shift selector out of PARK (e.g. to DRIVE) or, in some cases, only by a KEY START. The Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) will display a SHIFT OUT OF PARK message, or a STOP/START KEY START REQUIRED message, to indicate which action is required.

Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

To Manually Turn Off The Stop Start System

1. Push the STOP/START Off switch (located on the switch bank). The light on the switch will illuminate.



STOP/START OFF Switch

2. The STOP/START OFF message will appear in Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

3. At the next vehicle stop (after turning off the STOP/START system) the engine will not be stopped.
4. If the STOP/START system is manually turned off, the engine can only be started and stopped by cycling the ignition switch.
5. The STOP/START system will reset itself back to an ON condition every time the key is turned off and back on.

To Manually Turn On The Stop Start System

1. Push the STOP/START Off switch (located on the switch bank).
2. The light on the switch will turn off.

System Malfunction

If there is a malfunction in the STOP/START system, the system will not shut down the engine. A "SERVICE STOP/START SYSTEM" message will appear in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

The system will need to be checked by your authorized dealer.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER — IF EQUIPPED

The engine block heater warms the engine, and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

1500 Models

The engine block heater cord is routed under the hood on the passenger side of the vehicle near the right head lamp assembly. It is located between the front grill and the radiator, but underneath the black upper seal.

2500/3500 Models

The engine block heater cord is routed through the grille by the right front tow hook.

It includes a removable cap that is secured by a tethered strap. It also has a c-clip that is used for storage when not in use for the winter months. During winter months, remove the heater cord wiring assembly from itself on the c-clip.

The engine block heater must be plugged in at least one hour to have an adequate warming effect on the engine.

WARNING!

Remember to disconnect the engine block heater cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 Volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- **Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.**
- **Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.**

NOTE: You must press and hold the brake pedal while shifting out of PARK.

WARNING!

- **It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.**
- **Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always shift an automatic transmission into PARK, or a manual transmission into FIRST gear or REVERSE, turn the engine OFF, apply the parking brake, and remove the ignition key. When the ignition is in the**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, an automatic transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

- **When leaving the vehicle, always remove the key fob from the ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in "OFF" mode, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Check by trying to move the transmission gear selector out of PARK with the**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.

- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.**
- **Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

Key Ignition Park Interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition switch can be turned to the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position. The Key Fob can only be removed from the ignition when the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF position, and the transmission is locked in PARK whenever the ignition switch is in the LOCK/OFF position.

NOTE: If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the Key Fob in the ignition switch to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the Key Fob cannot be removed until you obtain service.

Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock System (BTSI) that holds the transmission gear selector in PARK unless the brakes are applied. To shift

the transmission out of PARK, the ignition switch must be turned to the ON/RUN position (engine running, for vehicles with eight-speed transmission) and the brake pedal must be pressed.

In 8-speed vehicles, the brake pedal must also be pressed to shift from NEUTRAL into DRIVE or REVERSE when the vehicle is stopped or moving at low speeds.

Eight-Speed Automatic Transmission — If Equipped

The transmission is controlled using a rotary electronic gear selector located on the instrument panel. The transmission gear range (PRND) is displayed both above the gear selector and in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID). To select a gear range, simply rotate the gear selector. You must press the brake pedal to shift the transmission out of PARK, or to shift from NEUTRAL into DRIVE or REVERSE, when the vehicle is stopped or moving at low speeds (refer to "Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System" in this section). To shift past multiple gear ranges at once (such as Park to Drive), simply rotate the gear selector to the appropriate detent. Select the DRIVE range for normal driving.

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information). Pressing the GEAR-/GEAR+ switches (on the steering wheel) while in the DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Models with the Driver Information Display (DID) will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.

Electronic Transmission Gear Selector

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range.

NOTE: After selecting any gear range, wait a moment to allow the selected gear to engage before accelerating. This is especially important when the engine is cold.

PARK (P)

This range supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never attempt to use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range.

When parking on a level surface, you may shift the transmission into PARK first, and then apply the parking brake.

When parking on a hill, apply the parking brake before shifting the transmission to PARK. As an added precaution, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

NOTE: On four-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position.

WARNING!

- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.**
- **It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

- **Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.**
- **Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK, turn the vehicle OFF, remove the key fob from the**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in "OFF" mode, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.

- **When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF position, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.**
- **Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/ RUN position. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

CAUTION!

- **DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range, as this can damage the drivetrain.**
- **Before moving the transmission gear selector out of PARK, you must start the engine, and also press the brake pedal. Otherwise, damage to the gear selector could result.**

The following indicator should be used to ensure that you have engaged the transmission into PARK:

- With brake pedal released, look at the transmission gear position display and verify that it indicates the PARK position (P).

REVERSE (R)

This range is for moving the vehicle backward. Shift into REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

NEUTRAL (N)

Use this range when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into PARK if you must leave the vehicle.

WARNING!

Do not coast in NEUTRAL and never turn off the ignition to coast down a hill. These are unsafe practices that limit your response to changing traffic or road conditions. You might lose control of the vehicle and have a collision.

CAUTION!

Towing the vehicle, coasting, or driving for any other reason with the transmission in NEUTRAL can cause severe transmission damage. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" and "Towing A Disabled Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

DRIVE (D)

This range should be used for most city and highway driving. It provides the smoothest upshifts and downshifts, and the best fuel economy. The transmission automatically upshifts through all forward gears. The DRIVE position provides optimum driving characteristics under all normal operating conditions.

When frequent transmission shifting occurs (such as when operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions, in hilly terrain, traveling into strong head winds, or while towing a heavy trailer), select TOW/HAUL mode or use the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information) to select a lower gear range. Under these conditions, using a lower gear range will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat buildup.

During extremely cold temperatures (-22°F [-30°C] or below), transmission operation may be modified depending on engine and transmission temperature as well as vehicle speed. Normal operation will resume once the transmission temperature has risen to a suitable level.

Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission may operate only in certain gears, or may not shift at all. Vehicle performance may be severely degraded and the engine may stall. In some situations, the transmission may not re-engage if the engine is turned off and restarted. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. A message in the instrument cluster will inform the driver of the more serious conditions, and indicate what actions may be necessary.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

NOTE: In cases where the instrument cluster message indicates the transmission may not re-engage after engine shutdown, perform this procedure only in a desired location (preferably, at your authorized dealer).

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK, if possible. If not, shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position. On vehicles with Keyless Enter-N-Go, push and hold the ignition switch until the engine turns OFF.
4. Wait approximately 30 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.

6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

NOTE: Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to determine if the problem could recur.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation — Eight-Speed Transmission

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear (except to prevent engine overspeed), but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the transmission gear selector is in DRIVE, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the GEAR- switch (on the steering wheel) will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping the GEAR- or GEAR+ switch will change the top available gear.

1 — ERS (-) Switch 2 — ERS (+) Switch

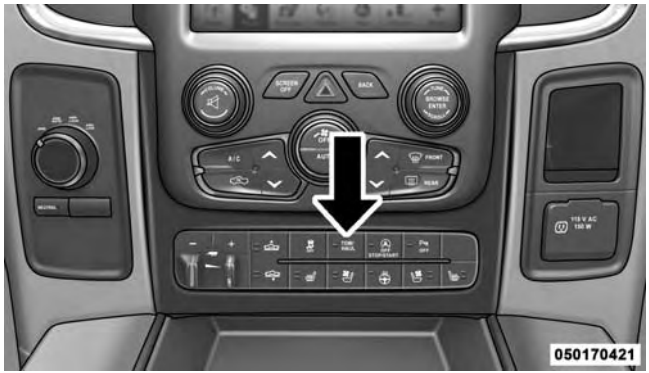
To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the GEAR+ switch until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.

WARNING!

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

When to Use TOW/HAUL Mode

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, press the TOW/HAUL switch to activate TOW/HAUL mode. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting.



TOW/HAUL Switch

The "TOW/HAUL Indicator Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate that TOW/HAUL mode has been activated. Pushing the switch a second time restores normal operation. Normal operation is always the default at engine start-up. If TOW/HAUL mode is desired, the switch must be pushed each time the engine is started.

Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — 1500 Models Only (If Equipped)

The transmission gear position display (located in the instrument cluster) indicates the transmission gear range. The gear selector is mounted either on the right side of the steering column (if equipped) or on the console (if equipped). You must press the brake pedal to move the gear selector out of PARK (refer to "Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System" in this section). To drive, move the gear selector from PARK or NEUTRAL to the DRIVE position. Pull the gear selector toward you when shifting into REVERSE or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK (column shift only).

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are

self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information). Pressing the ERS (-/+) switches (column shift) or moving the gear selector to the left or right (-/+) (console shift) while in the DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Models with the Driver Information Display (DID) will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range.

NOTE: After selecting any gear range, wait a moment to allow the selected gear to engage before accelerating. This is especially important when the engine is cold.

PARK (P)

This range supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never attempt to use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range.

When parking on a level surface, you may shift the transmission into PARK first, and then apply the parking brake.

NOTE: On four-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position.

When parking on a hill, apply the parking brake before shifting the transmission to PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the gear selector out of PARK. As an added precaution, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

WARNING!

- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.
- **Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.**
- **It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.**
- **Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK, turn the vehicle OFF, remove the key fob from the ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in "OFF" mode, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF position, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.**
- **Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

CAUTION!

- **Before moving the gear selector out of PARK, you must turn the ignition switch from the LOCK/OFF position to the ON/RUN position, and also press the brake pedal. Otherwise, damage to the gear selector could result.**
- **DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range, as this can damage the drivetrain.**

The following indicators should be used to ensure that you have engaged the transmission into the PARK position:

- When shifting into PARK, pull the column-mounted gear selector toward you and move it all the way counterclockwise until it stops. For console-mounted shifter, firmly move the gear selector all the way forward and to the left until it stops.
- Release the gear selector and make sure it is fully seated in the PARK gate.
- Look at the transmission gear position display and verify that it indicates the PARK position (P).
- With brake pedal released, verify that the gear selector will not move out of PARK.

REVERSE (R)

This range is for moving the vehicle backward. Shift into Reverse only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

NEUTRAL (N)

Use this range when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into PARK if you must leave the vehicle.

WARNING!

Do not coast in NEUTRAL and never turn off the ignition to coast down a hill. These are unsafe practices that limit your response to changing traffic or road conditions. You might lose control of the vehicle and have a collision.

CAUTION!

Towing the vehicle, coasting, or driving for any other reason with the transmission in NEUTRAL can cause severe transmission damage. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" and "Towing A Disabled Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

DRIVE (D)

This range should be used for most city and highway driving. It provides the smoothest upshifts and downshifts, and the best fuel economy. The transmission automatically upshifts through underdrive first and second gears, direct third gear and overdrive fourth and fifth gears. The DRIVE position provides optimum driving characteristics under all normal operating conditions.

To access all six available gears, you must use the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control, described below.

When frequent transmission shifting occurs (such as when operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions, in hilly terrain, traveling into strong head winds, or while towing a heavy trailer), use the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range

Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information) to select a lower gear range. Under these conditions, using a lower gear range will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat buildup.

If the transmission temperature exceeds normal operating limits, the powertrain controller will modify the transmission shift schedule and expand the range of torque converter clutch engagement. This is done to prevent transmission damage due to overheating.

If the transmission becomes extremely hot or is in danger of overheating, the "Transmission Temperature Warning Light" may illuminate and the transmission may operate differently until the transmission cools down.

NOTE: Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle at low speeds (such as towing a trailer up a steep grade, or in stop-and-go traffic) during hot weather. In these conditions, torque converter slip can impose a significant additional heat load on the cooling system. Downshifting the transmission to the lowest possible gear (when climbing a grade), or shifting to NEUTRAL (when stopped in heavy traffic) can help to reduce this excess heat generation.

During cold temperatures, transmission operation may be modified depending on engine and transmission temperature as well as vehicle speed. This feature improves warm up time of the engine and transmission to achieve maximum efficiency. Engagement of both the torque converter clutch and the top overdrive gear are inhibited until the transmission fluid is warm (refer to the "Note" under "Torque Converter Clutch" in this section). During extremely cold temperatures (-16°F [-27°C] or below), operation may briefly be limited to first and

direct gears only. Normal operation will resume once the transmission temperature has risen to a suitable level.

Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission remains in direct gear regardless of which forward gear is selected. PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL will continue to operate. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. Limp Home Mode allows the vehicle to be driven to an authorized dealer for service without damaging the transmission.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.
4. Wait approximately 10 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.
6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

NOTE: Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to determine if the problem could recur.

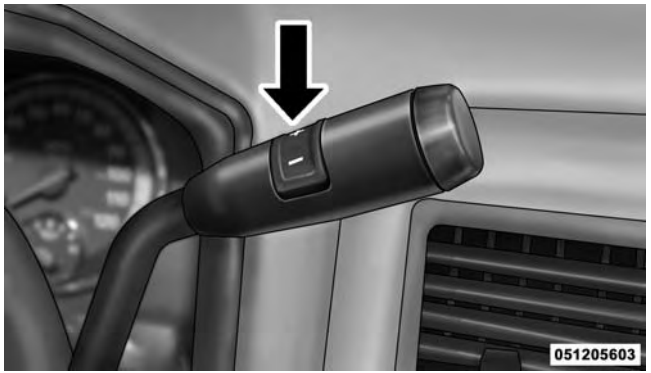
If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation — Six-Speed Transmission (1500 Models Only)

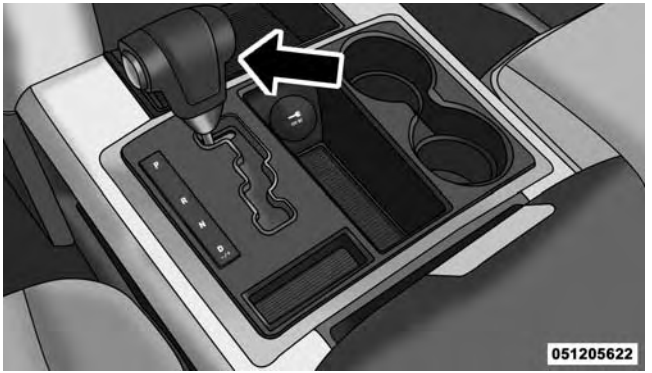
The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear, but will shift through the lower gears normally.

Use of ERS (or TOW/HAUL mode) also enables an additional underdrive gear which is not normally used during through-gear accelerations. This additional gear can improve vehicle performance and cooling capability when towing a trailer on certain grades. In ERS mode, gears 1 though 3 are underdrive gears, and ERS 4 is direct drive. ERS 5 and 6 (Overdrive gears) are the same as the normal fourth and fifth gears.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the gear selector is in the DRIVE position, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the ERS (-) switch (column shift) or tapping the gear selector to the left (-) (console shift) will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. For example, if you are in DRIVE and are in third (direct) gear, when you tap the gear selector/switch one time in the (-) direction, the display will show 4 (ERS 4 is direct gear). Another tap down (-) will shift the transmission down to ERS 3 (the added underdrive gear). Once in ERS mode, tapping (-) or (+) will change the top available gear.



Column Gear Selector



Console Gear Selector

To exit ERS mode, simply hold the gear selector to the right (+) (console shift) or press and hold the ERS (+) switch (column shift) until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.

WARNING!

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

NOTE: To select the proper gear position for maximum deceleration (engine braking), simply press and hold the gear selector to the left (-) (console shift) or the ERS (-) switch down (column shift). The transmission will shift to the range from which the vehicle can best be slowed down.

CAUTION!

When using ERS for engine braking while descending steep grades, be careful not to overspeed the

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

engine. Apply the brakes as needed to prevent engine overspeed.

Overdrive Operation

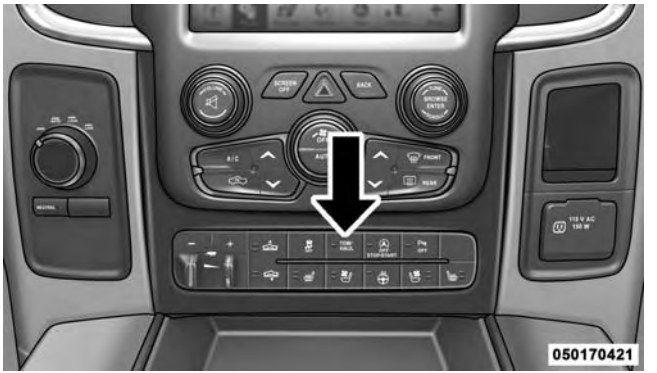
The automatic transmission includes an electronically controlled Overdrive (fourth and fifth gears). The transmission will automatically shift into Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- the gear selector is in the DRIVE position,
- the transmission fluid has reached an adequate temperature,
- the engine coolant (antifreeze) has reached an adequate temperature,

- vehicle speed is sufficiently high,
- the TOW/HAUL switch has not been activated, and
- the driver is not heavily pressing the accelerator.

When To Use TOW/HAUL Mode

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, push the TOW/HAUL switch to activate TOW/HAUL mode. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in TOW/HAUL mode, transmission upshifts are delayed, and the transmission will automatically downshift (for engine braking) when the throttle is closed and/or during steady braking maneuvers.



TOW/HAUL Switch

The "TOW/HAUL Indicator Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate that TOW/HAUL mode has been activated. Pushing the switch a second time restores normal operation. Normal operation is always the default at engine start-up. If TOW/HAUL mode is

desired, the switch must be pushed each time the engine is started.

WARNING!

Do not use the "TOW/HAUL" feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions. The increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide, and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature designed to improve fuel economy has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in the upper gears. When the vehicle speed drops or during some accelerations, the clutch automatically disengages.

NOTE:

- The torque converter clutch will not engage, and the transmission will not shift into the top overdrive gear, until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1 to 3 miles (2 to 5 km) of driving]. Because top gear is disabled, and the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting properly when cold. This is normal. Using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of Overdrive.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the

fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds after starting the engine.

Six-Speed Automatic Transmission — 2500/3500 Models Only

The transmission gear position display (located in the instrument cluster) indicates the transmission gear range. The gear selector is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must press the brake pedal to move the gear selector out of PARK (refer to "Brake/ Transmission Shift Interlock System" in this section for further information). To drive, move the gear selector from PARK or NEUTRAL to the DRIVE position. Pull the gear selector toward you when shifting into REVERSE or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information). Pressing the ERS (-/+) switches (on the gear selector) while in the DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Models

with the Driver Information Display (DID) will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range.

NOTE: After selecting any gear range, wait a moment to allow the selected gear to engage before accelerating. This is especially important when the engine is cold.

PARK (P)

This range supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never attempt to use PARK while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range.

When parking on a level surface, you may shift the transmission into PARK first, and then apply the parking brake.

When parking on a hill, apply the parking brake before shifting the transmission to PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the gear selector out of PARK. As an added precaution, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

NOTE: On four-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position.

WARNING!

- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before leaving the vehicle.**
- **It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

- **Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.**
- **Before exiting a vehicle, always apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK, turn the vehicle OFF, remove the key fob from the ignition and lock your vehicle. If equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in "OFF" mode, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF position, remove the Key Fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.**
- **Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

CAUTION!

- **Before moving the gear selector out of PARK, you must turn the ignition switch from the LOCK/OFF position to the ON/RUN position, and also press the brake pedal. Otherwise, damage to the gear selector could result.**
- **DO NOT race the engine when shifting from PARK or NEUTRAL into another gear range, as this can damage the drivetrain.**

The following indicators should be used to ensure that you have engaged the transmission into the PARK position:

- When shifting into PARK, pull the gear selector toward you and move it all the way counterclockwise until it stops.

- Release the gear selector and make sure it is fully seated in the PARK gate.
- Look at the transmission gear position display and verify that it indicates the PARK position (P).
- With brake pedal released, verify that the gear selector will not move out of PARK.

REVERSE (R)

This range is for moving the vehicle backward. Shift into REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

NEUTRAL (N)

Use this range when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into PARK if you must leave the vehicle.

WARNING!

Do not coast in NEUTRAL and never turn off the ignition to coast down a hill. These are unsafe practices that limit your response to changing traffic or road conditions. You might lose control of the vehicle and have a collision.

CAUTION!

Towing the vehicle, coasting, or driving for any other reason with the transmission in NEUTRAL can cause severe transmission damage. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" and "Towing A Disabled Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

DRIVE (D)

This range should be used for most city and highway driving. It provides the smoothest upshifts and downshifts, and the best fuel economy. The transmission automatically upshifts through underdrive first, second, and third gears, direct fourth gear and overdrive fifth and sixth gears. The DRIVE position provides optimum driving characteristics under all normal operating conditions.

When frequent transmission shifting occurs (such as when operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions, in hilly terrain, traveling into strong head winds, or while towing a heavy trailer), use the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control (refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information) to select a lower gear range. Under these conditions, using a lower gear range will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat buildup.

If the transmission temperature exceeds normal operating limits, the powertrain controller will modify the transmission shift schedule and expand the range of torque converter clutch engagement. This is done to prevent transmission damage due to overheating.

If the transmission becomes extremely hot or is in danger of overheating, the "Transmission Temperature Warning Light" may illuminate and the transmission may operate differently until the transmission cools down.

NOTE: Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle at low speeds (such as towing a trailer up a steep grade, or in stop-and-go traffic) during hot weather. In these conditions, torque converter slip can impose a significant additional heat load on the cooling system. Downshifting the transmission to the lowest possible gear (when climbing a grade), or shifting to NEUTRAL (when stopped in heavy traffic) can help to reduce this excess heat generation.

During cold temperatures, transmission operation may be modified depending on engine and transmission temperature as well as vehicle speed. This feature improves warm up time of the engine and transmission to achieve maximum efficiency. Engagement of both the torque converter clutch and the top overdrive gear are inhibited until the transmission fluid is warm (refer to the "Note" under "Torque Converter Clutch" in this section). During extremely cold temperatures (-16°F [-27°C] or below), operation may briefly be limited to first and direct gears only. Normal operation will resume once the transmission temperature has risen to a suitable level.

Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission remains in fourth gear regardless of which forward gear is selected. PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL will continue to operate. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. Limp Home Mode allows the vehicle to be driven to an authorized dealer for service without damaging the transmission.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.
4. Wait approximately 10 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.
6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

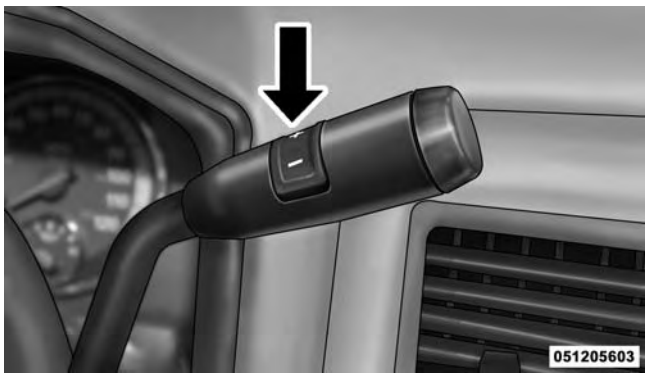
NOTE: Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to determine if the problem could recur.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear, but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the gear selector is in the DRIVE position, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the ERS (-) switch will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping (-) or (+) will change the top available gear.



Column Gear Selector

To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the ERS (+) switch until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.

WARNING!

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

NOTE: To select the proper gear position for maximum deceleration (engine braking), simply push and hold the ERS (-) switch. The transmission will shift to the range from which the vehicle can best be slowed down.

CAUTION!

When using ERS for engine braking while descending steep grades, be careful not to overspeed the engine. Apply the brakes as needed to prevent engine overspeed.

Overdrive Operation

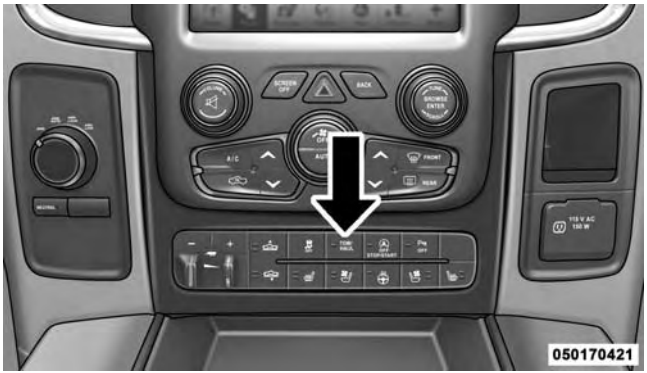
The automatic transmission includes an electronically controlled Overdrive (fifth and sixth gears). The transmission will automatically shift into Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- The gear selector is in the DRIVE position.
- The transmission fluid has reached an adequate temperature.
- The engine coolant has reached an adequate temperature.
- Vehicle speed is sufficiently high.

- The TOW/HAUL switch has not been activated.
- The driver is not heavily pressing the accelerator.

When To Use TOW/HAUL Mode

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, push the TOW/HAUL switch to activate TOW/HAUL mode. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in TOW/HAUL mode, transmission upshifts are delayed, and the transmission will automatically downshift (for engine braking) during steady braking maneuvers.



TOW/HAUL Switch

The "TOW/HAUL Indicator Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate that TOW/HAUL mode has been activated. Pushing the switch a second time restores normal operation. Normal operation is always the default at engine start-up. If TOW/HAUL mode is

desired, the switch must be pushed each time the engine is started.

WARNING!

Do not use the "TOW/HAUL" feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions. The increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide, and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature designed to improve fuel economy has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in the upper gears. When the vehicle speed drops or during some accelerations, the clutch automatically disengages.

NOTE:

- The torque converter clutch will not engage, until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1 to 3 miles (2 to 5 km) of driving]. Because the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting into Overdrive when cold. This is normal. Using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of Overdrive.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not

cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds after starting the engine.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED

Four-wheel drive trucks are equipped with either a manually shifted transfer case or an electronically shifted transfer case. Refer to the operating instructions for your transfer case, located in this section for further information.

Manually Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped

The transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2H)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4H)
- Neutral (N)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4L)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

2H

Two-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

4H

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

4L

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range locks the front and rear driveshafts together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

This transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2H position for normal street and highway conditions such as dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the gear selector to the desired positions once the appropriate speed and gear requirements are met, refer to "Shifting Procedure – Manually Shifted Transfer Case" in this section for further information.

The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on dry, hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The "Transfer Case Position Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster will alert the driver that the vehicle is in four-wheel drive and that the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. This light will illuminate when the transfer case is shifted into either the 4H or 4L position. There is no light for the 2H or NEUTRAL positions on some models.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and can cause damage to the drivetrain.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

NOTE: Delayed shifts out of four-wheel drive may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low or uneven tire pressures, excessive vehicle loading, or cold temperatures.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Shifting Procedure — Manually Shifted Transfer Case

2H To 4H

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 55 mph (88 km/h). With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

2H Or 4H To 4L

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transmission into NEUTRAL. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause in transfer case NEUTRAL.

NOTE:

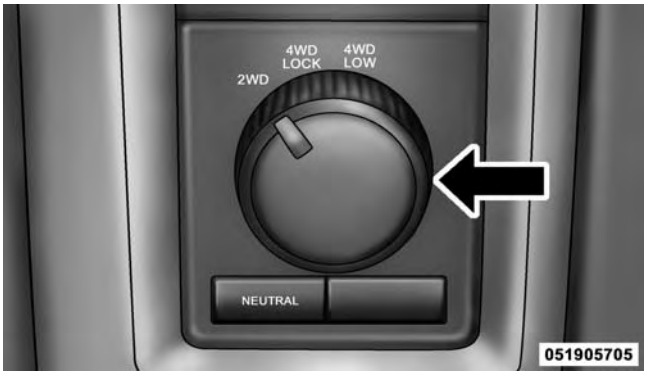
- Pausing in transfer case NEUTRAL in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission may require shutting the engine OFF to avoid gear clash while completing the shift. If difficulty occurs, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL, hold foot on brake, and turn the engine OFF. Make shift to the desired mode.
- Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped, however difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
- Do not attempt to shift into or from 4L while the transmission is in gear.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Light

The "Transfer Case Position Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster is used to alert the driver that the front axle is fully engaged and all four wheels are driving.

Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) — If Equipped

The electronic shift transfer case is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



Transfer Case Switch (Four-Position)

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4WD LOCK)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)

- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

2WD

Rear Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front

and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position.

Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in this section for specific shifting instructions.

The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

NOTE: The transfer case NEUTRAL button is located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

The Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights (4WD and 4LOW) are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

If One Or More Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Not Met:

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.
2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.
3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control switch back to the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the "Shifting Procedure" for your transfer case, located in this section.

The "SVC 4WD Warning Light" monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the "SVC 4WD Warning Light" is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll, which may cause personal injury.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the drivetrain.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Shifting Procedure

NOTE:

- If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The position indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control switch back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five seconds and try the shift again.
- If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.

When the shift is complete, the position indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

2WD To 4WD LOCK

Rotate the 4WD control switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition switch must be in the ON position with the engine either running or off. This shift cannot be completed if the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

NOTE: The four-wheel drive system will not allow shifts between 2WD/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation, the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

2WD Or 4WD LOCK To 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. You can use either of the following procedures:

Preferred Procedure

1. With the engine running, slow the vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

Alternate Procedure

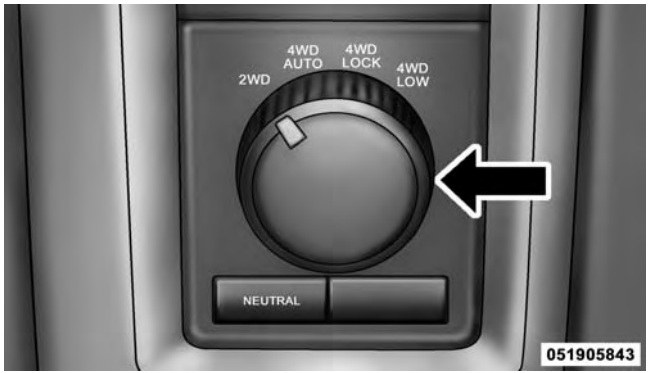
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. With the ignition switch in the ON position and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

NOTE:

- If Steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift, then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Five-Position Switch) — If Equipped

This is an electronic shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



Transfer Case Switch (Five–Position)

This electronically shifted transfer case provides five mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive Automatic High Range (4WD AUTO)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4WD LOCK)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

2WD

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

4WD AUTO

Four-Wheel Drive Auto High Range — This range sends power to the front wheels. The four – wheel drive system will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. Additional traction for varying road conditions.

4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) or four-wheel drive position (4WD AUTO) for normal street and highway conditions on dry hard surfaced roads). Driving the vehicle in 2WD will have greater fuel economy benefits as the front axle is not engaged in 2WD.

For variable driving conditions, the 4WD AUTO mode can be used. In this mode, the front axle is engaged, but the vehicle's power is sent to the rear wheels. Four-wheel drive will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. Because the front axle is engaged, this mode will result in lower fuel economy than the 2WD mode.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to

maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position.

Refer to "Shifting Procedure" in this section for specific shifting instructions.

The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

NOTE: The transfer case NEUTRAL button is located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

The Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights (4WD, 4LOW, and 4WD AUTO) are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

If One Or More Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Not Met:

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.
2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.
3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control switch back to the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the "Shifting Procedure" for your transfer case, located in this section.

The "SVC 4WD Warning Light" monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the "SVC 4WD Warning Light" is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury or death.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. This could cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD, 4WD AUTO or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the drivetrain.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Shifting Procedure

NOTE:

- If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The position indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control switch back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five seconds and try the shift again.
- If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.

When the shift is complete, the position indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

2WD To 4WD AUTO Or 4WD LOCK

Rotate the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD AUTO and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition switch must be in the ON position with the engine either running or OFF. This shift cannot be completed if the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

NOTE: The four-wheel drive system will not allow shifts between 2WD and 4WD AUTO/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation, the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

2WD Or 4WD AUTO Or 4WD LOCK To 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. Use either of the following procedures:

Preferred Procedure

1. With the engine running, slow the vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. While still rolling, rotate the 4WD control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

Alternate Procedure

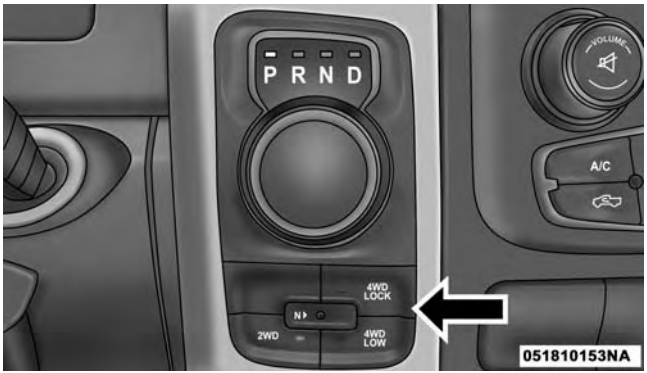
1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.
2. With the ignition switch in the ON position and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. Rotate the 4WD control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

NOTE:

- If Steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift or if they no longer are being met while the shift attempt is in process, the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON position, then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

Four-Position Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Eight Speed Transmission Only) — If Equipped

This is an electronic shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



Transfer Case Switch (Four–Position) — Eight Speed Transmission Only

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4WD LOCK)

- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

2WD

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two–wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry hard surfaced roads). Driving the vehicle in 2WD will have greater fuel economy benefits as the front axle is not engaged in 2WD.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to

maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by pushing the desired position on the 4WD control switch.

Refer to "Shifting Procedure" in this section for specific shifting instructions.

The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

NOTE: The transfer case NEUTRAL button is located in the center of the 4WD Control Switch and is pushed by using a ballpoint pen or similar object. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

The Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights (4WD and 4LOW) are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

If One Or More Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Not Met:

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.
2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.
3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, push the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the ″Shifting Procedure″ for your transfer case, located in this section.

The “SVC 4WD Warning Light” monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the “SVC 4WD Warning Light” is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury or death.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. This could cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD, 4WD or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the drivetrain.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Shifting Procedure

NOTE:

- If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The position indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met.
- If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the position indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

2WD To 4WD LOCK

Push the desired position on the 4WD control switch to shift the transfercase. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after selecting the desired position on the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition must be in the ON position with the engine either running or off. This shift cannot be completed if the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

NOTE: The four-wheel drive system will not allow shifts between 2WD/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation, the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

2WD Or 4WD LOCK To 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. Use either of the following procedures:

Preferred Procedure

1. With the engine running, slow the vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. While still rolling, push the desired position on the transfer case control switch.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

Alternate Procedure

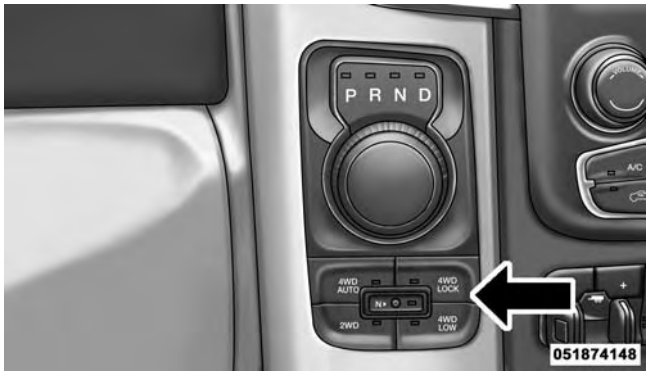
1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.
2. With the ignition switch in the ON position and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. Push the desired position on the transfer case control switch.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

NOTE:

- If Steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift or if they no longer are being met while the shift attempt is in process, the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON position, then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

Five-Position Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Eight Speed Transmission Only) — If Equipped

This is an electronic shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



Transfer Case Switch (Five–Position) — Eight Speed Transmission Only

This electronically shifted transfer case provides five mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive Automatic High Range (4WD AUTO)
- Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range (4WD LOCK)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

2WD

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

4WD AUTO

Four-Wheel Drive Auto High Range — This range sends power to the front wheels. The four–wheel drive system

will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. Additional traction for varying road conditions.

4WD LOCK

Four-Wheel Drive Lock High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two–wheel drive position (2WD) or four-wheel drive position (4WD AUTO) for normal street and highway conditions on dry hard surfaced roads). Driving the vehicle in 2WD will have greater fuel economy benefits as the front axle is not engaged in 2WD.

For variable driving conditions, the 4WD AUTO mode can be used. In this mode, the front axle is engaged, but the vehicle's power is sent to the rear wheels. Four-wheel drive will be automatically engaged when the vehicle senses a loss of traction. Because the front axle is engaged, this mode will result in lower fuel economy than the 2WD mode.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished pushing the desired position on the 4WD Control Switch.

Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in this section for specific shifting instructions.

The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

NOTE: The transfer case NEUTRAL button is located in the center of the 4WD Control Switch and is pushed by using a ballpoint pen or similar object. The transfer case NEUTRAL position is to be used for recreational towing only. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

The Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights (4WD, 4LOW, and 4WD AUTO) are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Met:

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

If One Or More Of The Following Shift Conditions Are Not Met:

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.
2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.
3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, push the current position, wait five seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the ″Shifting Procedure″ for your transfer case, located in this section.

The “SVC 4WD Warning Light” monitors the electronic shift four-wheel drive system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the four-wheel drive system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the “SVC 4WD Warning Light” is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury or death.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. This could cause damage to driveline components.

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD, 4WD AUTO or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of four-wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the drivetrain.

Because four-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Shifting Procedure

NOTE:

- If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift. The position indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met.
- If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the position indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

2WD To 4WD AUTO Or 4WD LOCK

Push the desired position on the 4WD Control Switch to shift the transfer case. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD AUTO and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage/disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after selecting the desired position on the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition switch must be in the ON position with the engine either running or OFF. This shift cannot be completed if the ignition switch is in the ACC position.

NOTE: The four-wheel drive system will not allow shifts between 2WD and 4WD AUTO/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation, the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

2WD Or 4WD AUTO Or 4WD LOCK To 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. Use either of the following procedures:

Preferred Procedure

1. With the engine running, slow the vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).
2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. While still rolling, push the desired position on the transfer case control switch.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

Alternate Procedure

1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.
2. With the ignition switch in the ON position and the engine running, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
3. Push the desired position on the transfer case control switch.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift the transmission back into gear.

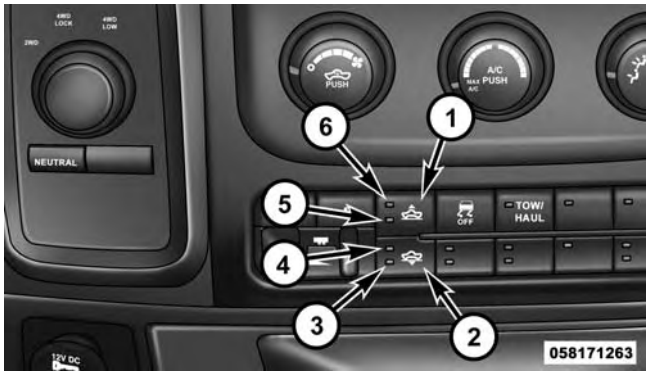
NOTE:

- If Steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift or if they no longer are being met while the shift attempt is in process, the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON position, then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (1500 MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED

Description

The air suspension system provides full time load leveling capability along with the benefit of being able to adjust vehicle height by the push of a button.



Air Suspension Switch

1 — Up Button
2 — Down Button
3 — Entry/Exit Mode Indicator (Customer selectable)
4 — Normal Ride Height Indicator (Customer selectable)
5 — Off-Road 1 Indicator (Customer selectable)
6 — Off-Road 2 Indicator (Customer selectable)

NOTE: The vehicle will automatically enter Aero Mode when the vehicle speed remains between 62 mph (100 km/h) and 66 mph (106 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed exceeds 66 mph (106 km/h).

- **Normal Ride Height (NRH)** – This is the standard position of the suspension and is meant for normal driving.
- **Off-Road 1 (OR1) (Raises the vehicle approximately 1 in [26 mm])** – This position should be the primary position for all off-road driving until Off Road 2 (OR2) is needed. A smoother and more comfortable ride will result. To enter OR1, push the "Up" button once from the NRH position while the vehicle speed is below 35 mph (56 km/h). When in the OR1 position, if the vehicle speed remains between 40 mph (64 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h), the vehicle

will be automatically lowered to NRH. Off-Road 1 may not be available due to vehicle payload, an EVIC/DID message will be displayed when this occurs. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

- **Off-Road 2 (OR2) (Raises the vehicle approximately 2 in [51 mm])** – This position is intended for off-roading use only where maximum ground clearance is required. To enter OR2, push the "Up" button twice from the NRH position or once from the OR1 position while vehicle speed is below 20 mph (32 km/h). While in OR2, if the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) the vehicle height will be automatically lowered to OR1. Off-Road 2 may not be available due to vehicle payload, an EVIC/DID message will be displayed when this occurs. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

CAUTION!

If the vehicle is in OFFROAD1 or OFFROAD2 setting, be aware of your surroundings, you may not have the clearance required for certain areas and vehicle damage may occur.

- **Aero Mode (Lowers the vehicle approximately .6 in [15 mm])** – This position provides improved aerodynamics by lowering the vehicle. The vehicle will automatically enter Aero Mode when the vehicle speed remains between 62 mph (100 km/h) and 66 mph (106 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed exceeds 66 mph (106 km/h). The vehicle will return to NRH from Aero Mode if the vehicle

speed remains between 30 mph (48 km/h) and 35 mph (56 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed falls below 30 mph (48 km/h).

NOTE: Automatic Aero Mode may be disabled through vehicle settings in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) when equipped with Uconnect 3.0, or your Uconnect Radio when equipped with Uconnect 5.0, 8.4A, or 8.4AN. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

- **Entry/Exit Mode (Lowers the vehicle approximately 2 in [51 mm])** – This position lowers the vehicle for easier passenger entry and exit as well as lowering the rear of the vehicle for easier loading and unloading of cargo. To enter Entry/Exit Mode, push the "Down" button once from the NRH while the vehicle speed is below 33 mph (53 km/h). Once the vehicle speed goes below 15 mph (24 km/h) the vehicle height will begin to lower. If the vehicle speed remains between 15 mph (24 km/h) and 25 mph (40 km/h) for greater than 60 seconds, or the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) the Entry/Exit change will be cancelled. To return to Normal Height Mode, push the "Up" button once while in Entry/Exit or drive the vehicle over 15 mph (24 km/h). Entry/Exit mode may not be available due to vehicle payload, an EVIC/DID message will be displayed when this occurs. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: Entry/Exit mode may be achieved using your key fob for easier entry/loading. Refer to "A Word About Your Keys" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.

CAUTION!

When in ENTRY/EXIT setting, be aware of your surroundings, you may not have the clearance required for certain areas and vehicle damage may occur.

The system requires that the ignition be in ON/RUN position or the engine running for all user requested changes. When lowering the vehicle all of the doors, must be closed. If a door is opened at any time while the vehicle is lowering the change will not be completed until the open door(s) is closed.

This system uses a lifting and lowering pattern which keeps the headlights from incorrectly shining into oncoming traffic. When raising the vehicle, the rear of the vehicle will move up first and then the front. When lowering the vehicle, the front will move down first and then the rear.

After the engine is turned off, it may be noticed that the air suspension system operates briefly, this is normal. The system is correcting the position of the vehicle to ensure a proper appearance.

To assist with changing a spare tire, the air suspension system has a feature which allows the automatic leveling to be disabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: If equipped with a touch screen radio all enabling/disabling of air suspension features must be done through the radio. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

WARNING!

The air suspension system uses a high pressure volume of air to operate the system. To avoid personal injury or damage to the system, see your authorized dealer for service.

Air Suspension Modes

The Air Suspension system has multiple modes to protect the system in unique situations:

Tire/Jack Mode

To assist with changing a spare tire, the air suspension system has a feature which allows the automatic leveling to be disabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Transport Mode

To assist with flat bed towing, the air suspension system has a feature which will put the vehicle into Entry/Exit height and disable the automatic load leveling system. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Wheel Alignment Mode

Before performing a wheel alignment, this mode must be enabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Protection Mode

In order to "protect" the air suspension system, the vehicle will enter Protection Mode when load leveling cannot be achieved. Some driving may be required to clear the protection mode telltale in the EVIC/DID. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

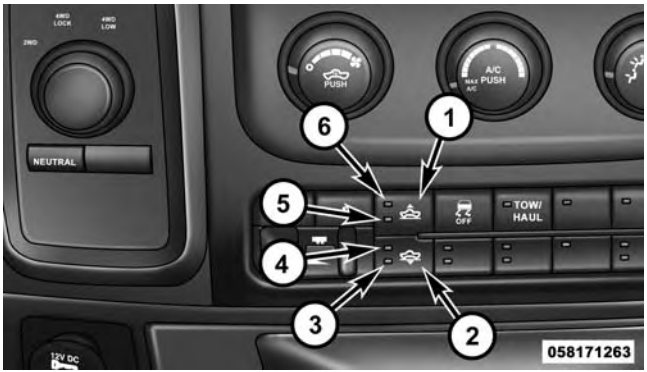
NOTE: If equipped with a touch screen radio all enabling/disabling of air suspension features must be done through the radio. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) Display Messages

When the appropriate conditions exist, a message will appear in the EVIC/DID display. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

An audible chime will be heard whenever a system error has been detected.

Operation



Air Suspension Switch

1 — Up Button
2 — Down Button
3 — Entry/Exit Mode Indicator (Customer selectable)
4 — Normal Ride Height Indicator (Customer selectable)
5 — Off-Road 1 Indicator (Customer selectable)
6 — Off-Road 2 Indicator (Customer selectable)

The indicator lamps 3 through 6 will illuminate to show the current position of the vehicle. Flashing indicator lamps will show a position which the system is working to achieve. When raising, if multiple indicator lamps are flashing, the highest flashing indicator lamp is the position the system is working to achieve. When lowering, if multiple indicators are flashing, the lowest solid indicator lamp is the position the system is working to achieve.

Pushing the "UP" button once will move the suspension one position higher from the current position, assuming all conditions are met (i.e. key in ON/RUN position, engine running, speed below threshold, etc). The "UP" button can be pushed multiple times, each push will raise the requested level by one position up to a maximum position of OR2 or the highest position allowed based on current conditions (i.e. vehicle speed, etc).

Pushing the "DOWN" button once will move the suspension one position lower from the current level, assuming all conditions are met (i.e. key in ON/RUN position, engine running, doors closed, speed below threshold, etc). The "DOWN" button can be pushed multiple times, each push will lower the requested level by one position down to a minimum of Entry/Exit Mode or the lowest position allowed based on current conditions (i.e. vehicle speed, etc.)

Automatic height changes will occur based on vehicle speed and the current vehicle height. The indicator lamps and EVIC/DID messages will operate the same for automatic changes and user requested changes.

- Off-Road 2 (OR2) – Indicator lamps 3, 4, 5 and 6 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in OR2.
- Off-Road 1 (OR1) – Indicator lamps 3, 4 and 5 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in OR1.
- Normal Ride Height (NRH)/Aero Mode – Indicator lamps 3 and 4 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in this position.

- Entry/Exit Mode – Indicator lamp 3 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in Entry Exit Mode. Entry/Exit mode can be requested up to 33 mph (53 km/h). If vehicle speed is reduced to, and kept below, 15 mph (24 km/h) indicator lamp 4 will flash and indicator lamp 3 will remain solid until Entry/Exit Mode is achieved at which point indicator lamp 4 will turn off.
- Transport Mode – No indicator lamps will be illuminated. Transport Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.
- Tire/Jack Mode – Indicator lamps 3 and 6 will be illuminated. Tire/Jack Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.
- Wheel Alignment Mode – Indicator lamps 3 and 4 will be illuminated. Wheel Alignment Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.

AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (2500/3500 MODELS) — IF EQUIPPED

Description

The air suspension system is a rear leveling ride height system. The main purpose of this system is to maintain the truck's rear ride height level.

Rear Leveling Ride Height Switch

Normal Ride Height (NRH) – This is the standard position of the suspension and is meant for normal driving.

Trailer Mode (Lowers the vehicle approximately 1 in (25 mm) – This position will lower the rear suspension and provide load leveling for all loading conditions including towing a trailer. After the "ALT TRAILER HEIGHT" button has been pushed, it will blink continuously until the trailer height has been achieved.

The system requires that the ignition be in ON/RUN position or the engine running with zero vehicle speed for all user requested changes.

After the engine is turned off, it may be noticed that the air suspension system operates briefly, this is normal. The system is correcting the position of the vehicle to ensure a proper appearance.

NOTE: If equipped with a touch screen radio all enabling/disabling of air suspension features must be done through the radio. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

WARNING!

The air suspension system uses a high pressure volume of air to operate the system. To avoid personal injury or damage to the system, see your authorized dealer for service.

Air Suspension Modes

The Air Suspension system has multiple modes to protect the system in unique situations:

Tire/Jack Mode

To assist with changing a spare tire, the air suspension system has a feature which allows the automatic leveling to be disabled. This mode is intended to be used with engine running. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Transport Mode

To assist with flat bed towing, the air suspension system has a feature which will put the vehicle below Normal Ride Height (NRH) and disable the automatic load leveling system. This mode is intended to be used with engine running. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect

Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Wheel Alignment Mode

Before performing a wheel alignment this mode must be enabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Protection Mode

In order to "protect" the air suspension system, the vehicle will enter Protection Mode when load leveling cannot be achieved. Some driving may be required to clear the protection mode telltale in the EVIC/DID. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" or "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" if equipped with a touch screen radio for further information.

NOTE: If equipped with a touch screen radio all enabling/disabling of air suspension features must be done through the radio. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) Display Messages

When the appropriate conditions exist, a message will appear in the EVIC/DID display. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

An audible chime will be heard whenever a system error has been detected.

Operation

Pushing the Trailer Mode button once, while at Normal Ride Height (NRH) will lower the vehicle to trailer level.

NOTE: The LED will continuously blink until vehicle trailer level that been achieved.

Pushing the Trailer Mode again will raise the vehicle to Normal Ride Height (NRH).

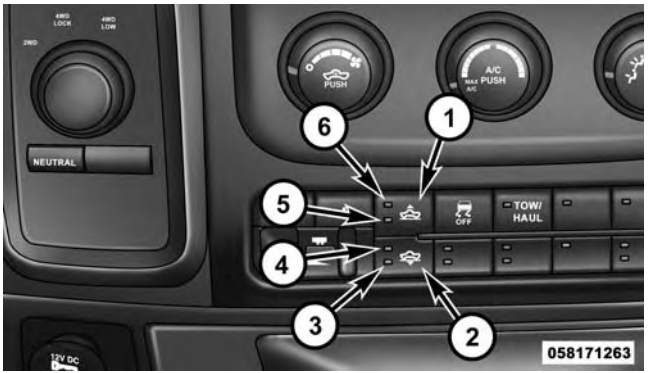
NOTE: The LED will continuously blink until Normal Ride Height (NRH) has been achieved.

- Transport Mode – No indicator lamps will be illuminated. Transport Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.
- Tire/Jack Mode – No indicator lamps will be illuminated. Tire/Jack Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.
- Wheel Alignment Mode – No indicator lamps will be illuminated. Wheel Alignment Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.

AIR SUSPENSION SYSTEM (REBEL MODELS ONLY) — IF EQUIPPED

Description

The air suspension system provides full time load leveling capability along with the benefit of being able to adjust vehicle height by the push of a button.



Air Suspension Switch

1 — Up Button
2 — Down Button
3 — Entry/Exit Mode Indicator Lamp (Customer selectable)
4 — Aero Mode Indicator Lamp (Customer selectable)
5 — Normal Ride Height Indicator Lamp (Customer selectable)
6 — Off-Road Indicator Lamp (Customer selectable)

NOTE: The vehicle will automatically enter Aero Mode when the vehicle speed remains between 62 mph (100 km/h) and 66 mph (106 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed exceeds 66 mph (106 km/h).

- **Normal Ride Height (NRH)** – This is the standard position of the suspension and is meant for normal driving.
- **Off-Road (OR) (Raises the vehicle approximately 1 in [26 mm])** – This position is intended for off-roading use only where maximum ground clearance is required. To enter OR, push the "Up" button once from the NRH position while vehicle speed is below 20 mph (32 km/h). While in OR, if the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) the vehicle height will be automatically lowered to NRH. Off-Road may not be available due to vehicle payload, an EVIC/DID message will be displayed when this occurs. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

CAUTION!

If the vehicle is in Off-Road setting, be aware of your surroundings, you may not have the clearance required for certain areas and vehicle damage may occur.

- **Aero Mode (Lowers the vehicle approximately .6 in [15 mm])** – This position provides improved aerodynamics by lowering the vehicle. The vehicle will automatically enter Aero Mode when the vehicle speed remains between 62 mph (100 km/h) and 66 mph (106 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed exceeds 66 mph (106 km/h). The vehicle will return to NRH from Aero Mode if the vehicle

speed remains between 30 mph (48 km/h) and 35 mph (56 km/h) for greater than 20 seconds or if the vehicle speed falls below 30 mph (48 km/h).

NOTE: Speed thresholds for raising the vehicle only apply if Automatic Aero Mode is enabled.

- To enter Aero Mode manually push the down button once from NRH at any vehicle speed. To return to NRH push the up button once while vehicle speed is less than 56 mph (90 km/h).

NOTE: Automatic Aero Mode may be disabled through vehicle settings on your Uconnect Radio when equipped with UConnect 5.0, 8.4A, or 8.4AN. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

- **Entry/Exit Mode (Lowers the vehicle approximately 3 in [73 mm])** – This position lowers the vehicle for easier passenger entry and exit as well as lowering the rear of the vehicle for easier loading and unloading of cargo. To enter Entry/Exit Mode, push the "Down" button twice from the NRH while the vehicle speed is below 33 mph (53 km/h). Once the vehicle speed goes below 15 mph (24 km/h) the vehicle height will begin to lower. If the vehicle speed remains between 15 mph (24 km/h) and 25 mph (40 km/h) for greater than 60 seconds, or the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) the Entry/Exit change will be cancelled. To return to Normal Height Mode, push the "Up" button twice while in Entry/Exit or drive the vehicle over 15 mph (24 km/h). Entry/Exit mode may not be available due to vehicle payload, an EVIC/DID message will be displayed when this occurs. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

CAUTION!

When in ENTRY/EXIT setting, be aware of your surroundings, you may not have the clearance required for certain areas and vehicle damage may occur.

The system requires that the ignition be in ON/RUN position or the engine running for all user requested changes. When lowering the vehicle all of the doors, must be closed. If a door is opened at any time while the vehicle is lowering the change will not be completed until the open door(s) is closed.

This system uses a lifting and lowering pattern which keeps the headlights from incorrectly shining into oncoming traffic. When raising the vehicle, the rear of the vehicle will move up first and then the front. When lowering the vehicle, the front will move down first and then the rear.

After the engine is turned off, it may be noticed that the air suspension system operates briefly, this is normal. The system is correcting the position of the vehicle to ensure a proper appearance.

To assist with changing a spare tire, the air suspension system has a feature which allows the automatic leveling to be disabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: If equipped with a touch screen radio all enabling/disabling of air suspension features must be done through the radio. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

WARNING!

The air suspension system uses a high pressure volume of air to operate the system. To avoid personal injury or damage to the system, see your authorized dealer for service.

Air Suspension Modes

The Air Suspension system has multiple modes to protect the system in unique situations:

Tire/Jack Mode

To assist with changing a spare tire, the air suspension system has a feature which allows the automatic leveling to be disabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running.

Transport Mode

To assist with flat bed towing, the air suspension system has a feature which will put the vehicle into Entry/Exit height and disable the automatic load leveling system. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running and all doors closed.

Wheel Alignment Mode

Before performing a wheel alignment this mode must be enabled. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: This mode is intended to be enabled with engine running and all doors closed.

Protection Mode

In order to "protect" the air suspension system, the vehicle will enter Protection Mode when load leveling cannot be achieved. Some driving may be required to clear the protection mode telltale in the EVIC/DID. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE: If equipped with a touch screen radio all enabling/disabling of air suspension features must be done through the radio. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Infromation Display (DID) Display Messages

When the appropriate conditions exist, a message will appear in the EVIC/DID display. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

An audible chime will be heard whenever a system error has been detected.

Operation

The indicator lamps 3 through 6 will illuminate to show the current position of the vehicle. Flashing indicator lamps will show a position which the system is working to achieve. When raising or lowering, the flashing indicator lamp is the position the system is working to achieve.

Pushing the "UP" button once will move the suspension one position higher from the current position, assuming all conditions are met (i.e. key in ON/RUN position, engine running, speed below threshold, etc). The "UP" button can be pushed multiple times, each push will raise the requested level by one position up to a maximum position of OR or the highest position allowed based on current conditions (i.e. vehicle speed, etc).

Pushing the "DOWN" button once will move the suspension one position lower from the current level, assuming all conditions are met (i.e. key in ON/RUN position, engine running, doors closed, speed below threshold, etc). The "DOWN" button can be pushed multiple times, each push will lower the requested level by one position down to a minimum of Entry/Exit Mode or the lowest position allowed based on current conditions (i.e. vehicle speed, etc.)

Automatic height changes will occur based on vehicle speed and the current vehicle height. The indicator lamps and EVIC/DID messages will operate the same for automatic changes and user requested changes.

- Off-Road (OR) – Indicator lamps 3, 4, 5 and 6 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in OR.
- Normal Ride Height (NRH) – Indicator lamps 3, 4 and 5 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in NRH.
- Aero Mode – Indicator lamps 3 and 4 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in Aero Mode.

- Entry/Exit Mode – Indicator lamp 3 will be illuminated when the vehicle is in Entry Exit Mode. Entry/Exit mode can be requested up to 33 mph (53 km/h). If vehicle speed is reduced to, and kept below, 15 mph (24 km/h) indicator lamp 3 will flash and indicator lamp 4 will remain solid until Entry/Exit Mode is achieved at which point indicator lamp 4 will turn off.
- Transport Mode – No indicator lamps will be illuminated. Transport Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.
- Tire/Jack Mode – indicator lamps 3 and 6 will be illuminated. Tire/Jack Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.
- Wheel Alignment Mode – indicator lamps 3, 4 and 5 will be illuminated. Wheel Alignment Mode is disabled by driving the vehicle.

AXLE LOCKER SYSTEM — POWER WAGON MODELS ONLY (IF EQUIPPED)

This vehicle is equipped with electronically locking front and rear differentials. These differentials, when engaged, mechanically lock together the axle shafts forcing the wheels to spin at an equal rate. This allows the vehicle to maintain its momentum and prevents it from becoming stuck. The locking front and rear differentials should only be engaged during low-speed, extreme off-road situations where one wheel is likely to not be in contact with the ground. It is not recommended to drive the vehicle with the differentials locked on pavement due to the reduced ability to turn and speed limitations.

Axle Lock Selector

CAUTION!

- **Do not lock the front or rear axle on hard surfaced roads. The ability to steer the vehicle is reduced**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

and damage to the drivetrain may occur when the axles are locked on hard surfaced roads.
- **Do not try to lock the rear axle if the vehicle is stuck and the tires are spinning. You can damage drivetrain components. Lock the rear axle before attempting situations or navigating terrain, which could possibly cause the vehicle to become stuck.**

The locking axles are controlled by the axle locker switch.

The switch has three positions, AXLE UNLOCK, REAR LOCK, and FRONT/REAR LOCK. Under normal driving conditions, the switch should be left in the AXLE UNLOCK position. In the AXLE UNLOCK position, the front and rear axles are unlocked. In the REAR LOCK position, the rear axle is locked. In the FRONT/REAR LOCK position, the front and rear axles are locked.

NOTE: Even when the axles are in the AXLE UNLOCK position, the limited slip differential in the rear axle still provides torque biasing capability for moderate low traction environments.

During the command to lock the axle, the indicator light will flash until the axle is locked. After the lock command has been successfully executed, the light will remain on solid.

To lock the rear axle, place the vehicle in 4LO. Refer to "Four Wheel Drive Operation" in "Starting And Operating" for further information. Move the axle locker switch position to REAR LOCK while traveling less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The RR indicator light will remain on when the rear axle is locked.

NOTE: Left to right wheel speed difference may be necessary to allow the axle to fully lock. If the indicator light is flashing after placing the switch in the REAR LOCK or FRONT/REAR LOCK position, drive the vehicle in a turn or on loose gravel to expedite the locking action.

WARNING!

Do not use the locked axle position for normal driving. A locked front axle is intended for off-road driving only. Locking the front axle during on-road driving will reduce the steering ability. This could cause a collision and you may be seriously injured.

To lock the front axle; move the axle locker switch to FRONT/REAR LOCK while traveling less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The indicator light will be solid when the front axle is locked.

NOTE: The rear axle must be locked before the front axle will lock.

To unlock the front axle; move the axle locker switch to REAR LOCK. The FRONT/REAR LOCK indicator light will go out when the axle is unlocked.

NOTE: The axle lockers could be torque locked due to side to side loads on the axle. Driving slowly while turning the steering wheel from a left hand turn to a right hand turn or driving in REVERSE for a short distance may be required to release the torque lock and unlock the axles.

To unlock the rear axle; move the axle locker switch to AXLE UNLOCK. The REAR LOCK indicator light will go out when the rear axle is unlocked.

STABILIZER/SWAY BAR SYSTEM — POWER WAGON ONLY

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic disconnecting stabilizer/sway bar. This system allows greater front suspension travel in off-road situations.

Due to the use of taller springs, this vehicle has an increased ride height of approximately 1.9 in (48.3 mm) in the front and 1.5 in (38.1 mm) in the rear. A major advantage to increasing ride height is the positive effect it has on approach/departure and break over angles.

This system is controlled by the electronic control sway bar switch located on the instrument panel.

Sway Bar Disconnect Buttons

The switch has two positions; On-Road and Off-Road. The system is normally in the On-Road mode, indicated by a solid green light. The stabilizer/sway bar should remain in the On-Road mode during normal driving conditions.

WARNING!

Do not disconnect the stabilizer bar and drive on hard surfaced roads or at speeds above 18 mph (29 km/h), you may lose control of the vehicle, which could result in serious injury or death. The front stabilizer bar enhances vehicle stability and assists in maintaining control of the vehicle. The system monitors vehicle speed and will attempt to reconnect the stabilizer bar at speeds over 18 mph (29 km/h). This is indicated by a flashing off road light and solid on road light. Once vehicle speed is reduced below 14 mph (22 km/h), the system will attempt to return to the Off-Road mode.

To disconnect the stabilizer/sway bar, shift to either 4HI or 4LO as shown in "Four Wheel Drive Operation" and push the right hand Off Road stabilizer/sway bar button

5

to obtain the Off-Road position. The amber indicator light will flash until the stabilizer/sway bar has been fully disconnected.

NOTE: The stabilizer/sway bar may be torque locked due to left and right suspension height differences. This condition is due to driving surface differences or vehicle loading. In order for the stabilizer/sway bar to disconnect/reconnect, the right and left halves of the bar must be aligned. This alignment may require that the vehicle be driven onto level ground or rocked from side to side.

To return to the On-Road mode; push the left hand On Road stabilizer/sway bar button.

WARNING!

If the stabilizer/sway bar will not return to On-Road mode, vehicle stability is reduced. Do not attempt to drive the vehicle over 18 mph (29 km/h). Driving faster than 18 mph (29 km/h) may cause loss of control of the vehicle, which could result in serious injury or death. Contact your local service center for assistance.

SAFE OFF-ROAD DRIVING — POWER WAGON ONLY

Off-Road Driving Tips And Vehicle Characteristics

Your vehicle has excellent on and off-road capabilities. These off-road capabilities will allow you to explore those wilderness trails where few travel, providing a source of exciting and satisfying recreation. Before you venture out, you should contact your local governmental

agency to determine the designated off-road vehicle (ORV) trails or recreation areas. You should always tread lightly and only use established roads, trails or ORV recreational areas. The National Forest Service, Bureau of Land Management or local Department of Natural Resources are a wealth of information and usually have maps with marked trails.

Skid Plates And Underbody Protection

Steel skid plates protect the major driveline components of the truck including the fuel tank, transfer case and steering damper. In addition, this vehicle is equipped with boxed cross members and fore/aft rails. This additional protection allows the vehicle to be utilized in severe off-road situations that would be considered impassable by a normal truck.

Ramp Travel Index (RTI)

The ramp travel index is the distance, in inches, that you can drive your vehicle with one wheel on a 20-degree ramp without lifting any other wheel off the ground. This distance up the ramp divided by the wheelbase of the vehicle and multiplied by 1,000 is the RTI. This vehicle has an RTI of 510, which means you can articulate one front wheel 26 inches (66 cm) in the air while the other three wheels remain in contact with the ground.

Water Fording Characteristics

Water fording characteristic is the vehicle's ability to cross a body of still water, where the powertrain and drivetrain are safe from water ingestion. This vehicle has high water fording characteristics with the ability to cross a pool of water, without stopping, 24 inches (60 cm) deep at a maximum speed of 10 mph (16 km/h) and a pool of water 30 inches (76 cm) deep at a maximum speed of 5 mph (8 km/h), both with an entrance ramp angle of 1.3 degrees.

CAUTION!

The door sill height is 25 inches (63.5 cm). Water may intrude into the interior of the vehicle at greater depths.

Simultaneous Brake And Throttle Operation

Many off-road driving conditions require the simultaneous use of the brake and throttle (two footed driving). When climbing rocks, logs, or other stepped objects, using light brake pressure with light throttle will keep the vehicle from jerking or lurching. This technique is also used when you need to stop and restart a vehicle on a steep incline.

The Basics Of Off-Road Driving

You will encounter many types of terrain driving off-road. You should be familiar with the terrain and area before proceeding. There are many types of surface conditions: hard packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow and ice. Every surface has a different effect on your vehicle's steering, handling and traction. Controlling your vehicle is one of the keys to successful off-road driving, so always keep a firm grip on the steering wheel and maintain a good driving posture. Avoid sudden accelerations, turns or braking. In most cases there are no road signs, posted speed limits or signal lights. Therefore you will need to use your own good judgment on what is safe and what isn't. When on a trail you should always be looking ahead for surface obstacles and changes in terrain. The key is to plan your future driving route while remembering what you are currently driving over.

CAUTION!

Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials. The heat from your vehicle exhaust system could cause a fire.

WARNING!

Always wear your seat belt and firmly tie down cargo. Unsecured cargo can become projectiles in an off-road situation.

When To Use Low Range

When driving off-road, shift into 4LO (Low Range) for additional traction or to improve handling and control on slippery or difficult terrain. Due to the lower gearing, low range will allow the engine to operate in a higher power range. This will allow you to idle over obstacles and down hills, with improved control and less effort. Also, use 4LO (Low Range) in rain, ice, snow, mud, sand, to get heavy loads rolling, improve traction, or whenever 4HI (High Range) traction will not do the job.

Driving In Snow, Mud And Sand

There is a drastic reduction in traction when driving in snow, mud or sand. The vehicle will be less responsive to steering, acceleration and braking inputs. Therefore you should accelerate slowly, leave greater stopping distances and avoid abrupt vehicle maneuvers. You want to keep a slow constant steady pace. The key is to maintain the vehicle's momentum.

- **Snow** – In heavy snow or for additional control and traction at slower speeds, shift the transmission to a low gear and shift the transfer case to 4LO (Low Range) if necessary. Do not shift to a lower gear than necessary to maintain headway. Over-revving the engine can spin the wheels and traction will be lost. If you start to slow to a stop, try turning your steering wheel no more than a ¼ turn quickly back and forth, while still applying throttle. This will allow the tires to get a fresh "bite" and help maintain your momentum.

CAUTION!

On icy or slippery roads, do not downshift at high engine RPMs or vehicle speeds because engine braking may cause skidding and loss of control.

- **Mud** – Deep mud creates a great deal of suction around the tires and is very difficult to get through. You should use 4LO (Low Range) with a gear low enough to maintain your momentum without shifting. If you start to slow to a stop, try turning your steering wheel no more than a ¼ turn quickly back and forth for additional traction. Mud holes pose an increased threat of vehicle damage and getting stuck. They are normally full of debris from previous vehicles getting stuck. As a good practice before entering any mud hole, get out and determine how deep it is, if there are any hidden obstacles and if the vehicle can be safely recovered if stuck.
- **Sand** – Soft sand is very difficult to travel through with full tire pressure. When crossing soft sandy spots in a trail maintain your vehicle's momentum and do not stop. The key to driving in soft sand using the appropriate tire pressure, accelerating slowly, avoiding abrupt maneuvers and maintaining the vehicle's momentum. If you are going to be driving on large soft sandy areas or dunes, reduce your tire pressure to a minimum of 15 psi (103 kPa) to allow for a greater tire surface area. Reduced tire pressure will drastically improve your traction and handling, while driving on the soft sand, but you must return the tires to normal air pressure before driving on pavement or other hard surfaces. Be sure you have a way to air the tires back up prior to reducing the pressure.

CAUTION!

Reduced tire pressures may cause tire unseating and total loss of air pressure. To reduce the risk of tire unseating, while at a reduced tire pressure, reduce your speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Crossing Obstacles (Rocks And Other High Points)

While driving off road, you will encounter many types of terrain. These varying types of terrain bring different types of obstacles. Before proceeding review the path ahead to determine the correct approach and your ability to safely recover the vehicle if something goes wrong. Keeping a firm grip on the steering wheel, bring the vehicle to a complete stop and then inch the vehicle forward until it makes contact with the object. Apply the throttle lightly while holding a light brake pressure and ease the vehicle up and over the object.

WARNING!

Crossing obstacles can cause abrupt steering system loading which could cause you to loose control of your vehicle.

Using A Spotter

There are many times where it is hard to see the obstacle or determine the correct path. Determining the correct path can be extremely difficult when you are confronting many obstacles. In these cases have someone guide you over, through, or around the obstacle. Have the person stand a safe distance in front of you where they can see the obstacle, watch your tires and undercarriage, and guide you through.

Crossing Large Rocks

When approaching large rocks, choose a path which ensures you drive over the largest with your tires. This will lift your undercarriage over the obstacle. The tread of the tire is tougher and thicker than the side wall and is designed to take the abuse. Always look ahead and make every effort to cross the large rocks with your tires.

CAUTION!

- **Never attempt to straddle a rock that is large enough to strike your axles or undercarriage.**
- **Never attempt to drive over a rock which is large enough to contact the door sills.**

Crossing A Ravine, Gully, Ditch, Washout Or Rut

When crossing a ravine, gully, ditch, washout or a large rut, the angled approach is the key to maintaining your vehicle's mobility. Approach these obstacles at a 45-degree angle and let each tire go through the obstacle independently. You need to use caution when crossing large obstacles with steep sides. Do not attempt to cross any large obstacle with steep sides at an angle great enough to put the vehicle at risk of a rollover. If you get caught in a rut, dig a small trench to the right or left at a 45-degree angle ahead of the front tires. Use the removed dirt to fill the rut ahead of the turnout you just created. You should now be able to drive out following the trench you just created at a 45-degree angle.

WARNING!

There is an increased risk of rollover when crossing an obstacle, at any angle, with steep sides.

Crossing Logs

To cross a log, approach it at a slight angle (approximately 10 to 15 degrees). This allows one front tire to be on top of the log while the other just starts to climb the log. While climbing the log, modulate your brake and accelerator to avoid spinning the log out from under your tires. Then ease the vehicle off the log using your brakes.

CAUTION!

Do not attempt to cross a log with a greater diameter than the running ground clearance or the vehicle will become high centered.

Getting High Centered

If you get hung up or high centered on an object, get out of the vehicle and try to determine what the vehicle is hung up on, where it is contacting the underbody and what is the best direction to recover the vehicle. Depending on what you are in contact with, jack the vehicle up and place a few rocks under the tires so the weight is off of the high point when you let the vehicle down. You can also try rocking the vehicle or winching the vehicle off the object.

CAUTION!

Winching or rocking the vehicle off hard objects increases the risk of underbody damage.

Hill Climbing

Hill climbing requires good judgment and a good understanding of your abilities and your vehicle's limitations. Hills can cause serious problems. Some are just too steep to climb and should not be attempted. You should always

feel confident with the vehicle and your abilities. You should always climb hills straight up and down. Never attempt to climb a hill on an angle.

- **Before Climbing A Steep Hill** – As you approach a hill consider its grade or steepness. Determine if it is too steep. Look to see what the traction is on the hill side trail. Is the trail straight up and down? What is on top and the other side? Are there ruts, rocks, branches or other obstacles on the path? Can you safely recover the vehicle if something goes wrong? If everything looks good and you feel confident, then change transmission into a lower gear, shift the transfer case into 4LO (Low) and proceed with caution. You should use first gear and 4LO (Low Range) for very steep hills.
- **Driving Up Hill** – Once you have determined your ability to proceed and have shifted into the appropriate gear, line your vehicle up for the straightest possible run. Accelerate with an easy constant throttle and apply more power as you start up the hill. Do not race forward into a steep grade, the abrupt change of grade could cause you to lose control. If the front end begins to bounce, ease off the throttle slightly to bring all four tires back on the ground. As you approach the crest of the hill ease off the throttle and slowly proceed over the top. If the wheels start to slip as you approach the crest of a hill, ease off the accelerator and maintain headway by turning the steering wheel no more than a ¼ turn quickly back and forth. This will provide a fresh "bite" into the surface and will usually provide enough traction to complete the climb. If you do not make it to the top, place the vehicle in REVERSE and back straight down the grade using engine resistance along with the vehicle brakes.

WARNING!

Never attempt to climb a hill at an angle or turn around on a steep grade. Driving across an incline increases the risk of a roll over, which may result in severe injury or death.

- **Driving Down Hill** – Before driving down a steep hill you need to determine if it is too steep for a safe descent. What is the surface traction? Is the grade too steep to maintain a slow controlled descent? Are there obstacles? Is it a straight descent? Is there plenty of distance at the base of the hill to regain control if the vehicle descends too fast? If you feel confident in your ability to proceed then make sure you are in 4LO (Low Range) with the transmission in first gear (manually select first gear on automatic transmissions) and proceed with caution. Allow engine braking to control the descent and apply your brakes if necessary, but do not allow the tires to lock.

WARNING!

Do not descend a steep grade in NEUTRAL. Use vehicle brakes in conjunction with engine braking. Descending a grade too fast could cause you to lose control and be seriously injured or killed.

- **Driving Across An Incline** – If at all possible avoid driving across an incline. If it is necessary, know your vehicle's abilities. Driving across an incline places more weight on the down hill wheels, which increases the possibilities of a down hill slide or rollover. Make sure the surface has good traction with firm and stable soils. If possible transverse the incline at an angle heading slightly up or down.

WARNING!

Driving across an incline increases the risk of a rollover, which may result in severe injury.

- **If You Stall Or Begin To Lose Headway** – If you stall or begin to lose headway while climbing a steep hill, allow your vehicle to come to a stop and immediately apply the brake. Restart the engine and shift into REVERSE. Back slowly down the hill allowing the compression braking of the engine and transmission to help regulate your speed. If the brakes are required to control vehicle speed, apply them lightly and avoid locking or skidding the tires.

WARNING!

If the engine stalls or you lose headway or cannot make it to the top of a steep hill or grade, never attempt to turn around. To do so may result in tipping and rolling the vehicle, which may result in severe injury. Always back carefully straight down a hill in REVERSE. Never back down a hill in NEUTRAL using only the vehicle brakes. Never drive diagonally across a hill, always drive straight up or down.

Driving Through Water

Extreme care should be taken crossing any type of water. Water crossings should be avoided if possible and only be attempted when necessary, in a safe responsible manner. You should only drive through areas which are designated and approved. You should tread lightly and avoid damage to the environment. You should know your vehicle's abilities and be able to recover it if something goes wrong. You should never stop or shut a vehicle off when crossing deep water unless you ingested water into the engine air intake. If the engine stalls do not attempt to restart it. Determine if it has ingested water first. The key to any crossing is low and slow. You want to use first gear in 4L (Low Range) and proceed very slowly with a constant slow speed (3-5 mph [5–8 km/h] maximum) and light throttle. Keep the vehicle moving; do not try to accelerate through the crossing. After crossing any water higher than the bottom of the axle differentials, you should inspect all of the vehicle fluids for signs of water ingestion.

CAUTION!

Water ingestion into the axles, transmission, transfer case, engine or vehicle interior can occur if you drive too fast or through too deep of water. Water can cause permanent damage to engine, driveline or other vehicle components and your brakes will be less effective once wet and/or muddy.

- **Before You Cross Any Type Of Water** – As you approach any type of water you need to determine if you can cross it safely and responsibly. If necessary, get out and walk through the water or probe it with a stick. You need to be sure of its depth, approach angle, current and bottom condition. Be careful of murky or muddy waters, check for hidden obstacles. Make sure you will not be intruding on any wildlife and you can

recover the vehicle if necessary. The key to a safe crossing is the water depth, current and bottom conditions. On soft bottoms the vehicle will sink in, effectively increasing the water level on the vehicle. Be sure to consider this when determining the depth and the ability to safely cross.

- **Crossing Puddles, Pools, Flooded Areas Or Other Standing Water** – Puddles, pools, flooded or other standing water areas normally contain murky or muddy waters. These water types normally contain hidden obstacles and make it difficult to determine an accurate water depth, approach angle, and bottom condition. Murky or muddy water holes are where you want to hook up tow straps prior to entering. This makes for a faster, cleaner and easier vehicle recovery. If you are able to determine you can safely cross, than proceed using the low and slow method.

CAUTION!

Muddy waters can reduce the cooling system effectiveness by depositing debris onto the radiator.

- **Crossing Ditches, Streams, Shallow Rivers Or Other Flowing Water** – Flowing water can be extremely dangerous. Never attempt to cross a fast running stream or river even in shallow water. Fast moving water can easily push your vehicle downstream sweeping it out of control. Even in very shallow water, a high current can still wash the dirt out from around your tires putting you and your vehicle in jeopardy. There is still a high risk of personal injury and vehicle damage with slower water currents in depths greater than the vehicle's running ground clearance. You should never attempt to cross flowing water which is deeper than the vehicle's running ground clearance. Even the slowest current can push the heaviest vehicle

downstream out of control if the water is deep enough to push on the large surface area of the vehicle's body. Before you proceed determine the speed of the current, the water's depth, approach angle, bottom condition and if there are any obstacles, then cross at an angle heading slightly upstream using the low and slow technique.

WARNING!

Never drive through fast moving deep water. It can push your vehicle downstream, sweeping it out of control. This could put you and your passengers at risk of injury or drowning.

Airing Down For Off-Road Driving

Running lower tire pressure off-road can improve your ride comfort and vehicle traction. Reducing the tire air pressure allows the tire to bulge slightly, improving its surface area for better flotation and ability to mold or form to the ground contour. Different terrain, tires, and vehicles require different tire pressure. Hard surfaces like rock and heavier vehicles require higher pressures than softer surfaces such as sand and lighter vehicles. You will need to experiment to determine what is right for your situation. It is easier and faster to let air out than it is to replace it so, start high and lower it as required. Remember you must return the tires to normal air pressure before driving on road or at highway conditions. Be sure you have a way to return the tires to their normal on road air pressure.

CAUTION!

Reduced tire pressure increases the risk of tire damage and may cause tire unseating with total loss of air

(Continued)

CAUTION! ***(Continued)***

pressure. To reduce the risk of tire unseating, while at a reduced tire pressure, drive at slower speeds and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Vehicle Recovery

If you drive off-road, you may encounter a situation where you will need to recover your vehicle. Vehicle recovery should always be given consideration before attempting a questionable obstacle. You should never go off-road driving without the ability to recover your vehicle from a situation. Having another vehicle with you usually works best for most situations. The first thing to do is assess the situation. Why are you stuck? Are you hung up on something? Would it be easier to go forward or to go backward? Can you still move the vehicle? Is there an anchor point to winch to? Are you alone or do you have another vehicle to help? Is there high risk of vehicle damage during the recovery process? Answering these questions will help you determine the best method of recovery. If you can still move the vehicle slightly and the only issue is slick ground, then rock cycling your vehicle would be the first choice. If you have ample room, an additional vehicle and there is low risk of vehicle impingement on the surroundings, then using a tow strap to the vehicle tow hooks would be fast and easy. If the vehicle is severely hung up or in a situation where great care needs to be taken during the recovery, then nothing can do the job better than a winch. If you are severely hung up on something you should jack the vehicle up and stack something under the wheels to allow the vehicle to roll off the object without causing further damage. This should be tried before attempting any recovery method.

CAUTION!

Pulling the vehicle off an obstacle, without first clearing the object, may result in additional underbody damage.

- **Rock Cycling Your Vehicle** – Rock cycling your vehicle is one of the easiest, fastest and most commonly used methods. This simply involves shifting your vehicle from DRIVE to REVERSE, while applying throttle after each shift. During this process, for additional traction, try turning your steering wheel quickly left and right no more than a ¼ turn. If you are stuck in mud, sand, or snow try spinning your tires during this process to clean the debris from the tread and improve the traction. You want to create a rocking motion with the vehicle. This helps build vehicle momentum, which hopefully gets you out. Remember to ease off and on the accelerator before and after the shift. If after a few rock cycles your vehicle is not free, stop and try another method of recovery. Continuous rock cycling will only cause unnecessary damage to your vehicle and the environment.

CAUTION!

Damage can occur when spinning your tires at an excessive high speed. Do not spin your tires faster than an indicated 30 mph (48 km/h).

- **Using The Tow Hooks With A Tow Strap** – Tow straps are a quick and easy way to recover your vehicle from minor situations if you have a secondary vehicle which is not stuck. The tow hooks on your vehicle are designed to take the abusive force generated during vehicle recovery. Do not use the bumper or any other vehicle component as an attachment point. Using tow straps requires coordination between the two drivers. Good communication and line of sight are required for

a safe recovery. First connect the tow strap to the correct attachment points on both vehicles. There should be a least 20 to 30 feet (6 to 9 meters) between the vehicles to allow for a safe recovery. If necessary join two tow straps together using a 1 ½ inch hard wood dowel. This will keep the straps from becoming knotted and is safer than using a clevis pin if the strap breaks. Next have the tow vehicle backup, leaving two to three feet worth of slack in the strap. Then the tow vehicle, using light throttle, should accelerate tightening the strap providing the pulling force needed to free the vehicle. The vehicle being recovered should assist in the recovery, at the time of the snap, by slowly spinning the tires in the same direction as the pulling vehicle. After the vehicle becomes free, the driver of the previously stuck vehicle should signal they are free and should hit their brakes stopping both vehicles. The driver of the pulling vehicle should let off the throttle without using the brakes, once signaled by the other driver. This sequence is important to avoid having the recovered vehicle hit the pulling vehicle.

WARNING!

Never use tow straps with end hooks or link two straps with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if a strap breaks, which could cause severe injury. Never leave more than 2 to 3 feet (.6 to 1 meter) of slack in the strap. More slack than this greatly increases the risk of injury and vehicle damage. Always keep everyone at least 30 feet (9 meters) away from a strapping or winching situation.

- **Winching (Refer To "Winch Operation" For Additional Information)** – Winching is most commonly used in the following situations: there is no support vehicle available, a high controlled force is required to

recover the vehicle, there is a high risk of environmental or vehicle damage, or where nothing else seems to work. A winch can deliver a high pulling force with a great deal of control. It allows you to walk the vehicle out of the situation in a slow controlled manner. This control works well for avoiding further vehicle damage. Once you decide it is time to use the winch look for a good anchor point. It needs to be strong enough to hold more than the vehicle's weight and provide a direction of pull as straight as possible. Use block and tackle if necessary to improve the angle of pull or increase the winch's pulling force. If the anchor point is a tree use a strap around its base and hook the cable to the strap. If it is another vehicle, then place that vehicle in PARK and block the front tires. If you cannot find an anchor point within reach try using your spare tire by burying it. Once you have determined an anchor point hook up the cable, ensuring there are a least five wraps of cable left on the drum, and place a floor mat or something else over the strung out cable. Placing something over the strung out cable helps keep the cable on the ground if it breaks. Next, place the vehicle in first gear and apply a very light throttle as you power the winch in. Be careful not to allow slack in the cable as you recover the vehicle. Do not try to guide the cable into the drum. If it starts to bunch up on one end, let it. You can re-spool the cable afterwards. Never use a winch cable as a tow strap and always stand back while winching.

WARNING!

Winch cables are under high tension when in use and can become a projectile if they fail. Never stand over or straddle the winch cable. Never jerk or overload the winch cable. Never stand in front of the vehicle while winching. Failure to follow these instructions can result in serious or fatal injury.

After Driving Off-Road

Off-road operation puts more stress on your vehicle than does most on-road driving. After going off-road, it is always a good idea to check for damage. That way you can get any problems taken care of right away and have your vehicle ready when you need it.

- Completely inspect the underbody of your vehicle. Check tires, body structure, steering, suspension, and exhaust system for damage.
- Inspect the radiator for mud and debris and clean as required.
- Check threaded fasteners for looseness, particularly on the chassis, drivetrain components, steering, and suspension. Retighten them, if required, and torque to the values specified in the Service Manual.
- Check for accumulations of plants or brush. These things could be a fire hazard. They might hide damage to fuel lines, brake hoses, axle pinion seals, and propeller shafts.
- After extended operation in mud, sand, water, or similar dirty conditions, have the radiator, fan, brake rotors, wheels, brake linings, and axle yokes inspected and cleaned as soon as possible.

WARNING!

Abrasive material in any part of the brakes may cause excessive wear or unpredictable braking. You might not have full braking power when you need it to prevent a collision. If you have been operating your vehicle in dirty conditions, get your brakes checked and cleaned as necessary.

- If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted material can cause a wheel imbalance and freeing the wheels of it will correct the situation.

LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel, particularly when there is a difference between the traction characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit performs similarly to a conventional differential. On slippery surfaces, however, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the rear wheel having the better traction.

The limited-slip differential is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will supply maximum traction. When starting with only one rear wheel on an excessively slippery surface, slight momentary application of the parking brake may be necessary to gain maximum traction.

WARNING!

On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground since the vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground. You could lose control of the vehicle.

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES

Acceleration

Rapid acceleration on snow covered, wet, or other slippery surfaces may cause the driving wheels to pull erratically to the right or left. This phenomenon occurs when there is a difference in the surface traction under the rear (driving) wheels.

WARNING!

Rapid acceleration on slippery surfaces is dangerous. Unequal traction can cause sudden pulling of the rear wheels. You could lose control of the vehicle and possibly have a collision. Accelerate slowly and carefully whenever there is likely to be poor traction (ice, snow, wet mud, loose sand, etc.).

Traction

When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning and may cause partial or complete loss of vehicle control and stopping ability. To reduce this possibility, the following precautions should be observed:

- Slow down during rainstorms or when the roads are slushy.
- Slow down if the road has standing water or puddles.
- Replace tires when tread wear indicators first become visible.
- Keep tires properly inflated.
- Maintain sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you to avoid a collision in a sudden stop.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Limited Slip Differential (LSD) that reduces, but does not eliminate, the amount of wheel slip across a given axle for improved handling.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Driving through water more than a few inches/centimeters deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.

Flowing/Rising Water

WARNING!

Do not drive on or across a road or path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following Cautions and Warnings before doing so.

WARNING!

- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.**
- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping**

(Continued)

5

WARNING! *(Continued)*

distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.
- Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

CAUTION!

- Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.
- Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water and if there are any obstacles in the way before driving through the standing water.

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.
- Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drivetrain components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e., engine oil, transmission, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e., fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

OFF-ROAD DRIVING TIPS

Care should be taken when attempting to climb steep hills or driving diagonally across a hill or slope. If natural obstacles force you to travel diagonally up or down a hill, choose a mild angle and keep as little side tilt as possible. Keep the vehicle moving and make turns slowly and cautiously.

If you must back down a hill, back straight down using REVERSE gear. Never back down in NEUTRAL or diagonally across the hill.

When driving over sand, mud, and other soft terrain, shift to low gear and drive steadily. Apply the accelerator slowly to avoid spinning the wheels.

Do not reduce the tire pressures for this type of driving.

After Driving Off-Road

Off-road operation puts more stress on your vehicle than does most on-road driving. After going off-road, it is always a good idea to check for damage. That way you can get any problems taken care of right away and have your vehicle ready when you need it.

- Completely inspect the underbody of your vehicle. Check tires, body structure, steering, suspension, and exhaust system for damage.
- Inspect the radiator for mud and debris and clean as required.
- Check threaded fasteners for looseness, particularly on the chassis, drivetrain components, steering, and suspension. Retighten them, if required, and torque to the values specified in the Service Manual.
- Check for accumulations of plants or brush. These things could be a fire hazard. They might hide damage to fuel lines, brake hoses, axle pinion seals, and propeller shafts.

- After extended operation in mud, sand, water, or similar dirty conditions, have the radiator, fan, brake rotors, wheels, brake linings, and axle yokes inspected and cleaned as soon as possible.

WARNING!

Abrasive material in any part of the brakes may cause excessive wear or unpredictable braking. You might not have full braking power when you need it to prevent a collision. If you have been operating your vehicle in dirty conditions, get your brakes checked and cleaned as necessary.

- If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted material can cause a wheel imbalance and freeing the wheels of it will correct the situation.

WINCH USAGE — POWER WAGON ONLY — (IF EQUIPPED)

Things To Know Before Using Your Winch

General Winch Information

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric vehicle recovery winch. This winch uses the electrical power from the vehicle charging system to power a motor that winds wire rope into the winch drum via planetary gear reduction. By nature, a winch is capable of generating very high forces and should be used with care. Do not operate the winch without reading and understanding the complete winch owner's manual.

Tensioning The Wire Rope

The winch rope must be properly tensioned before use. Follow the instructions below to tension the rope:

1. Un-spool the wire rope leaving five wraps of rope on the winch drum.

2. Attach the hook to a suitable anchor point.

CAUTION!

Be certain the anchor will withstand the load required to tension the wire rope.

3. Apply at least 500 lbs (227 kg) of tension to the rope while winding the rope. Always use care to ensure the rope does not pile up on one side of the drum and is neatly wound onto the drum.

CAUTION!

Wire rope must spool on the winch drum in the direction indicated on the drum rotation decal on the winch.

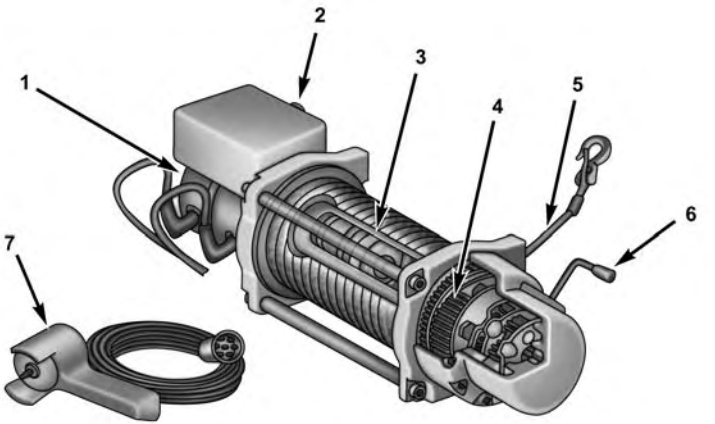
Low Voltage Interrupt

Your winch is equipped with a device that will interrupt winch function if the vehicle charging system voltage drops to a low level. The winch will not power-in or out for 30 seconds if this device is tripped. If the interrupt is tripped, the vehicle should be operated at high idle for a few minutes to allow the vehicle charging system to recover before continuing to winch.

Winch Motor Thermal Protection

Your winch is equipped with a thermal protection device in the motor. If the winch is operated for an excessive duration, the device may interrupt motor function to protect the winch motor. During this time the winch will power-out but will not power-in. Allow the winch motor to cool for a few minutes before continuing to winch. The winch will resume normal function once the motor cools.

Understanding The Features Of Your Winch



Winch Components

1. **Motor:** The winch motor is powered by the vehicle charging system and features a thermal protection switch that automatically stops motor function in the power-in direction if the motor gets too hot.
2. **Remote Socket:** The remote socket allows the remote control to be attached to the control pack to allow the winch to function.
3. **Winch Drum With Integral Brake:** The winch drum allows the wire rope to be stored on the winch and transmits force to the wire rope. The winch is equipped with an integral brake that will stop rotation of the winch drum if the winch motor is stopped.
4. **3-Stage Planetary Gear Set:** Provides balance between speed and pulling power.
5. **Wire Rope:** The wire rope allows the winch to be connected to an anchor to provide a pulling force.
6. **Clutch Lever:** The clutch lever allows the winch drum to be disconnected from the winch motor to allow the wire rope to be pulled from the winch by hand.
7. **Remote Control:** The remote control provides the interface between the winch operator and the winch. The remote control provides the ability to power the winch in, out, and stop the winch. To operate the winch, the toggle switch is pressed down to power the winch in and up to power the winch out. The winch will stop if the switch is left in the neutral (center) position.

CAUTION!

If not installed, the hook strap must be placed on the hook.

Fairlead: The fairlead acts as a guide for the wire rope and minimizes damage to the rope.

Winch Accessories

The following accessories are necessary to attach the winch to anchors, change direction of pull, and for safe winching.

Gloves: Wire rope, through use, will develop ″barbs″ which can slice skin. It is extremely important to wear protective gloves while operating the winch or handling the wire rope. Avoid loose fitting clothes or anything that could become entangled in the wire rope and other moving parts.

Snatch/Block Pulley: Used properly, the multi-purpose snatch block allows you to (1) increase the winch's pulling power; and (2) change your pulling direction without damaging the wire rope. Proper use of the snatch block is covered in ″Before You Pull.″

Clevis/D-Shackles: The D-Shackle is a safe means of connecting the looped ends of cables, straps and snatch blocks. The shackle's pin is threaded to allow easy removal.

Tree Trunk Protector: Typically made of tough, high-quality nylon, it provides the operator an attachment point for the winch rope to a wide variety of anchor points and objects, as well as protect living trees.

Operating Your Winch

WARNING!

Failure to observe any of these warnings regarding proper winch usage may result in severe injury.

- **Always use supplied hook strap to hold the hook when spooling wire rope in or out.**
- **Never use as a hoist.**
- **Never use to move persons.**
- **Never exceed winch or wire rope rated capacity.**
- **Always wear heavy leather gloves when handling the wire rope.**
- **Never touch wire rope or hook while in tension or under load.**
- **Never engage or disengage clutch if winch is under load, wire rope is in tension, or wire rope drum is moving.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Always stand clear of wire rope and load and keep others away during winching.**
- **Always keep hands and clothing clear of the wire rope, hook and fairlead opening during operation and when spooling.**
- **Never wrap wire rope back onto itself. Always use a choker chain, wire choker rope or tree trunk protector on the anchor.**
- **Never attach a recovery strap to the winch hook to increase the length of a pull.**
- **Never attempt to tow a vehicle with the recovery strap attached directly to the winch hook.**
- **Never use "bungee" straps that develop tremendous and potentially dangerous amounts of force when stretched.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **Always disconnect the remote control when not in use.**
- **Never winch when there are less than five wraps of wire rope around the winch drum.**
- **Always pass remote control through a window to avoid pinching lead in door, when using remote inside a vehicle.**
- **Never leave the remote control plugged into the winch while free spooling, rigging or sitting idle.**

General Information

Practice using your winch before you get stuck. Some key points to remember when using your winch are:

- Always take your time to assess the situation and plan your pull carefully.
- Always take your time when using a winch.
- Use the right equipment for the situation.
- Always wear leather gloves and do not allow the wire rope to slip through your hands when handling the rope.
- Only the operator should handle the wire rope and remote control.
- Think safety at all times.

Vehicle Recovery Using The Winch

CAUTION!

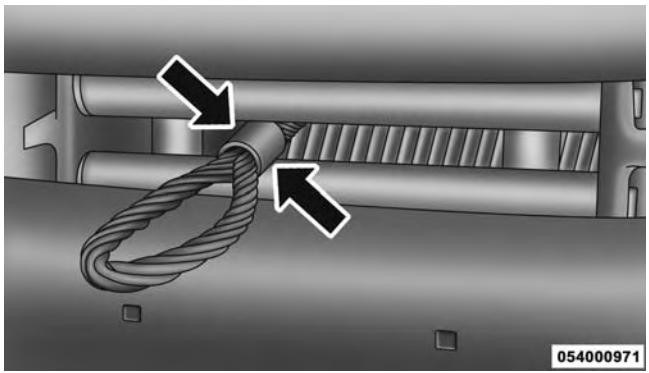
- **Always Know Your Winch: Take the time to fully read and understand the included Installation and Operations Guide, and Basic Guide to Winching Techniques, in order to understand your winch and the winching operation.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! ***(Continued)***

- **Always inspect winch installation and wire rope condition before operating the winch. Frayed, kinked or damaged wire rope must be replaced immediately. Loose or damaged winch installation must be corrected immediately.**
- **Always be sure any element which can interfere with safe winching operations is removed prior to initiating winching.**
- **Always keep remote control lead clear of the drum, wire rope and rigging.**
- **Inspect for cracks, pinches, frayed wires, or loose connections. Replace if damaged.**
- **Be careful not to pull the Winch Cable Collar through the rollers. Watch and listen to Winch for proper snugness.**

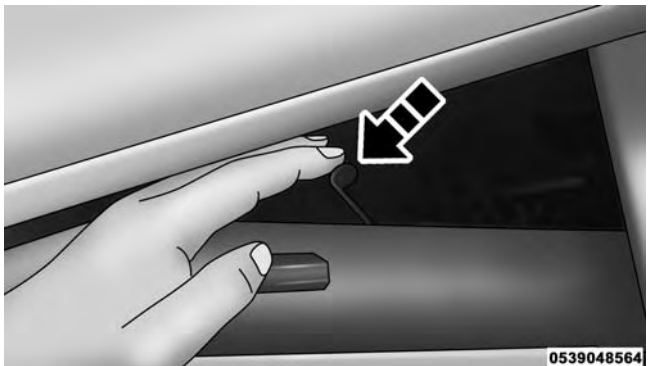
1. Inspect the winch, winch mount, and wire rope for damage. Do not use the winch if the mount is loose or rope shows excessive wear or damage.



Winch Rope

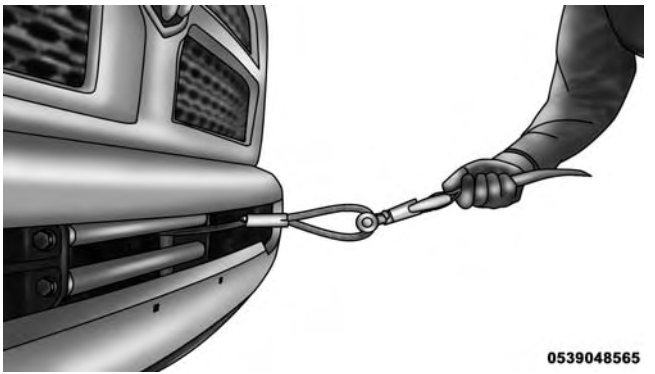
2. Put on gloves.

3. Disengage the clutch to allow free spooling of the winch drum, rotate the clutch lever on the winch to disengage. Freespooling conserves battery power.



Free Spool

4. Free the winch hook and attach the hook strap. Free the winch hook from its anchor point. Attach the hook strap to the hook (if not attached).



Hook Strap

5. Pull the wire to the anchor point. Pull out enough wire rope to reach your anchor point. Be sure to keep a certain amount of tension on the wire as it can become twisted and over-wrapped when slackened, leading to wire rope damage. To prevent losing the end, hold the hook strap while you work.

Pulling Wire Rope

6. Secure to the anchor point. Once you have established your anchor point, secure the tree-trunk protector or choker-chain around the object.

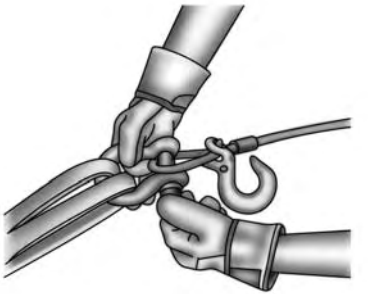
Tree Trunk Protector

CAUTION!

Always be certain the anchor you select will withstand the load.

NOTE: How to choose an anchor point: A secure anchor is critical to winching operations. An anchor must be strong enough to hold while winching. Natural anchors include trees, stumps and rocks. Hook the cable as low as possible. If no natural anchors are available when recovering another vehicle, your vehicle becomes the anchor point. In this case, be sure to put the transmission in NEUTRAL, apply the hand brake and block its wheels to prevent your vehicle from moving. Ideally, you'll want an anchor point that will enable you to pull straight in the direction the vehicle will move. This allows the wire rope to wind tightly and evenly onto the spooling drum. An anchor point as far away as possible will provide the winch with its greatest pulling power.

7. Attach the Clevis/D-shackle and Tree Trunk Protector. Attach the shackle to the two ends of the strap or chain and through the hook loop, being careful not to over tighten (tighten and back-off 1/2 turn).



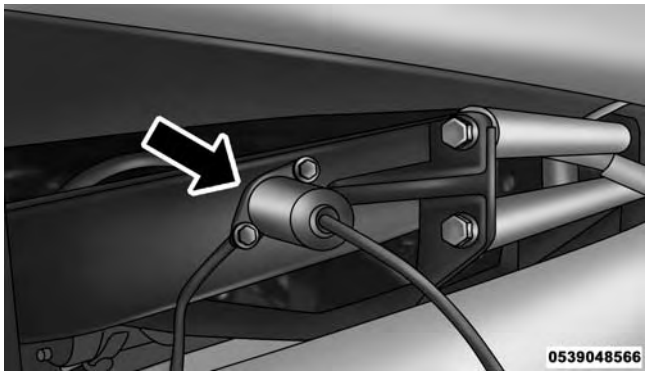
054000976

Clevis/D-Shackles

8. Lock the clutch. Lock the winch drum by rotating the clutch lever on the winch to engage.

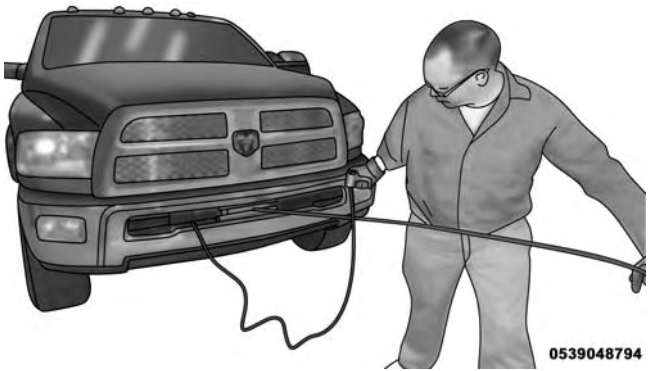
NOTE: Always ensure the clutch is fully engaged or disengaged.

9. Connect the remote control to the winch control box, located behind the front bumper. Be careful not to let the remote control cord dangle in front of the winch. If you choose to control the winch from inside your vehicle, always pass the remote through a window to avoid pinching the cord in the door. Always disconnect the remote control when not in use.



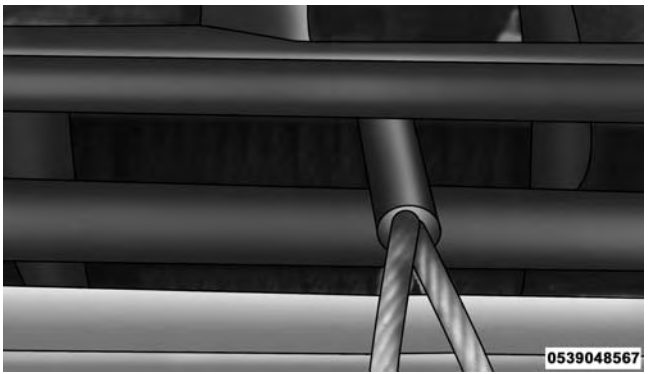
Winch Box Remote Control Connector

10. Put wire rope under tension. Using the remote control switch, slowly wind the wire rope until no slack remains. Once the wire rope is under tension, stand well clear of it and never step over it.



Pulling Wire Rope Under Tension

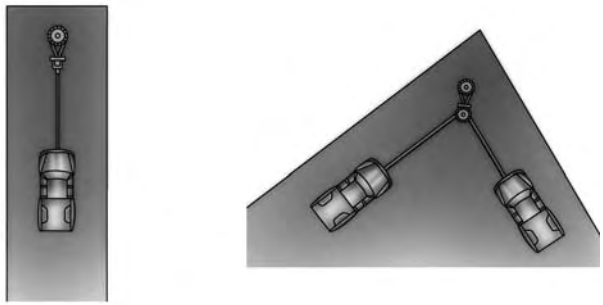
11. Check your anchor. Make sure all connections are secured and free of debris before continuing with the winching procedure.
12. Check wire rope. The wire rope should be neatly wound around the spooling drum. Improper winding can cause damage to the wire rope.



Wire Neatly Wound Around The Spooling Drum

In certain situations you may decide to throw a heavy blanket or similar object over the wire rope. A heavy blanket can absorb energy should the wire rope break. Place it on the wire rope midway between the winch and the anchor point. Do this before the wire rope is put under tension. Do not approach or move the blanket once tension is applied. Do not allow it to get pulled into the fairlead. If it is necessary to move or remove the blanket, slack the tension on the wire rope first.

13. **Establish ″no people″ zones:** Make your intentions clear. Be sure that everyone in the immediate vicinity surrounding the winching operation is completely aware of your intentions before you pull. **Declare where the spectators should not stand - never behind or in front of the vehicle and never near the wire rope or snatch block. Your situation may have other ″no people″ zones.**



No People Zones

14. Begin winching. With the winching vehicles engine on and light tension already on the wire rope, begin winching slowly and steadily. Be sure that the wire rope is winding evenly and tightly around the spooling drum. For additional assistance, the winched vehicle can be slowly driven while being pulled by

the winch. Continue pulling until the vehicle is on stable ground. If you are able to drive the vehicle, the winching operation is complete.

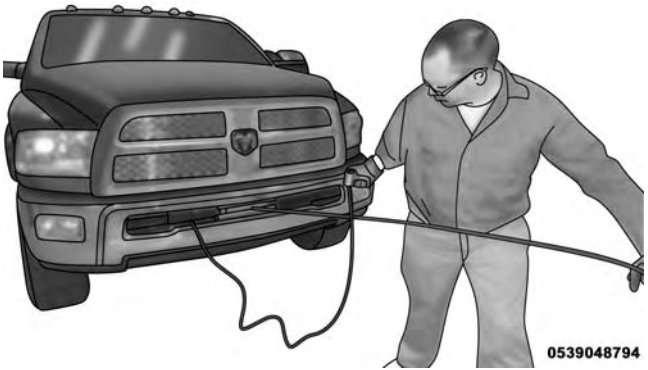
Using The Remote Control

NOTE:

- Avoid overheating the winch motor. For extended winching, stop at reasonable intervals to allow the winch motor to cool down.
- **What to look for under load:** The wire rope must always spool onto the drum as indicated by the drum rotation decal on the winch. As you power-in, make sure the wire rope winds evenly and tightly on the drum. This prevents the outer wire wraps from drawing into the inner wraps, binding and damaging the wire rope. Avoid shock loads by using the control switch intermittently to take up wire rope slack. Shock loads can momentarily far exceed the winch and wire rope ratings. During side pulls the wire rope tends to stack up at one end of the drum. This stack can become large enough to cause serious damage to the winch. So, line up pulls as straight ahead as possible and stop winching if the wire rope comes close to the tie rods or mounting plate. To fix

an uneven stack, spool out that section of the rope and reposition it to the opposite end of the drum, which will free up space for continued winching.

15. Secure vehicle. Once recovery of the vehicle is complete, be sure to secure the vehicle's brakes and shift the transmission to PARK. Release tension in the wire rope.
16. Disconnect the wire rope, and disconnect from the anchor.
17. Rewind the wire rope. The person handling the wire rope should walk the rope in and not let it slide through the hand, control the winch at all times.



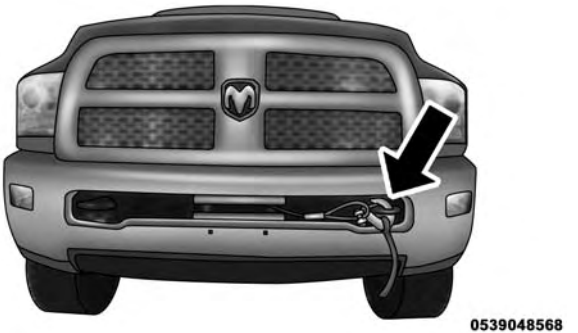
Rewinding The Wire Rope

WARNING!

To prevent serious injury, NEVER put your fingers inside the hook area as you are powering-in.

NOTE: How to spool under no load: Arrange the remote control lead so it cannot be caught in the winch. Arrange the wire rope so it will not kink or tangle when spooled. Be sure any wire rope already on the spooling drum is wound tightly and evenly layered. Tighten and straighten the layer if necessary. Keep the wire rope under light tension and spool the wire rope back and onto the winch drum in even layers. Stop frequently to tighten and straighten the layers as necessary. Repeat this process until the winch hook is the same distance as the full length of the remote control from the winch. Pinch the hook between your thumb and forefinger and attach the hook strap. Hold the hook strap between the thumb and forefinger to keep tension on the wire rope. Walk the wire rope towards the fairlead, carefully spooling in the remaining wire rope. By pulsing the remote control switch.

18. Store the hook on the most outboard loop of the tow hook.



Hook In Stored Position

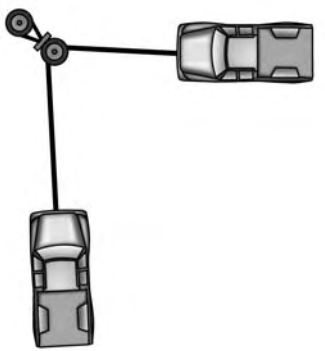
19. Disconnect the remote control. Disconnect the remote control cord from the control box and store in a clean and dry place. Winching operations are now complete. Put the cap on the solenoid plug-in.

NOTE: Always store the remote control in a protected, clean, dry area.

Rigging Techniques

Various winching situations will require application of other winching techniques. These could range from too little distance to achieve maximum pull using straight line rigging, simply increasing pulling power, or maintaining a straight-line pulling situation. You will have to assess what technique is correct for your situation. Think "safety" at all times.

How To Change The Pulling Direction



Change Pulling Directions

All winching operations should have a straight line from the winch to the object being pulled. This minimizes the wire rope collecting on one side of the drum affecting pulling efficiency and damaging wire rope. A snatch

block, secured to a point directly in front of the vehicle will enable you to change your pulling direction while still allowing the wire rope to be at 90° to wind properly onto the spooling drum.

Increasing Pulling Power

In some cases, you may find yourself needing more pulling power. The use of snatch blocks increases mechanical advantage and that increases your pulling power.

Double Line

Wire Rope Routing

Because pulling power decreases with the number of layers of wire rope on the winch drum, you can use a snatch block to double line out more wire rope. This decreases the number of layers of wire rope on the drum,

and increases pulling power. Start by feeding out enough wire rope to free the winch hook. Attach the hook to your vehicle's frame/tow hook and run the wire rope through a snatch block. Disengage the clutch and, using the snatch block, pull out enough wire to reach your anchor point. Do not attach the hook to the mounting kit. Secure to the anchor point with a tree trunk protector or choker chain. Attach the clevis/shackle. Attach the shackle to the two ends of the strap/chain, being careful not to over tighten (tighten and back-off 1/2 turn).

POWER STEERING

Electric Power Steering — 1500 Models

The electric power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will vary its assist to provide light efforts while parking and good feel while driving. If the electric steering system experiences a fault that prevents it from providing assist, you will still have the ability to steer the vehicle manually.

If the Steering icon is flashing, it indicates that the vehicle needs to be taken to the dealer for service. It is likely the vehicle has lost power steering assistance.

If the Steering icon is displayed and the "POWER STEERING SYSTEM OVER TEMP" message is displayed on the EVIC/DID screen, they indicate that extreme steering maneuvers may have occurred which caused an over temperature condition in the power steering system. Once driving conditions are safe, pull over and let the vehicle idle for a few moments until the icon and message turn off. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If the Steering icon is displayed and the "SERVICE POWER STEERING – ASSIST OFF" message is displayed the EVIC/DID screen, they indicate the vehicle needs to be taken to the dealer for service. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

NOTE:

- Even if the power steering assistance is no longer operational, it is still possible to steer the vehicle. Under these conditions there will be a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at low speeds and during parking maneuvers.
- If the condition persists, see your authorized dealer for service.

Hydraulic Power Steering — 2500/3500 Models

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions, you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

NOTE:

- Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and do not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.
- Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short amount of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering

system. This noise should be considered normal, and it does not in any way damage the steering system.

CAUTION!

Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and it should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.

Power Steering Fluid Check — 2500/3500 Models

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through an authorized dealer.

CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your power steering system as the chemicals can damage your power steering components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

WARNING!

Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to ensure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturer's recommended power steering fluid.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

FUEL SAVER TECHNOLOGY 5.7L/6.4L ENGINES ONLY — IF EQUIPPED

This feature offers improved fuel economy by shutting off four of the engine's eight cylinders during light load and cruise conditions. The system is automatic with no driver inputs or additional driving skills required.

NOTE: This system may take some time to return to full functionality after a battery disconnect.

PARKING BRAKE

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is fully applied. Also, be certain to leave the transmission in PARK.

The foot operated parking brake is located below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To apply the park brake, firmly push the park brake pedal fully. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.

Parking Brake Release

When the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch ON, the "Brake Warning Light" in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

NOTE:

- When the parking brake is applied and the transmission is placed in gear, the "Brake Warning Light" will flash. If vehicle speed is detected, a chime will sound to alert the driver. Fully release the parking brake before attempting to move the vehicle.
- This light only shows that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

When parking on a hill, it is important to turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade. Apply the parking brake before placing the gear selector in PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the gear selector out of PARK. The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Leaving unattended children in a vehicle is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured.**
- **Do not leave the Key Fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving; failure to do so can lead to brake failure and a collision.**
- **Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also, be certain to leave the transmission in PARK. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.**

CAUTION!

If the Brake System Warning Light remains on with the parking brake released, a brake system malfunction is indicated. Have the brake system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

BRAKE SYSTEM

If power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. However, you will experience a substantial increase in braking effort to stop the vehicle.

If either the front or rear hydraulic system loses normal braking capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of overall braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the "Brake Warning Light" and the "ABS Warning Light" (if equipped) during brake use.

Hydraulic Brake Assist — 2500/3500 Models Only (Except Power Wagon)

The brake system power assist is provided by a hydroboost unit which shares fluid with the power steering

system. You may experience some clicking or hissing noises from the hydro-boost system during hard braking conditions.

NOTE: Under cold temperatures, pedal effort will be higher than normal until the power steering fluid reaches operating temperature.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced Electronic Brake Control system (EBC). This system includes Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD), Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Brake Assist System (BAS), Hill Start Assist (HSA), Traction Control System (TCS), Electronic Stability Control (ESC), and Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM). These systems work together to enhance both vehicle stability and control in various driving conditions.

Your vehicle may also be equipped with Trailer Sway Control (TSC) and Hill Descent Control (HDC).

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)

This function manages the distribution of the braking torque between the front and rear axles by limiting braking pressure to the rear axle. This is done to prevent overslip of the rear wheels to avoid vehicle instability, and to prevent the rear axle from entering ABS before the front axle.

Brake System Warning Light

The red “Brake System Warning Light” will turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the “Brake System Warning Light” remains on or comes on while driving, it indicates that the brake system is not functioning properly and that immediate service is required. If the “Brake System Warning Light” does not

come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, have the light repaired as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) provides increased vehicle stability and brake performance under most braking conditions. The system automatically prevents wheel lock, and enhances vehicle control during braking.

The ABS performs a self-check cycle to ensure that the ABS is working properly each time the vehicle is started and driven. During this self-check, you may hear a slight clicking sound as well as some related motor noises.

ABS is activated during braking when the system detects one or more wheels begins to lock. Road conditions such as ice, snow, gravel, bumps, railroad tracks, loose debris, or panic stops may increase the likelihood of ABS activation(s).

You also may experience the following when ABS activates:

- The ABS motor noise (it may continue to run for a short time after the stop).
- The clicking sound of solenoid valves.
- Brake pedal pulsations.
- A slight drop of the brake pedal at the end of the stop.

These are all normal characteristics of ABS.

WARNING!

- **The ABS contains sophisticated electronic equipment that may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.

- **Pumping of the Anti-Lock Brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to a collision. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner that could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

ABS is designed to function with the OEM tires. Modification may result in degraded ABS performance.

Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light

The amber "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" will turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" remains on or comes on while driving, it indicates that the anti-lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. However, the conventional brake system will continue to operate normally if the "Brake System Warning Light" is not on.

If the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" is on, the brake system should be serviced as soon as possible to restore the benefits of anti-lock brakes. If the "Anti-Lock Brake Warning Light" does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, have the light repaired as soon as possible.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

The BAS is designed to optimize the vehicle's braking capability during emergency braking maneuvers. The system detects an emergency braking situation by sensing the rate and amount of brake application and then applies optimum pressure to the brakes. This can help reduce braking distances. The BAS complements the anti-lock brake system (ABS). Applying the brakes very quickly results in the best BAS assistance. To receive the benefit of the system, you must apply continuous braking pressure during the stopping sequence, (do not "pump" the brakes). Do not reduce brake pedal pressure unless braking is no longer desired. Once the brake pedal is released, the BAS is deactivated.

WARNING!

The Brake Assist System (BAS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. BAS cannot prevent collisions, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or hydroplaning. The capabilities of a BAS-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner, which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The HSA system is designed to mitigate roll back from a complete stop while on an incline. If the driver releases

the brake while stopped on an incline, HSA will continue to hold the brake pressure for a short period. If the driver does not apply the throttle before this time expires, the system will release brake pressure and the vehicle will roll down the hill as normal.

The following conditions must be met in order for HSA to activate:

- The feature must be enabled.
- The vehicle must be stopped.
- Park brake must be off.
- Driver door must be closed.
- The vehicle must be on a sufficient grade.
- The gear selection must match vehicle uphill direction (i.e., vehicle facing uphill is in forward gear; vehicle backing uphill is in REVERSE gear).
- HSA will work in REVERSE gear and all forward gears. The system will not activate if the transmission is in PARK or NEUTRAL. For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, if the clutch is pressed, HSA will remain active.

WARNING!

There may be situations where the Hill Start Assist (HSA) will not activate and slight rolling may occur, such as on minor hills or with a loaded vehicle, or while pulling a trailer. HSA is not a substitute for active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive to distance to other vehicles, people, and objects, and most importantly brake operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision or serious personal injury.

Towing With HSA

HSA will also provide assistance to mitigate roll back while towing a trailer.

WARNING!

- **If you use a trailer brake controller with your trailer, the trailer brakes may be activated and deactivated with the brake switch. If so, there may not be enough brake pressure to hold both the**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

vehicle and the trailer on a hill when the brake pedal is released. In order to avoid rolling down an incline while resuming acceleration, manually activate the trailer brake or apply more vehicle brake pressure prior to releasing the brake pedal.
- **HSA is not a parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when leaving your vehicle. Also, be certain to leave the transmission in PARK.**
- **Failure to follow these warnings may cause the vehicle to roll down the incline and could collide with another vehicle, object or person, and cause serious or fatal injury. Always remember to use the parking brake while parking on a hill and that the driver is responsible for braking the vehicle.**

Disabling And Enabling HSA

This feature can be turned on or turned off. To change the current setting, proceed as follows:

- For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID), refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.
- If disabling HSA using Uconnect Settings, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

For vehicles not equipped with the EVIC/DID, perform the following steps:

1. Center the steering wheel (front wheels pointing straight forward).
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Start the engine.
5. Rotate the steering wheel slightly more than one-half turn to the left.
6. Push the "ESC Off" button located in the lower switch bank below the climate control four times within twenty seconds. The "ESC Off Indicator Light" should turn on and turn off two times.
7. Rotate the steering wheel back to center and then an additional slighty more than one-half turn to the right.
8. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position and then back to the ON position. If the sequence was completed properly, the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will blink several times to confirm HSA is disabled.

9. Repeat these steps if you want to return this feature to its previous setting.

Traction Control System (TCS)

This system monitors the amount of wheel spin of each of the driven wheels. If wheel spin is detected, the TCS may apply brake pressure to the spinning wheel(s) and/or reduce engine power to provide enhanced acceleration and stability. A feature of the TCS, Brake Limited Differential (BLD), functions similar to a limited slip differential and controls the wheel spin across a driven axle. If one wheel on a driven axle is spinning faster than the other, the system will apply the brake of the spinning wheel. This will allow more engine torque to be applied to the wheel that is not spinning. BLD may remain enabled even if TCS and ESC are in a reduced mode.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

This system enhances directional control and stability of the vehicle under various driving conditions. ESC corrects for oversteering or understeering of the vehicle by applying the brake of the appropriate wheel(s) to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition. Engine power may also be reduced to help the vehicle maintain the desired path.

ESC uses sensors in the vehicle to determine the vehicle path intended by the driver and compares it to the actual path of the vehicle. When the actual path does not match the intended path, ESC applies the brake of the appropriate wheel to assist in counteracting the oversteer or understeer condition.

- Oversteer - when the vehicle is turning more than appropriate for the steering wheel position.
- Understeer - when the vehicle is turning less than appropriate for the steering wheel position.

The "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" located in the instrument cluster will start to flash as soon as the ESC system becomes active. The "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" also flashes when the TCS is active. If the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

WARNING!

- **Electronic Stability Control (ESC) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase the traction afforded by prevailing road conditions. ESC cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, driving on very slippery surfaces, or**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

hydroplaning. ESC also cannot prevent accidents resulting from loss of vehicle control due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents. The capabilities of an ESC equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

- **Vehicle modifications, or failure to properly maintain your vehicle, may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle, and may negatively affect the performance of the ESC system. Changes to the steering system, suspension, braking system, tire type and size or wheel size may adversely affect**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

ESC performance. Improperly inflated and unevenly worn tires may also degrade ESC performance. Any vehicle modification or poor vehicle maintenance that reduces the effectiveness of the ESC system can increase the risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

ESC Operating Modes

NOTE: Depending upon model and mode of operation, the ESC system may have multiple operating modes.

ESC On

This is the normal operating mode for the ESC. Whenever the vehicle is started, the ESC system will be in this mode. This mode should be used for most driving conditions. Alternate ESC modes should only be used for specific reasons as noted in the following paragraphs.

Partial Off

The "Partial Off" mode is intended for times when a more spirited driving experience is desired. This mode may modify TCS and ESC thresholds for activation, which allows for more wheel spin than normally allowed. This mode may be useful if the vehicle becomes stuck.

To enter the "Partial Off" mode, momentarily push the "ESC Off" switch and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will illuminate. To turn the ESC on again, momentarily push the "ESC Off" switch and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will turn off.

NOTE: For vehicles with multiple partial ESC modes a momentary button push will toggle the ESC mode. Multiple momentary button pushed may be required to return to ESC On.

NOTE:

- When in "Partial Off" mode, the TCS functionality of ESC, (except for the limited slip feature described in the TCS section), has been disabled and the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will be illuminated. When in "Partial Off" mode, the engine power reduction feature of TCS is disabled, and the enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is reduced.
- Trailer Sway control (TSC) is disabled when the ESC system is in the "Partial Off" mode.

Full Off – If Equipped

This mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only and should not be used on any public roadways. In this mode, TCS and ESC features are turned OFF. To enter the "Full Off" mode, push and hold the "ESC Off" switch for five seconds while the vehicle is stopped with the engine running. After five seconds, a chime will sound, the "ESC Off Indicator Light" will illuminate, and the "ESC OFF" message will display in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC). To turn ESC ON again, momentarily push the "ESC Off" switch.

NOTE: System may switch from ESC Full Off to Partial mode when vehicle exceeds a predetermined speed. When the vehicle speed slows below the predetermined speed the system will return to ESC Full Off.

ESC modes may also be affected by drive modes – if equipped.

WARNING!

- **In the ESC "Full Off" mode, the engine torque reduction and stability features are disabled. Therefore, enhanced vehicle stability offered by the ESC system is unavailable. In an emergency**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

evasive maneuver, the ESC system will not engage to assist in maintaining stability. "ESC Off" mode is intended for off-highway or off-road use only.

ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light and ESC OFF Indicator Light

The "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. It should go out with the engine running. If the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see your authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

The "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" (located in the instrument cluster) starts to flash as soon as the tires lose traction and the ESC system becomes active. The "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" also flashes when TCS is active. If the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" begins to flash during acceleration, ease up on the accelerator and apply as little throttle as possible. Be sure to adapt your speed and driving to the prevailing road conditions.

NOTE:

- The "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" and the "ESC OFF Indicator Light" come on momentarily each time the ignition switch is turned ON.

- Each time the ignition is turned ON, the ESC system will be ON even if it was turned off previously.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive following the maneuver that caused the ESC activation.

The "ESC OFF Indicator Light" indicates the customer has elected to have the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) in a reduced mode.

Electronic Roll Mitigation (ERM)

This system anticipates the potential for wheel lift by monitoring the driver's steering wheel input and the speed of the vehicle. When ERM determines that the rate of change of the steering wheel angle and vehicle's speed are sufficient to potentially cause wheel lift, it then applies the appropriate brake and may also reduce engine power to lessen the chance that wheel lift will occur. ERM can only reduce the chance of wheel lift occurring during severe or evasive driving maneuvers; it cannot prevent wheel lift due to other factors, such as road conditions, leaving the roadway, or striking objects or other vehicles.

NOTE: ERM is disabled anytime the ESC is in "Full Off" mode (if equipped). Refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in this section for a complete explanation of the available ESC modes.

5

WARNING!

Many factors, such as vehicle loading, road conditions and driving conditions, influence the chance that wheel lift or rollover may occur. ERM cannot prevent all wheel lift or roll overs, especially those that involve leaving the roadway or striking objects

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

or other vehicles. The capabilities of an ERM-equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

TSC uses sensors in the vehicle to recognize an excessively swaying trailer and will take the appropriate actions to attempt to stop the sway. TSC will become active automatically once an excessively swaying trailer is recognized. Note that TSC cannot stop all trailers from swaying. Always use caution when towing a trailer and follow the trailer tongue weight recommendations. Refer to "Trailer Towing" in this section for further information.

When TSC is functioning, the "ESC Activation/Malfunction Indicator Light" will flash, the engine power may be reduced and you may feel the brakes being applied to individual wheels to attempt to stop the trailer from swaying. TSC is disabled when the ESC system is in the "Partial Off" or "Full Off" modes.

WARNING!

If TSC activates while driving, slow the vehicle down, stop at the nearest safe location, and adjust the trailer load to eliminate trailer sway.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) — If Equipped

HDC is intended for low speed off road driving while in 4WD Low Range. HDC maintains vehicle speed while descending hills during various driving situations. HDC controls vehicle speed by actively controlling the brakes.

HDC has three states:

1. Off (feature is not enabled and will not activate).
2. Enabled (feature is enabled and ready but activation conditions are not met, or driver is actively overriding with brake or throttle application).
3. Active (feature is enabled and actively controlling vehicle speed).

Enabling HDC

HDC is enabled by pushing the HDC switch, but the following conditions must also be met to enable HDC:

- Driveline is in 4WD Low Range
- Vehicle speed is below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Parking brake is released.
- Driver door is closed.

Activating HDC

Once HDC is enabled, it will activate automatically if driven down a grade of sufficient magnitude. The set speed for HDC is selectable by the driver, and can be adjusted by using the gear shift +/-. The following summarizes the HDC set speeds:

HDC Target Set Speeds

- P = No set speed. HDC may be enabled but will not activate
- R = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- N = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- D = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- 1st = 0.6 mph (1 km/h)
- 2nd = 1.2 mph (2 km/h)
- 3rd = 1.8 mph (3 km/h)

- 4th = 2.5 mph (4 km/h)
- 5th = 3.1 mph (5 km/h)
- 6th = 3.7 mph (6 km/h)
- 7th = 4.3 mph (7 km/h)
- 8th = 5.0 mph (8 km/h)
- 9th = 5.6 mph (9 km/h) – If Equipped

NOTE: During HDC, the +/- shifter input is used for HDC target speed selection but will not affect the gear chosen by the transmission. When actively controlling HDC, the transmission will shift appropriately for the driver-selected set speed and corresponding driving conditions.

Driver Override

The driver may override HDC activation with throttle or brake application at anytime.

Deactivating HDC

HDC will be deactivated but remain available if any of the following conditions occur:

- Driver overrides HDC set speed with throttle or brake application.
- Vehicle speed exceeds 20 mph (32 km/h) but remains below 40 mph (64 km/h).
- Vehicle is on a downhill grade of insufficient magnitude, is on level ground, or is on an uphill grade.
- Vehicle is shifted to park.

Disabling HDC

HDC will be deactivated and disabled if any of the following conditions occur:

- The driver pushes the HDC switch.
- The driveline is shifted out of 4WD Low Range.

- The parking brake is applied.
- Driver door opens.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 20 mph (32 km/h) for greater than 70 seconds.
- The vehicle is driven greater than 40 mph (64 km/h) (HDC exits immediately).
- HDC detects excessive brake temperature.

Feedback To The Driver

The instrument cluster has an HDC icon and the HDC switch has an LED which offer feedback to the driver about the state HDC is in.

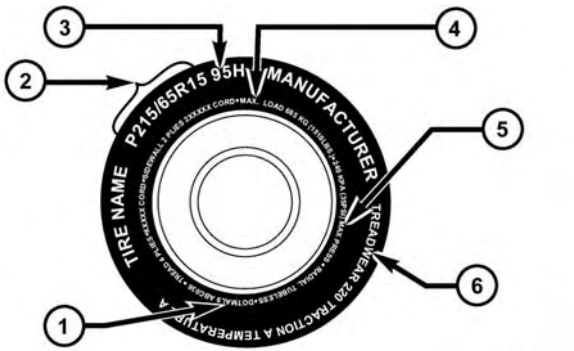
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will illuminate and remain on solid when HDC is enabled or activated. This is the normal operating condition for HDC.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when the driver pushes the HDC switch but enable conditions are not met.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash for several seconds then extinguish when HDC disables due to excess speed.
- The cluster icon and switch lamp will flash when HDC deactivates due to overheated brakes. The flashing will stop and HDC will activate again once the brakes have cooled sufficiently.

WARNING!

HDC is only intended to assist the driver in controlling vehicle speed when descending hills. The driver must remain attentive to the driving conditions and is responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle speed.

TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION

Tire Markings



1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN)
2 — Size Designation
3 — Service Description
4 — Maximum Load
5 — Maximum Pressure
6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

NOTE:

- P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter "P" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter "P" is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.
- LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters "LT" that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.

- Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter "T" or "S" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

Tire Sizing Chart

EXAMPLE:

Example Size Designation: P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT
P = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or **"....blank...."** = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or **LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or **T or S** = Temporary spare tire or **31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)
215, 235, 145 = Section width in millimeters (mm)
65, 85, 80 = Aspect ratio in percent (%) – Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or **10.5** = Section width in inches (in)

EXAMPLE:
R = Construction code – "R" means radial construction, or – "D" means diagonal or bias construction
15, 16, 18 = Rim diameter in inches (in)
Service Description:
95 = Load Index – A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry
H = Speed Symbol – A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions – The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)

EXAMPLE:

Load Identification:
Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire:

- **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or
- **LL** = Light load tire or
- **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure

Maximum Load – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry

Maximum Pressure – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire, however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

EXAMPLE:
DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
DOT = Department of Transportation – This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use
MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)
L9 = Code representing the tire size (two digits)
ABCD = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)
03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) – 03 means the 3rd week
01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits) – 01 means the year 2001 – Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

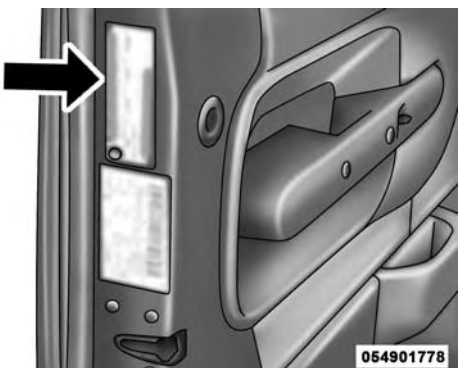
Tire Terminology And Definitions

Term	Definition
B-Pillar	The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals).
Maximum Inflation Pressure	The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.
Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure	Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.
Tire Placard	A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.

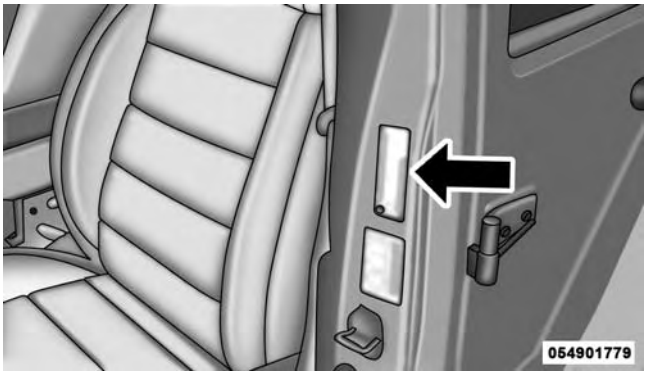
Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

Tire And Loading Information Placard Location

NOTE: The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.

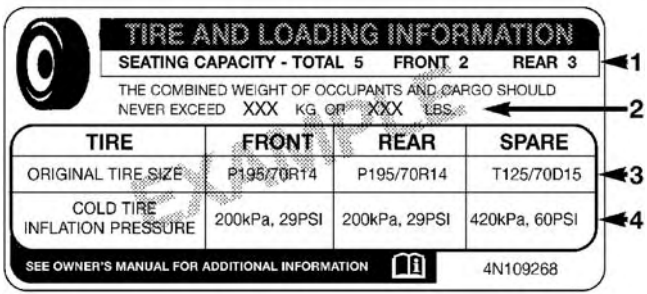


Example Tire Placard Location (Door)



Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

Tire And Loading Information Placard



811b5a9a

Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.
3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard in "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

NOTE: Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWRs, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit—

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5x150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

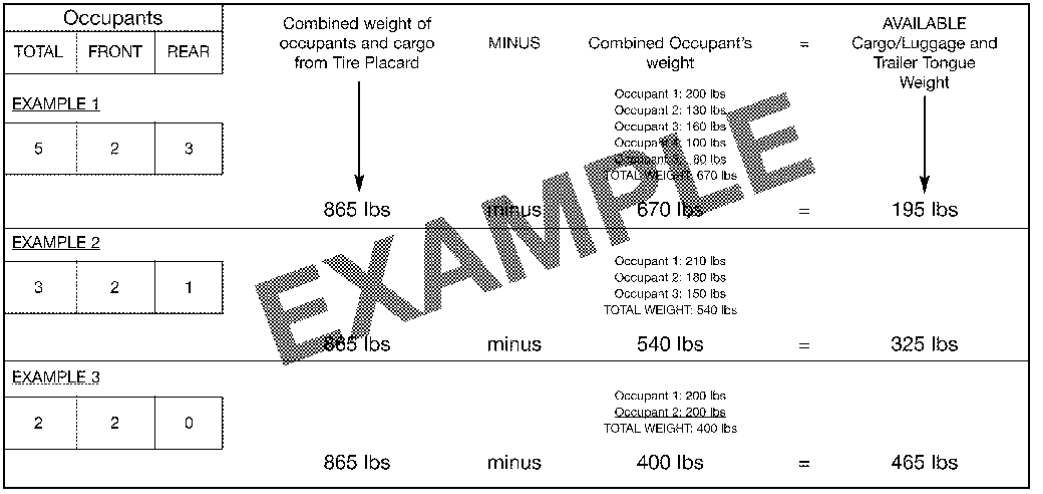
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Metric Example For Load Limit

For example, if "XXX" amount equals 635 kg and there will be five 68 kg passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (635-340 (5x68) = 295 kg) as shown in step 4.

NOTE:

- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.
- For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).


Occupants
TOTAL
FRONT
REAR
Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard
MINUS
Combined Occupant's weight
=
AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
EXAMPLE 1
5
2
3
Occupant 1: 200 lbs
Occupant 2: 130 lbs
Occupant 3: 160 lbs
Occupant 4: 100 lbs
Occupant 5: 80 lbs
TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs
865 lbs
minus
670 lbs
=
195 lbs
EXAMPLE 2
3
2
1
Occupant 1: 210 lbs
Occupant 2: 180 lbs
Occupant 3: 150 lbs
TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs
865 lbs
minus
540 lbs
=
325 lbs
EXAMPLE 3
2
2
0
Occupant 1: 200 lbs
Occupant 2: 200 lbs
TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs
865 lbs
minus
400 lbs
=
465 lbs
EXAMPLE

WARNING!

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION

Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

- Safety and Vehicle Stability
- Economy
- Tread Wear
- Ride Comfort

Safety

WARNING!

- **Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.**
- **Underinflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.**
- **Overinflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.**
- **Overinflated or underinflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.**
- **Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.**
- **Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.**

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

NOTE:

- Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.
- Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

Fuel Economy

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

Tread Wear

Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause abnormal wear patterns and reduced tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

- Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.
- Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.

CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure". Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire

inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to your authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Radial Ply Tires

WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.

Tire Repair

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

- The tire has not been driven on when flat.
- The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).
- The puncture is no greater than a ¼ of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol).

Tire Types

All Season Tires — If Equipped

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

WARNING!

Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.

Snow Tires

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a "mountain/snowflake" symbol on the tire sidewall.

If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h), refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

Run Flat Tires — If Equipped

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable.

It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

Spare Tires — If Equipped

NOTE: For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to the "Tire Service Kit" section located in your Owner's Information kit for further information.

CAUTION!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited-use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.

Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle. This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter "T" or "S" preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare tire. Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

WARNING!

Compact spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

Full Size Spare — If Equipped

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

Limited Use Spare — If Equipped

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

WARNING!

Limited use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limit use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

Refer to "Freeing A Stuck Vehicle" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.

Tire Tread

1 — Worn Tire
2 — New Tire

These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced. Refer to "Replacement Tires" in this section for further information.

Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style.
- Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.
- Distance driven.
- Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced

tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle maintenance schedule is highly recommended.

WARNING!

Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on "Tread Wear Indicator". Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall. See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the "Tire Safety Information" section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.

It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

It is recommended you contact your authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions

you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Do not use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.**
- **Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

CAUTION!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED

A light load vehicle condition is defined as two passengers [150 lbs (68 kg) each] plus 200 lbs (90 kg) of cargo. Cold tire inflation pressures for a lightly loaded vehicle will be found on the face of the driver's door.

TIRE CHAINS (TRACTION DEVICES)

Use of traction devices require sufficient tire-to-body clearance. Follow these recommendations to guard against damage.

- Traction device must be of proper size for the tire, as recommended by the traction device manufacturer.

Please follow the table below for proper tire size, chain type, and axle recommendations:

Vehicle	Axle Recommendations	Tire Sizes	Chain Class
1500 Models	Rear Only	P265/70R17	S Class
2500 Models	Rear Only	LT245/70R17E LT265/70R18E LT275/70R18E	U Class

Vehicle	Axle Recommendations	Tire Sizes	Chain Class
2500 Power Wagon Models	Rear Only	LT285/70R17D	U Class
3500 (Single Rear Wheel) Models	Rear Only	LT265/70R18E LT275/70R18E	U Class
3500 (Dual Rear Wheel) Models	Front/Rear	LT235/80R17E	U Class

WARNING!

Using tires of different size and type (M+S, Snow) between front and rear axles can cause unpredictable handling. You could lose control and have a collision.

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to your vehicle or tires, observe the following precautions:

- **Because of restricted traction device clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only traction devices in good condition are used. Broken devices can cause serious damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

occurs that could indicate device breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the device before further use.
- **Install device as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about ½ mile (0.8 km).**
- **Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).**
- **Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.**
- **Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.**
- **Observe the traction device manufacturer's instructions on the method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for use. Always use the suggested operating speed of the device manufacturer's if it is less than 30 mph (48 km/h).**
- **Do not use traction devices on a compact spare tire.**

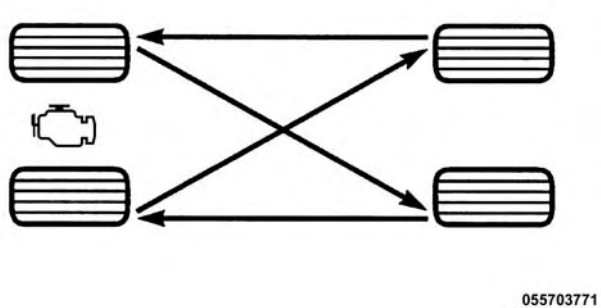
TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates.

These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on all season type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow and wet traction levels and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

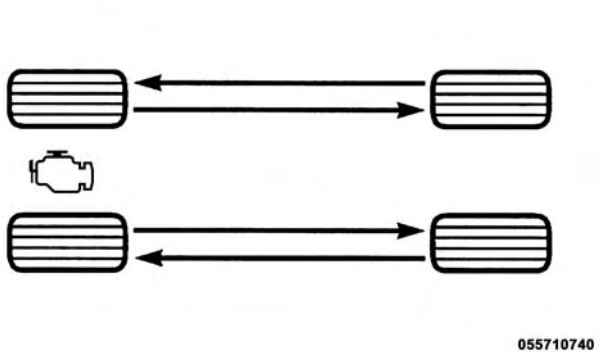
The suggested rotation method is the "rearward cross" shown in the following diagram. This rotation pattern does not apply to some directional tires that must not be reversed.



Tire Rotation

Directional Tires — If Equipped

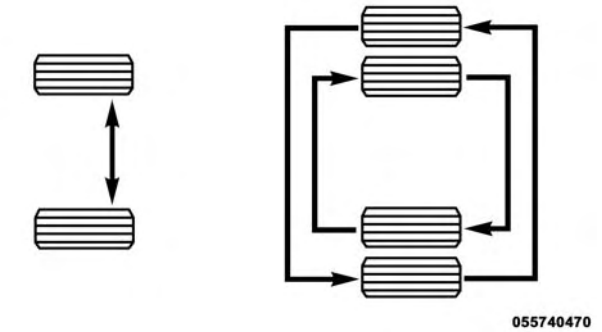
For the R/T package with 22" tires and wheels, the rotational direction of the tire must be taken into consideration when rotating the tires. The recommended rotation pattern for directional tires is shown below.



Tire Rotation

Dual Rear Wheels — If Equipped

The tires used on dual wheel assemblies should be matched for wear to prevent overloading one tire in a set. To check if tires are even, lay a straight edge across all four tires. The straight edge should touch all the tires.



Tire Rotation

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS):

- The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses unique sensors in the inner rear wheels to help identify them from the outer rear wheels, because of this, the inner and outer wheel locations can't be switched.
- After a tire rotation is completed, as shown below, the system can auto learn the locations of each sensor ID. Auto learning/localization occurs when the vehicle ignition status is changed from Off to On and speeds of greater than 5 mph (8km/h) are obtained and remain over 5 mph (8km/h) for at about a 15 minute period. You may need to drive for 20 minutes to account slower speeds and stops.
- If the tires are rotated incorrectly, The Auto localization of the TPIS sensors will fail to locate correctly resulting

in incorrect locations for the pressure values displayed in the Instrument Cluster.

CAUTION!

- **3500 Dual Rear Tires may only have one approved direction of rotation. This is to accommodate the asymmetrical design (tread pattern) of the On/Off-Road tire and the use of Outline White Letter (OWL) tires.**
- **When replacing a flat, the spare tire may have to be remounted on the rim, or installed at a different location, to maintain the correct placement of the tire on the wheel relative to the tire/wheel position on the truck. For example, if the spare is used to replace an outer rear tire it will have to be re-mounted on the rim so that the wheel is dished inward. That way the tread design of asymmetrical**

(Continued)

CAUTION! ***(Continued)***

tires and the white writing of the OWL tires will maintain proper position.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR SYSTEM (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by about 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to "Tires – General Information"

in “Starting And Operating” for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle’s tires. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven - this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low-pressure warning limit for any reason, including low temperature effects and natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above the recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low tire pressure warning (Tire Pressure Monitoring [TPM] Telltale Light) illuminates, you must increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” to turn off. The system will automatically update and the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 27 psi (186 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 23 psi (158 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn ON the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light.” Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 27 psi (186 kPa), but the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will still be ON. In this situation, the “Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light” will turn OFF only

after the tires are inflated to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure value.

CAUTION!

- **The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage.**
- **Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.

- **After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.**

NOTE:

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- The TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light."
- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.

Premium System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

NOTE: It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPMS consists of the following components:

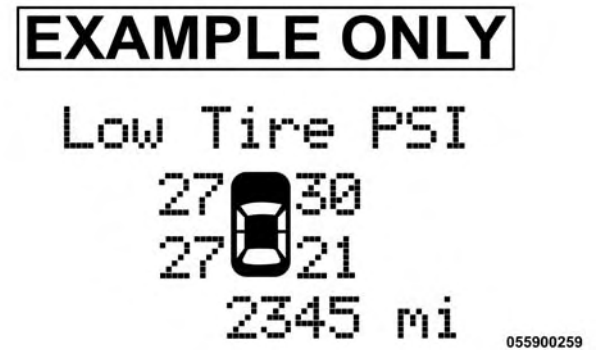
- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors
- Various TPMS messages, which display in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)
- TPM Telltale Light

The matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly (if equipped) has a TPM sensor. The full size spare can be used in place of any of the four road tires. A spare with a

pressure below the low-pressure limit will not cause the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" to illuminate or the chime to sound while it is stored in the spare tire location.

Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings

The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a "LOW TIRE" message and a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color. An "Inflate to XX" message will also be displayed.



"LOW TIRE PRESSURE" Message

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with a low pressure condition (those in a different color in the EVIC/DID graphic) to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure inflation value as shown in the "Inflate to XX" message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system

will automatically update, the graphic display in the EVIC/DID will return to it's original color, and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn off. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

Service TPMS Warning

If a system fault is detected, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

Tire Pressure Monitor Display

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will no longer flash, and the "SERVICE TPM

SYSTEM″ message will no longer display, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

Vehicles With Matching Full Size Spare

- The matching full size spare wheel and tire assembly has a TPM sensor that can be monitored by the TPMS.
- If you install the full size spare in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn ON. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a "LOW TIRE" message and a graphic showing the low tire pressure value in a different color. An ″Inflate to XX″ message will also be displayed.
- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (25 km/h) the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn OFF and the pressure value will be updated and return to it's original color, as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires.

Vehicles With Non Matching Full Size Spare Or Compact Spare

- The non matching full size spare or compact spare tire does not have a TPM sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the pressure in the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire.
- If you install the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, the TPM Telltale Light and a "LOW TIRE" message will remain ON and a chime will sound. In addition, the graphic in the EVIC/DID will still display a flashing pressure value or a pressure value in a different color.
- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h), the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. In addition, the EVIC/DID will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- For each subsequent ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound, the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid, and the EVIC/DID will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- Once you repair or replace the original road tire and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the non matching full size spare or compact spare, the TPMS will update automatically. In addition, the TPM Telltale Light will turn OFF and the graphic in the EVIC/DID will display a new pressure value instead of dashes (- -), as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The

vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) 3500 Series Trucks

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS).

The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to transmit tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

NOTE: It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPIS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors (Single Rear Wheel (SRW) applications)
- Six TPM sensors (Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) applications)
- Pressure display in the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID)

The TPIS system will display all four (Single Rear Wheel (SRW) applications) or six (Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) applications) tire pressure values in the EVIC/DID display.

If a system fault is detected, the EVIC/DID will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.

General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

3.6L Engine

This engine is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide optimum fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded "Regular" gasoline having a posted octane number of 87 as specified by the (R+M)/2 method. The use of higher octane "Premium" gasoline is not required, as it will not provide any benefit over "Regular" gasoline in these engines.

While operating on gasoline with an octane number of 87, hearing a light knocking sound from the engine is not a cause for concern. However, if the engine is heard making a heavy knocking sound, see your dealer immediately. Use of gasoline with an octane number lower than 87 can cause engine failure and may void or not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

5.7L Engine

This engines is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded gasoline having a posted octane number range of 87 to 89 as specified by the (R+M)/2 method. The use of 89 octane "Plus" gasoline is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

While operating on gasoline with an octane number of 87, hearing a light knocking sound from the engine is not a cause for concern. However, if the engine is heard making a heavy knocking sound, see your dealer immediately. Use of gasoline with an octane number lower than 87 can cause engine failure and may void or not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

6.4L Engine

This engines is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded gasoline having a posted octane number range of 87 to 89 as specified by the (R+M)/2 method. The use of 89 octane "Plus" gasoline is recommended for optimum performance and fuel economy.

While operating on gasoline with an octane number of 87, hearing a light knocking sound from the engine is not a cause for concern. However, if the engine is heard making a heavy knocking sound, see your dealer immediately. Use of gasoline with an octane number lower than 87 can cause engine failure and may void or not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling, and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

Reformulated Gasoline

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as "Reformulated Gasoline". Reformulated gasoline contains oxygenates and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

The use of reformulated gasoline is recommended. Properly blended reformulated gasoline will provide improved performance and durability of engine and fuel system components.

Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as ethanol.

CAUTION!

DO NOT use gasoline containing methanol or gasoline containing more than 15% ethanol (E-15). Use of these blends may result in starting and drivability problems, damage critical fuel system components, cause emissions to exceed the applicable standard, and/or cause the "Malfunction Indicator Light" to illuminate. Please observe pump labels as they should clearly communicate if a fuel contains greater than 15% ethanol (E-15).

Problems that result from using gasoline containing more than 15% ethanol (E-15) or gasoline containing methanol are not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Modifications that allow the engine to run on compressed natural gas (CNG) or liquid propane (LP) may result in damage to the engine, emissions, and fuel system components. Problems that result from running CNG or LP are not the responsibility of the manufacturer and many void or not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

E-85 Usage In Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles

Non-Flex Fuel Vehicles (FFV) are compatible with gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol (E-15). Gasoline with higher ethanol content may void the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

If a Non-FFV vehicle is inadvertently fueled with E-85 fuel, the engine will have some or all of these symptoms:

- Operate in a lean mode.
- OBD II “Malfunction Indicator Light” on.
- Poor engine performance.
- Poor cold start and cold drivability.
- Increased risk for fuel system component corrosion.

MMT In Gasoline

Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl (MMT) is a manganese-containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase octane. Gasoline blended with MMT provides no performance advantage beyond gasoline of the same octane number without MMT. Gasoline blended with MMT reduces spark plug life and reduces emissions system performance in some vehicles. The manufacturer recommends that gasoline

without MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump, therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer whether the gasoline contains MMT. MMT is prohibited in Federal and California reformulated gasoline.

Materials Added To Fuel

Besides using unleaded gasoline with the proper octane rating, gasolines that contain detergents, corrosion and stability additives are recommended. Using gasolines that have these additives will help improve fuel economy, reduce emissions, and maintain vehicle performance.

Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aide in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of Top Tier Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.

Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.

Fuel System Cautions

CAUTION!

Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:

- **The use of leaded gasoline is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance and damage the emissions control system.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **An out-of-tune engine or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact your authorized dealer for service assistance.**
- **The use of fuel additives, which are now being sold as octane enhancers, is not recommended. Most of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer and may void or not be covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

NOTE: Intentional tampering with the emissions control system can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

Carbon Monoxide Warnings

WARNING!

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- **Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas, which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.

- **Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.**

FLEXIBLE FUEL (3.6L ENGINE ONLY) — IF EQUIPPED

E-85 General Information

The information in this section is unique for Flexible Fuel vehicles only. These vehicles can be identified by a unique fuel filler door label that states **Ethanol (E-85) or Unleaded Gasoline Only** and a yellow fuel cap. Please refer to the other sections of this manual for information on features that are common between Flexible Fuel and non-Flexible Fuel powered vehicles.

CAUTION!

Only vehicles with the E-85 fuel filler door label or a yellow gas cap can operate on E-85.

Ethanol Fuel (E-85)

E-85 is a mixture of approximately 85% ethanol and 15% unleaded gasoline.

WARNING!

Ethanol vapors are extremely flammable and could cause serious personal injury. Never have any smoking materials lit or products that can cause spark in or near the vehicle when removing the fuel filler tube cap (gas cap) or filling the tank. Do not use E-85 as a cleaning agent and never use it near an open flame.

Fuel Requirements

If your vehicle is E-85 compatible, it will operate on unleaded gasoline with any octane rating, or solely E-85 fuel, or any mixture of these fuels.

For best results, avoid fueling patterns alternating between E-85 and unleaded gasoline.

When switching fuel types:

- Add 5 gallons (19 liters) or more when refueling.
- Drive the vehicle immediately after refueling for at least 5 miles (8 km).

Observing these precautions will avoid possible hard starting and/or driveability problems during warm up.

NOTE:

- Use seasonally adjusted E-85 fuel (ASTM D5798). With non-seasonally adjusted E-85 fuel, hard starting and rough idle following start up may be experienced even if the above recommendations are followed, especially when the ambient temperature is below 32°F (0°C).
- Some additives used in regular gasoline are not fully compatible with E-85 and may form deposits in your engine. To eliminate driveability issues that may be caused by these deposits, a supplemental gasoline additive, such as MOPAR Injector Cleanup or Techron may be used.

Selection Of Engine Oil For Flexible Fuel Vehicles (E-85) And Gasoline Vehicles

FFV vehicles operated on E-85 require specially formulated engine oils. These special requirements are included in MOPAR engine oils, and in equivalent oils meeting FCA Material Standard MS-6395. It is recommended that engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of Material Standard MS-6395 be used. MS-6395 contains additional requirements, developed during extensive fleet testing, to provide additional protection to FCA US LLC engines.

Starting

The characteristics of E-85 fuel make it unsuitable for use when ambient temperatures fall below 0°F (-18°C). In the range of 0°F (-18°C) to 32°F (0°C), an increase in the time it takes for your engine to start may be experienced, and a deterioration in driveability (sags and/or hesitations) until the engine is fully warmed up. These issues may be improved with the use of seasonally adjusted E-85 fuel.

NOTE: Use of the engine block heater (if equipped) may improve engine start time when using E-85 fuel when the ambient temperature is less than 32°F (0°C).

Cruising Range

Because E-85 fuel contains less energy per gallon/liter than gasoline, an increase in fuel consumption will be experienced. The miles per gallon (mpg)/kilometers per liter and the driving range will decrease by approximately 30%, compared to gasoline operation.

Replacement Parts

All fuel and engine components in your Flexible Fuel Vehicle (FFV) are designed to be compatible with ethanol. Ethanol compatible service components are required.

CAUTION!

Replacing fuel system components with non-ethanol compatible components can damage your vehicle.

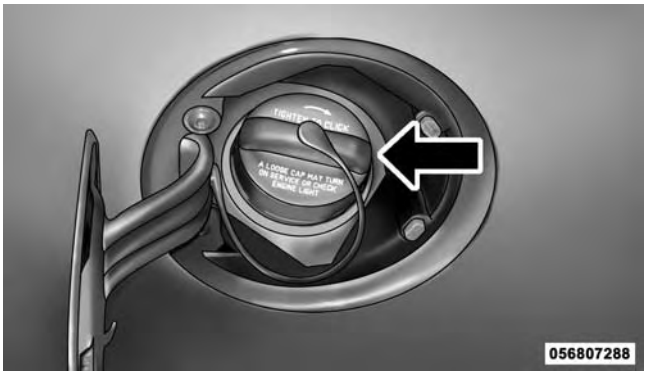
Maintenance

CAUTION!

Do not use ethanol mixtures greater than 85% in your vehicle. It will make it more difficult for your engine to start under cold conditions, may affect drivability, and could cause engine damage.

ADDING FUEL

The fuel filler cap (gas cap) is located behind the fuel filler door, on the left side of the vehicle. Open the fuel door and remove the fuel cap by turning it counter-clockwise.



Fuel Filler Cap

NOTE: When removing the fuel filler cap, lay the cap tether in the hook, located on the fuel filler door.

CAUTION!

- **Damage to the fuel system or emissions control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap.**
- **A poorly fitting fuel filler cap could let impurities into the fuel system.**
- **A poorly fitting fuel filler cap may cause the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" to turn on.**
- **To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling. When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.**

WARNING!

- **Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running.**
- **A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.**

NOTE:

- When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the gas cap until you hear a "clicking" sound. This is an indication that the gas cap is tightened properly. The MIL in the instrument cluster may turn on if the gas cap is not secured properly. Make sure that the gas cap is tightened each time the vehicle is refueled.

5

WARNING!

Static electricity can cause an ignition of flammable liquid, vapor or gas in any vehicle or trailer. To reduce risk of serious injury or death when filling containers:

- **Always place container on the ground before filling.**
- **Keep the pump nozzle in contact with the container when you are filling it.**
- **Use only approved containers for flammable liquid.**
- **Do not leave container unattended while filling.**
- **A static electric charge could cause a spark and fire hazard.**

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message

If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a loose gascap indicator will display in the EVIC/DID telltale display area. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)/Driver Information Display (DID) in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and push the RIGHT button to turn off the message. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

VEHICLE LOADING

Certification Label

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver's side door or pillar.

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and indicates the Month, Day and Hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your VIN.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited so GVWR and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.

Payload

The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

Tire Size

The tire size on the Vehicle Certification Label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

Rim Size

This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

Inflation Pressure

This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

Curb Weight

The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

Loading

The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation.

The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over the front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met. Store the heavier

items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

CAUTION!

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

TRAILER TOWING

In this section you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer, carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

Common Towing Definitions

The following trailer towing related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and tongue weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not

exceed the GVWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)

The GTW is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

WARNING!

If the gross trailer weight is 5,000 lbs (2 267 kg) or more, it is recommended to use a weight-distributing hitch to ensure stable handling of your vehicle. If

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

you use a standard weight-carrying hitch, you could lose control of your vehicle and cause a collision.

Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)

The GCWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or rear GAWR. Refer to "Vehicle Loading/Vehicle Certification Label" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

WARNING!

It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded.

Tongue Weight (TW)

The tongue weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

Frontal Area

The frontal area is the maximum height multiplied by the maximum width of the front of a trailer.

Trailer Sway Control

The trailer sway control can be a mechanical telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

If equipped, the electronic Trailer Sway Control (TSC) recognizes a swaying trailer and automatically applies individual wheel brakes and/or reduces engine power to attempt to eliminate the trailer sway.

Weight-Carrying Hitch

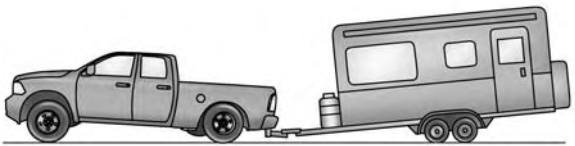
A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the vehicle. These kinds of hitches are the most popular on the market today and they are commonly used to tow small and medium sized trailers.

Weight-Distributing Hitch

A weight-distributing system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. They are typically used for heavier loads to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturer's directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control, thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction/hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight distributing (load equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier Tongue Weights (TW) and may be required depending on vehicle and trailer configuration/loading to comply with GAWR requirements.

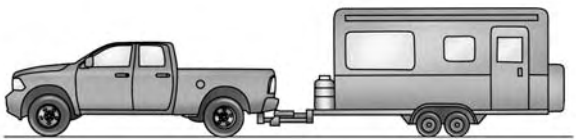
WARNING!

- **An improperly adjusted weight distributing hitch system may reduce handling, stability and braking performance and could result in a collision.**
- **Weight distributing systems may not be compatible with surge brake couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or a reputable Recreational Vehicle dealer for additional information.**



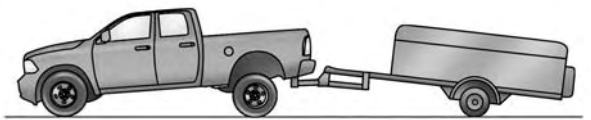
0570049865

Without Weight-Distributing Hitch (Incorrect)



0570049866

With Weight-Distributing Hitch (Correct)



0570049867

Improper Adjustment Of Weight-Distributing Hitch (Incorrect)

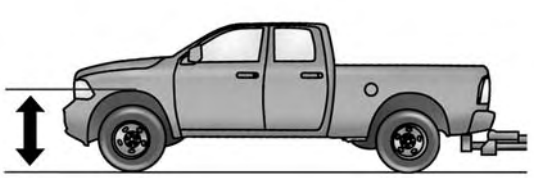
Recommended Distribution Hitch Adjustment

Towing With 1500 Air Suspension

1. Set air suspension to normal ride height. No action is required if already in normal ride height.

NOTE: The vehicle must remain in the engine running position while attaching a trailer for proper leveling of the air suspension system.

2. Position the truck to be ready to connect to the trailer (do not connect the trailer).
3. Under radio suspension settings, turn on jack mode. Jack mode will be canceled and procedure must be restarted if the vehicle is driven at speeds above 5mph (8kph).
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to ground, this is height H1.



0570052238

Measuring Height (H)

5. Attach the trailer to the vehicle without the weight distribution bars connected.
6. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to ground, this is height H2.
7. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars so that the height of the front fender is approximately (H2-H1)/3+H1 (about 1/3 the difference between H2 and H1 above normal ride height [H1]).
8. The truck can now be driven. Jack mode will be canceled and vehicle will return to normal ride height when drive at speeds above 5mph (8kph).

Measurement Example	Example 1500 Height (mm)
H1	925
H2	946
H2-H1	21
(H2-H1)/3	7
(H2-H1)/3 + H1	932

NOTE: For all towing conditions, we recommend towing with tow haul mode engaged.

All Other 1500(Non-Air Suspension)/2500/3500 Trucks

1. Position the truck to be ready to connect to the trailer (do not connect the trailer).

NOTE: For Ram 2500/3500 trucks equipped with rear air suspension, normal ride height or alternate ride height can be used. The vehicle must remain in the engine running position while attaching a trailer for proper leveling of the air suspension system. It may not be possible to enter alternate ride height while lightly loaded.

2. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to ground, this is height H1.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle without the weight distribution bars connected.
4. Measure the height of the top of the front wheel opening on the fender to ground, this is height H2.
5. Install and adjust the tension in the weight distributing bars so that the height of the front fender is approximately (H2-H1)/2+H1 (about 1/2 the difference between H2 and H1 above normal ride height [H1]).

Measurement Example	Example 2500/3500 Height (mm)
H1	1030
H2	1058
H2-H1	28
(H2-H1)/2	14
(H2-H1)/2 + H1	1044

NOTE: For all towing conditions, we recommend towing with tow haul mode engaged.

Fifth-Wheel Hitch

The fifth-wheel hitch is a special high platform with a coupling that mounts over the rear axle of the tow vehicle in the truck bed. It connects a vehicle and fifth-wheel trailer with a coupling king pin.

Gooseneck Hitch

The gooseneck hitch employs a pivoted coupling arm which attaches to a ball mounted in the bed of a pickup truck. The coupling arm connects to the hitch mounted over the rear axle in the truck bed.

Trailer Hitch Type and Maximum Trailer Weight

The following chart provides the maximum trailer weight a given factory equipped trailer hitch type can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition.

Trailer Hitch Type and Maximum Trailer Weight	
Hitch Type	**Max. Trailer Weight / Max. Tongue Weight**
Class III Bumper Hitch - 1500 Model	5,000 lbs (2,268 kg) / 500 lbs (226 kg)
Class IV - 1500 Model	11,000 lbs (4,989 kg) / 1100 lbs (498 kg)
Class V - 2500/3500 Models	18,000 lbs (8,164 kg) / 1800 lbs (816 kg)
Fifth Wheel - 2500 Model	25,000 lbs (11,339 kg) / 5000 lbs (2,267 kg)

Trailer Hitch Type and Maximum Trailer Weight	
Gooseneck - 2500 Model	20,000 lbs (9,071 kg) / 4000 lbs (1,814 kg)
Gooseneck Or Fifth Wheel - 3500 Model	32,000 lbs (14,545 kg) / 6000 lbs (2,721 kg)
Refer to the "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" for the Maximum Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) towable for your given drivetrain.	

All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.

Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

NOTE: For additional trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- **ramtrucks.com/en/towing_guide/**
- **ramtruck.ca (Canada)**
- **rambodybuilder.com**

Trailer And Tongue Weight

Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your trailer hitch.

Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer

- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle
- The weight of the driver and all passengers

NOTE: Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options or dealer-installed options must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to "Tire Safety Information/Tire and Loading Information Placard" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components the following guidelines are recommended:

CAUTION!

- **Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.**
- **Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.**

WARNING!

Improper towing can lead to a collision. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

- **Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have a collision.

- **When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.**
- **Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.**
- **Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle transmission in PARK. For four-wheel drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL. Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.

- **GCWR must not be exceeded.**
- **Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:**

  1. GVWR

  2. GTW

  3. GAWR

  4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized.

Towing Requirements — Tires

- Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.
- Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to "Tires – General Information" in "Starting And Operating" for proper tire inflation procedures.
- Check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.
- Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to "Tires – General Information" in "Starting And Operating" for the proper inspection procedure.
- When replacing tires, refer to "Tires – General Information" in "Starting And Operating" for proper tire replacement procedures. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limits.

Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes

WARNING!

- **Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.**
- **Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**

CAUTION!

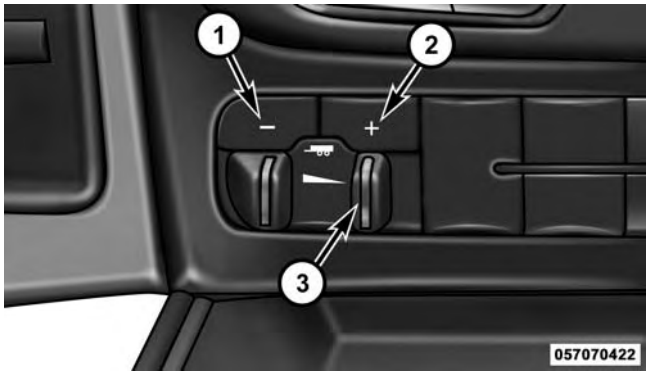
If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (453 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.
- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (453 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 1,653 lbs (749 kg).

Integrated Trailer Brake Module — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM) for Electric and Electric Over Hydraulic (EOH) trailer brakes.

NOTE: This module has been designed and verified with electric trailer brakes and new electric over hydraulic systems. Some previous EOH systems may not be compatible with ITBM.



Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM)

1 — GAIN Adjustment Button
2 — GAIN Adjustment Button
3 — Manual Brake Control Lever

The user interface consists of the following:

Manual Brake Control Lever

Slide the manual brake control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes. If the manual brake control lever is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

The trailer and the vehicle's brake lamps will come on when either vehicle braking or manual trailer brakes are applied.

Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light

This light indicates the trailer electrical connection status.

If no electrical connection is detected after the ignition is turned on, pushing the GAIN adjustment button or

sliding the manual brake control lever will display the GAIN setting for 10 seconds and the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will not be displayed.

If a fault is detected in the trailer wiring or the Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM), the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will flash.

GAIN Adjustment Buttons (+/-)

Pushing these buttons will adjust the brake control power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking).

GAIN

The GAIN setting is used to set the trailer brake control for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

Adjusting GAIN

NOTE: This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.
3. When a trailer with electric/EOH brakes is plugged in, the trailer connected message should appear in the EVIC/DID (if the connection is not recognized by the ITBM, braking functions will not be available), the GAIN setting will illuminate and the correct type of trailer must be selected from the EVIC/DID options.

4. Push the UP or DOWN button on the steering wheel until “TRAILER TOW” appears on the screen.
5. Push the RIGHT arrow on the steering wheel to enter “TRAILER TOW”.
6. Push the UP or DOWN buttons until Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
7. Push the RIGHT arrow and then push the UP or DOWN buttons until the proper Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.
8. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual brake control lever completely.
9. If the trailer wheels lockup (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting.

Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lockup. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

	Light Electric	**Heavy Electric**	**Light EOH**	**Heavy EOH**
Type of Trailer Brakes	Electric Trailer Brakes	Electric Trailer Brakes	Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes	Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes
Load	*Under 10,000 lbs	*Above 10,000 lbs	*Under 10,000 lbs	*Above 10,000 lbs

* The suggested selection depends and may change depending on the customer preferences for braking performance. Condition of the trailer brakes, driving and road state may also affect the selection.

Display Messages

The trailer brake control interacts with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Display messages, along with a single chime, will be displayed when a malfunction is determined in the trailer connection, trailer brake control, or on the trailer. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center" or "Driver Information Display" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

CAUTION!

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in damage to your vehicle, trailer, or other property.

WARNING!

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in personal injury.

NOTE:

- An aftermarket controller may be available for use with trailers with air or electric-over-hydraulic trailer brake systems. To determine the type of brakes on your trailer and the availability of controllers, check with your trailer manufacturer or dealer.
- Removal of the ITBM will cause errors and it may cause damage to the electrical system and electronic modules of the vehicle. See your authorized dealer if an aftermarket module is to be installed.

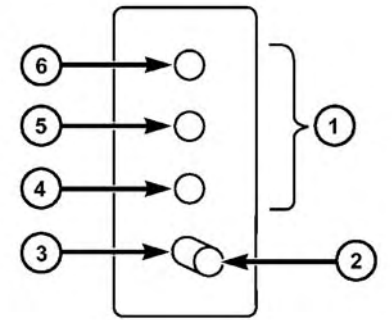
Towing Requirements — Trailer Lights And Wiring

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stoplights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

The Trailer Tow Package may include a four- and seven-pin wiring harness. Use a factory approved trailer harness and connector.

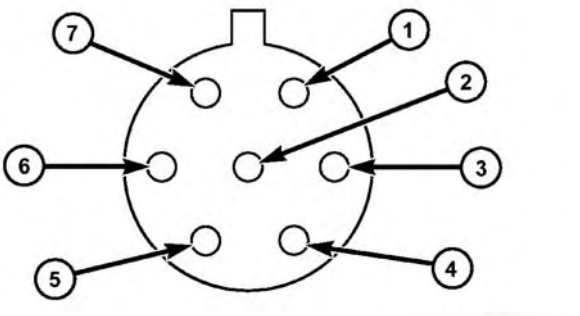
NOTE: Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicles wiring harness.

The electrical connections are all complete to the vehicle but you must mate the harness to a trailer connector. Refer to the following illustrations.



Four-Pin Connector

1 — Female Pins
2 — Male Pin
3 — Ground
4 — Park
5 — Left Stop/Turn
6 — Right Stop/Turn



Seven-Pin Connector

1 — Battery
2 — Backup Lamps
3 — Right Stop/Turn
4 — Electric Brakes
5 — Ground
6 — Left Stop/Turn
7 — Running Lamps

Towing Tips

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping and backing the trailer up in an area away from heavy traffic.

Automatic Transmission

The DRIVE range can be selected when towing. The transmission controls include a drive strategy to avoid frequent shifting when towing. However, if frequent shifting does occur while in DRIVE, select TOW/HAUL mode or select a lower gear range (using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control).

NOTE: Using TOW/HAUL mode or selecting a lower gear range (using the ERS shift control) while operating the vehicle under heavy loading conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

When towing a loaded trailer up steep grades at low speeds (20 mph [32 km/h] or below), holding your vehicle in first gear (using the ERS shift control) can help to avoid transmission overheating.

If you regularly tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation, then change the automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) as specified for ″police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.″ Refer to the “Maintenance Schedule” for the proper maintenance intervals.

NOTE: Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing (6-speed automatic only).

Tow/Haul Mode

To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, activate TOW/HAUL mode when driving in hilly areas, or select a lower gear range (using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control) on more severe grades.

Electronic Speed Control — If Equipped

- Do not use in hilly terrain or with heavy loads.
- When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.
- Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

Cooling System

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

City Driving

When stopped for short periods of time, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and increase engine idle speed.

Highway Driving

Reduce speed.

Air Conditioning

Turn off temporarily.

Air Suspension System

To aid in attaching/detaching the trailer from the vehicle, the air suspension system can be used. Refer to "Air Suspension System" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

NOTE: The vehicle must remain in the engine running position while attaching a trailer for proper leveling of the air suspension system.

SNOWPLOW

1500 Models Only

NOTE: Do not use this model vehicle for snowplow applications.

WARNING!

Snowplows and other aftermarket equipment should not be added to the front end of your vehicle. The airbag crash sensors may be affected by the change in the front end structure. The airbags could deploy unexpectedly or could fail to deploy during a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

CAUTION!

Using this vehicle for snowplow applications can cause damage to the vehicle.

WARNING!

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in a collision.

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual.

2500/3500 Models Only

Snowplow Prep Packages are available as a factory installed option. These packages include components necessary to equip your vehicle with a snowplow.

NOTE: Before installation of a snowplow it is highly recommended that the owner/installer obtain and follow the recommendations contained within the current Body Builders Guide. See your authorized dealer, installer or snowplow manufacturer for this information. There are unique electrical systems that must be connected to properly assure operator safety and prevent overloading vehicle systems.

WARNING!

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in a collision. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual.

CAUTION!

The "Lamp Out" indicator could illuminate if exterior lamps are not properly installed.

Before Plowing

- Check the hydraulic system for leaks and proper fluid level.
- Check the mounting bolts and nuts for proper tightness.
- Check the runners and cutting edge for excessive wear. The cutting edge should be ¼ to ½ in (6 cm to 1.2 cm) above ground in snow plowing position.
- Check that snowplow lighting is connected and functioning properly.

Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability

For Information about snowplow applications visit www.ramtrucks.com or refer to the current Body Builders Guide.

1. The maximum number of occupants in the truck should not exceed two.
2. The total GVWR or the Front GAWR or the Rear GAWR should never be exceeded.
3. Cargo capacity will be reduced by the addition of options or passengers, etc.

The loaded vehicle weight, including the snowplow system, all aftermarket accessories, driver, passengers, options, and cargo, must not exceed either the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVWR) or Gross Axle Weight (GAWR) ratings. These weights are specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver's side door opening.

NOTE: Detach the snowplow when transporting passengers.

Vehicle front end wheel alignment was set to specifications at the factory without consideration for the weight of the plow. Front end toe-in should be checked and reset if necessary at the beginning and end of the snowplow season. This will help prevent uneven tire wear.

The blade should be lowered whenever the vehicle is parked.

Maintain and operate your vehicle and snowplow equipment following the recommendations provided by the specific snowplow manufacturer.

Over The Road Operation With Snowplow Attached

The blade restricts air flow to the radiator and causes the engine to operate at higher than normal temperatures. Therefore, when transporting the plow, angle the blade completely and position it as low as road or surface conditions permit. Do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h). The operator should always maintain a safe stopping distance and allow adequate passing clearance.

Operating Tips

Under ideal snow plowing conditions, 20 mph (32 km/h) should be maximum operating speed. The operator should be familiar with the area and surface to be cleaned. Reduce speed and use extreme caution when plowing unfamiliar areas or under poor visibility.

General Maintenance

Snowplows should be maintained in accordance with the plow manufacturer's instructions.

Keep all snowplow electrical connections and battery terminals clean and free of corrosion.

When plowing snow, to avoid transmission and drivetrain damage, the following precautions should be observed.

- Operate with transfer case in 4LO when plowing small or congested areas where speeds are not likely to exceed 15 mph (24 km/h). At higher speeds operate in 4HI.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions should use 4LO range when plowing deep or heavy snow for extended periods of time to avoid transmission overheating.
- Do not shift the transmission unless the engine has returned to idle and wheels have stopped. Make a practice of stepping on the brake pedal while shifting the transmission.

RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle

Towing Condition	Wheels OFF The Ground	Two-Wheel Drive Models	Four-Wheel Drive Models
Flat Tow	NONE	**NOT ALLOWED**	**See Instructions** • Automatic transmission in PARK • Manual transmission in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL) • Transfer case in NEUTRAL (N) • Tow in forward direction
Dolly Tow	Front	**NOT ALLOWED**	**NOT ALLOWED**
	Rear	OK	**NOT ALLOWED**
On Trailer	ALL	OK	OK

NOTE:

- When recreational towing your vehicle, always follow applicable state and provincial laws. Contact state and provincial Highway Safety offices for additional details.
- Vehicles equipped with air suspension must be placed in Transport mode before tying them down (from the body) on a trailer or flatbed truck. Refer to "Air Suspension – If Equipped" for more information. If the vehicle cannot be placed in Transport mode (for example, engine will not run), tie-downs must be fastened to the axles (not to the body). Failure to follow these instructions may cause fault codes to be set and/or cause loss of proper tie-down tension.

Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel Drive Models

DO NOT flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.

Recreational towing (for two-wheel drive models) is allowed **ONLY** if the rear wheels are **OFF** the ground. This may be accomplished using a tow dolly or vehicle trailer. If using a tow dolly, follow this procedure:

NOTE: If vehicle is equipped with air suspension, ensure the vehicle is set to Normal Ride Height.

1. Properly secure the dolly to the tow vehicle, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the tow dolly.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake. Place automatic transmission in PARK, manual transmission in gear (not in NEUTRAL).

4. Properly secure the rear wheels to the dolly, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position and remove the Key Fob.
6. Install a suitable clamping device, designed for towing, to secure the front wheels in the straight position.

CAUTION!

- **Towing with the rear wheels on the ground will cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**
- **Do not disconnect the driveshaft because fluid may leak from the transmission, causing damage to internal parts.**

Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel Drive Models

NOTE: Both the manual shift and electronic shift transfer cases must be shifted into NEUTRAL (N) for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into PARK for recreational towing. Manual transmissions must be placed in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL) for recreational towing. Refer to the following for the proper transfer case NEUTRAL (N) shifting procedure for your vehicle.

CAUTION!

- **DO NOT dolly tow any 4WD vehicle. Towing with only one set of wheels on the ground (front or rear) will cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Tow with all four wheels either ON the ground, or OFF the ground (using a vehicle trailer).**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **Tow only in the forward direction. Towing this vehicle backwards can cause severe damage to the transfer case.**
- **Automatic transmissions must be placed in PARK for recreational towing.**
- **Manual transmissions must be placed in gear (not in Neutral) for recreational towing.**
- **Before recreational towing, perform the procedure outlined under "Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)" to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N). Otherwise, internal damage will result.**
- **Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case, causing damage to internal parts.**
- **Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**

Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear drive shaft from the powertrain, and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the automatic transmission is in PARK (or manual transmission is in gear). The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, with the engine running. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.

NOTE: If vehicle is equipped with air suspension, ensure the vehicle is set to Normal Ride Height.

3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.
5. With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever into NEUTRAL (N).
   - With electronic shift transfer case, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button. Some models have a small, recessed "N" button (at the center of the transfer case switches) that must be pushed using a ballpoint pen or similar object. Other models have a rectangular NEUTRAL switch, below the rotary transfer case control knob. The NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will blink while the shift is in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the

shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete. After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.

6. Release the parking brake.
7. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
8. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions) for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 with automatic transmission in DRIVE or manual transmission in first gear.
10. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL. Firmly apply the parking brake. Turn OFF the engine. For vehicles with Keyless Enter-N-Go, push and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button until the engine shuts off.
11. Shift the transmission into PARK or place manual transmission in gear (NOT in Neutral). On 8-speed transmissions the shifter will automatically select PARK when the engine is turned off.
12. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position, then cycle the Key or the Keyless Enter-N-Go button to the RUN position and back to the OFF position. Remove the Key Fob from the ignition switch.
13. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle using a suitable tow bar.
14. Release the parking brake.

NOTE: With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 2 through 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met

during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.

- The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON/RUN position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.
- If the vehicle is equipped with air suspension, the engine should be started and left running for a minimum of 60 seconds (with all the doors closed) at least once every 24 hours. This process allows the air suspension to adjust the vehicle's ride height to compensate for temperature effects.

Shifting Out Of NEUTRAL (N)

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, leaving it connected to the tow vehicle.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL. Depress the clutch pedal on a manual transmission.
   - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever to the desired position.
   - With electronic shift transfer case with rotary selector switch, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off. After the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off, release the NEUTRAL (N) button. After the

NEUTRAL (N) button has been released, the transfer case will shift to the position indicated by the selector switch.

- With electronic shift transfer case with push-button selector switch, push and hold the switch for the desired transfer case position, until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off and the desired position indicator light turns on.

NOTE: When shifting out of transfer case NEUTRAL (N), turning the engine OFF is not required, but may be helpful to avoid gear clash. With the 8-speed automatic transmission, the engine must remain running, since turning the engine OFF will shift the transmission to PARK (and the transmission must be in NEUTRAL for the transfer case to shift out of NEUTRAL).

5. Turn the engine OFF. Shift automatic transmission into PARK. On 8-speed transmissions the shifter will automatically select PARK when the engine is turned off.
6. Release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on a manual transmission).
7. Disconnect vehicle from the tow vehicle.
8. Start the engine.
9. Press and hold the brake pedal.
10. Release the parking brake.

11. Shift the transmission into gear, release the brake pedal (and clutch pedal on manual transmissions), and check that the vehicle operates normally.

NOTE: With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 3 and 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the button to shift out of NEUTRAL (N), and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the button is released.
- The ignition switch must be in the ON/RUN position for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition switch is not in the ON/RUN position, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

CONTENTS

- HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS 739
- IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS 739
- WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS 740
  - Torque Specifications 741
- JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING 743
  - Jacking And Tire Changing 1500 Series Trucks . .743
  - Jacking And Tire Changing 2500 And 3500 Series Trucks 763
- HOISTING 784
- JUMP-STARTING PROCEDURES 785
  - Preparations For Jump-Start 785
  - Jump-Starting Procedure 787
- FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE 789
- EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED . .791
- GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE — 6-SPEED TRANSMISSION 792
  - Column Shifter — If Equipped 792
  - Center Console Shifter — If Equipped 793

■ MANUAL PARK RELEASE — 8 SPEED TRANSMISSION 794
■ TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE 796
□ Two-Wheel Drive Models 798
□ Four-Wheel Drive Models. 799

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The Hazard Warning flasher switch is located on the upper switch bank just below the radio.

Push the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and it is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is placed in the OFF position.

NOTE: With extended use the Hazard Warning flashers may wear down your battery.

IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase the engine idle speed while preventing vehicle motion with the brakes.

NOTE: There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheat condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.
- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a

supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.

CAUTION!

Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads HOT (H), pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on HOT (H), and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

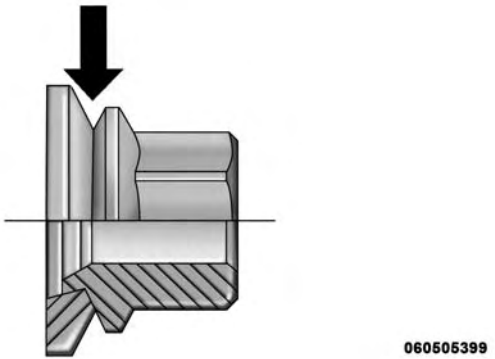
Proper lug nut/bolt torque is very important to ensure that the wheel is properly mounted to the vehicle. Any time a wheel has been removed and reinstalled on the vehicle the lug nuts/bolts should be torqued using a properly calibrated torque wrench.

Torque Specifications

Lug Nut/Bolt Torque	Lug Nut/ Bolt Type	**Lug Nut/Bolt Size	Lug Nut/ Bolt Socket Size
130 Ft-Lbs (176 N·m)	Cone	M14 x 1.50	22 mm
140 Ft-Lbs (190 N·m)	Flanged		

**Use only your Authorized Dealer recommended lug nuts/bolts and clean or remove any dirt or oil before tightening.

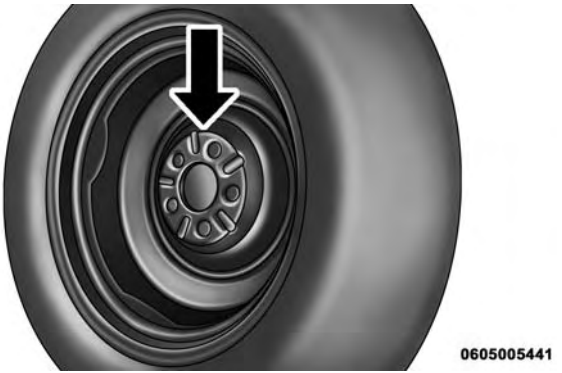
NOTE: Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add two drops of oil at the interface between the lug nut/bolt and the washer.



Two-Piece Lug Nut

Do not oil wheel studs.

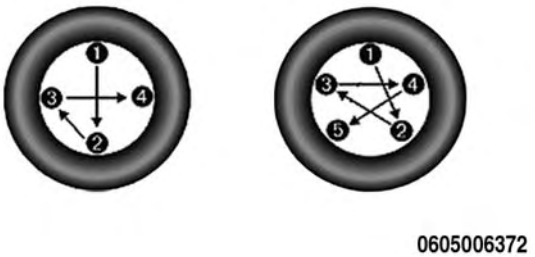
Inspect the wheel mounting surface prior to mounting the tire and remove any corrosion or loose particles.



Wheel Mounting Surface

Tighten the lug nuts/bolts in a star pattern until each nut/bolt has been tightened twice.

After 25 miles (40 km) check the lug nut/bolt torque to be sure that all the lug nuts/bolts are properly seated against the wheel.



4 And 5 Lug Nuts/Bolts Torque Pattern

WARNING!

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the lug nuts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in personal injury.

JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

Jacking And Tire Changing 1500 Series Trucks

WARNING!

- **Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.**
- **Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.**

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with an air suspension system, there is a feature which allows the automatic leveling to be disabled to assist with changing a tire.

If your vehicle is equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be activated through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with a touchscreen, this feature can be activated through the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) or Driver Information Display (DID). Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center

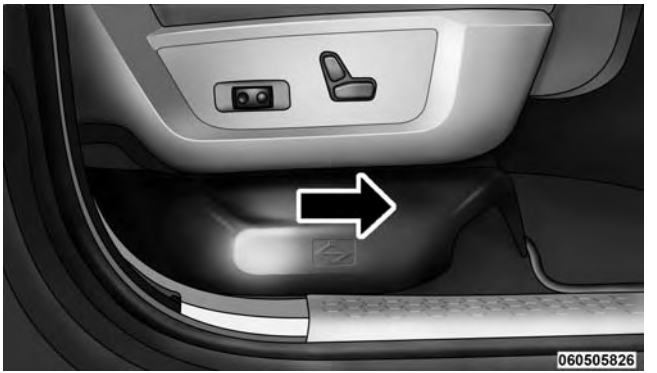
(EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

Jack Location

The jack and jack tools are stored under the front passenger seat.

Removal Of Jack And Tools (1500 Series)

To access the jack and jack tools you must remove the plastic access cover, located on the side of the front passengers seat. To remove the cover, pull the front part of the cover (closest to the front of the seat) toward you to release a locking tab. Once the front of the cover is loose, slide the cover toward the front of the seat until it is free from the seat frame.



Jack Access Cover

Remove the jack and tools by turning the wing bolt counterclockwise, remove the wing bolt and then slide the assembly out from under the seat.

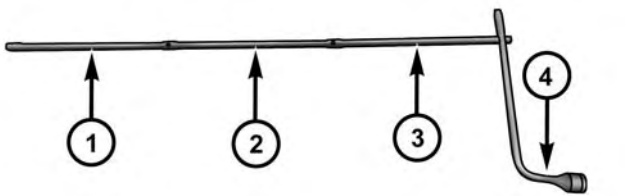
Jack And Tools (1500 Series)

Release the tool bag straps from the jack and remove tools from bag.

Jack And Tool Bag

There are 2 ways to assemble the tools:

Assembled For Spare Tire Lowering/Raising



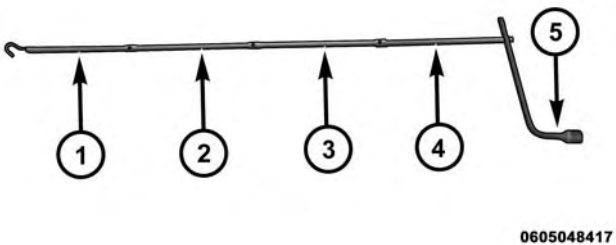
Assembled For Spare Tire Lowering/Raising

1 — Extension 1
2 — Extension 2
3 — Extension 3
4 — Wheel Wrench

CAUTION!

- **The wheel wrench can only be attached to extension 3.**
- **When attaching the tool to the winch mechanism be sure the large flared end opening on extension 1 is positioned correctly over the winch mechanism adjusting nut.**
- **Damage to the wheel wrench, extensions and winch mechanism may occur from improper tool assembly.**

Assembled For Jack Operation



Assembled For Jack Operation

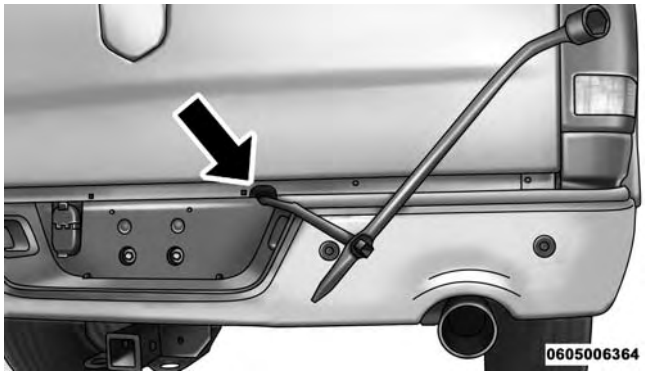
1 — Extension With Jack Hook
2 — Extension 2
3 — Extension 3
4 — Extension 4
5 — Wheel Wrench

WARNING!

After using the jack and tools, always reinstall them in the original carrier and location. While driving you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration or sharp turns. A loose jack, tools, bracket or other objects in the vehicle may move around with force, resulting in serious injury.

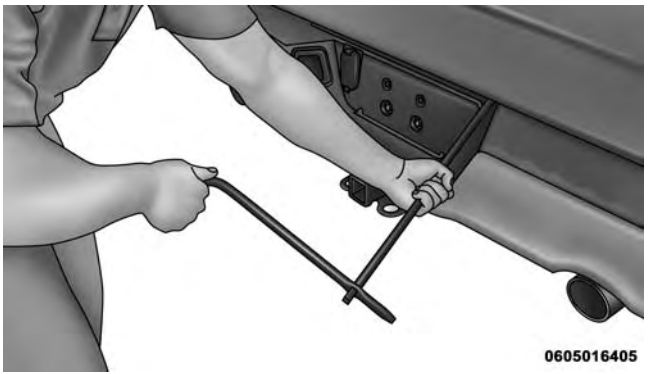
Removing The Spare Tire

1. Remove the spare tire before attempting to jack up the truck. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack extension tube with the curved angle facing away from the vehicle. Insert the tube through the access hole between the lower tailgate and the top of the bumper and into the winch mechanism tube.



Inserting The Jack Extension Tube Into The Access Hole

2. Rotate the wheel wrench handle counterclockwise until the spare tire is on the ground with enough cable slack to allow you to pull it out from under the vehicle.

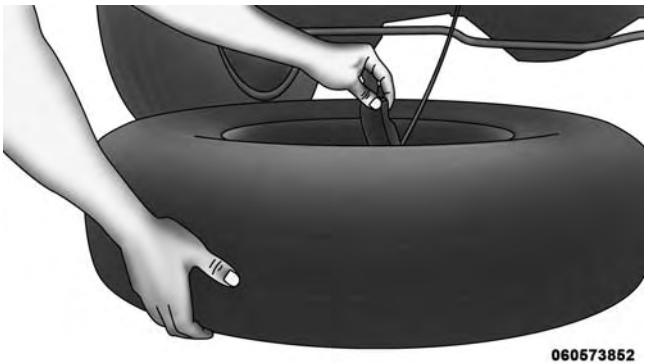


Rotating The Wheel Wrench Handle

3. Pull the spare tire out from under the vehicle to gain access to the spare tire retainer.

Pulling The Spare Tire Out

4. Lift the spare tire with one hand to give clearance to tilt the retainer at the end of the cable.



Gaining Access To The Retainer

5. Pull the retainer through the center of the wheel.

Pulling The Retainer Through The Center Of The Wheel

NOTE: The winch mechanism is designed for use with the jack extension tube only. Use of an air wrench or other power tools is not recommended and can damage the winch.

Preparations

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic, pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Place the gear selector into PARK. On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the 4L position.
5. Turn the ignition OFF.

Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.

NOTE: Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

Jack Instructions (1500 Series)

WARNING!

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- **Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.**
- **Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.**
- **Set the parking brake firmly and set an automatic transmission in PARK; a manual transmission in REVERSE.**
- **Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.**
- **Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.**
- **To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.**

060600714

Jack Warning Label

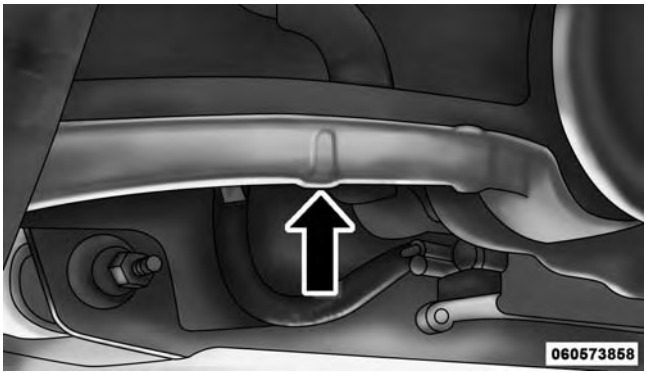
CAUTION!

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

1. Remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.
2. Using the wheel wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
3. Placement of the jack:

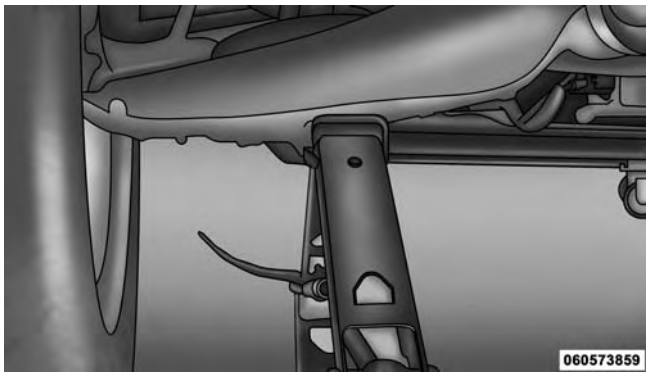
4x2 Series Trucks Front Jacking Location

There is a jack location indicator on the rear portion of the lower control arm.



4X2 Front Jacking Location Indicator

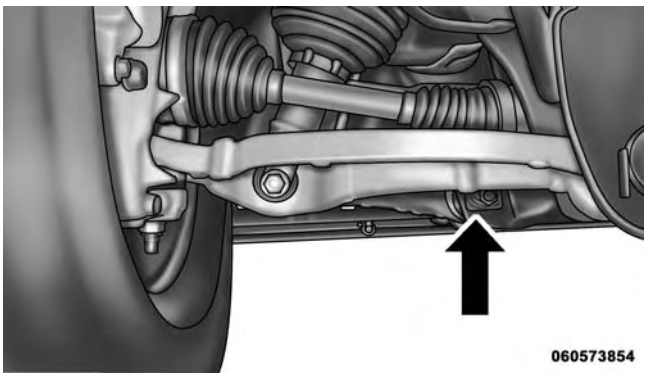
When changing a front wheel, place the scissor jack under the rear portion of the lower control arm as shown below.



4X2 Front Jacking Location

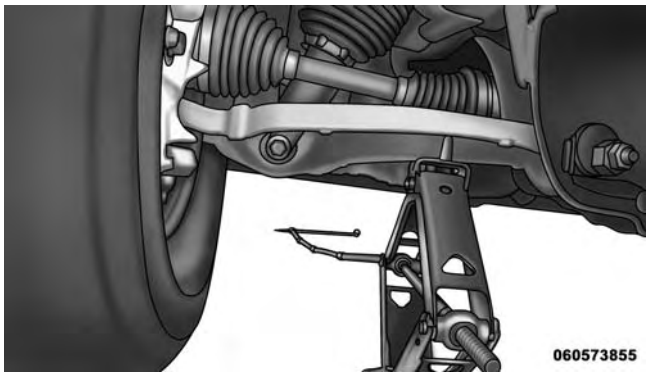
4x4 Series Trucks Front Jacking Location

There is a jack location indicator on the rear portion of the lower control arm.



4X4 Front Jacking Location Indicator

When changing a front wheel, place the scissor jack under the rear portion of the lower control arm as shown below.

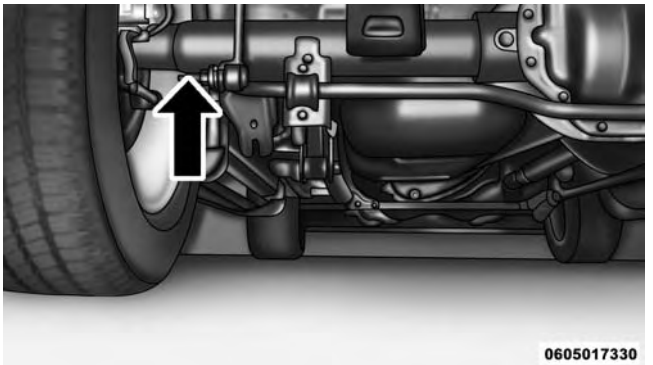


4X4 Front Jacking Location

4x2 and 4x4 Rear Jacking Location

Operate the jack using the jack drive tube and the wheel wrench. The tube extension may be used but is not required.

For 4x2 and 4x4 trucks, when changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle between the wheel and the shock bracket with the drive tubes extending to the rear.



Rear Jacking Location

Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.

CAUTION!

Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.

4. By rotating the lug wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the wheel nuts toward the wheel. To avoid the

risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the wheel nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.

6. Finish tightening the lug nuts. Push down on the wrench while at the end of the handle for increased leverage. Tighten the lug nuts in a star pattern until each nut has been tightened twice. For the correct lug nut torque refer to "Torque Specifications" in this section. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by you authorized dealer or service station.

WARNING!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.

7. Install the wheel center cap and remove the wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.
8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the bottle jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.
9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

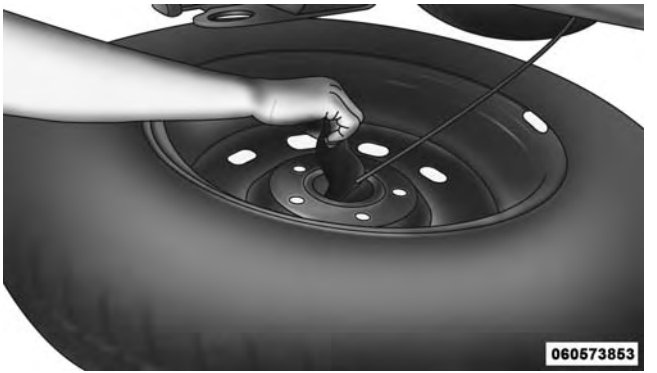
To Stow The Flat Or Spare

NOTE: Vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels cannot be stored under the vehicle because the wheel retainer will not fit through the wheel pilot hole. Secure the flat tire in the bed of the truck. **Have the flat tire repaired or replaced immediately.**

WARNING!

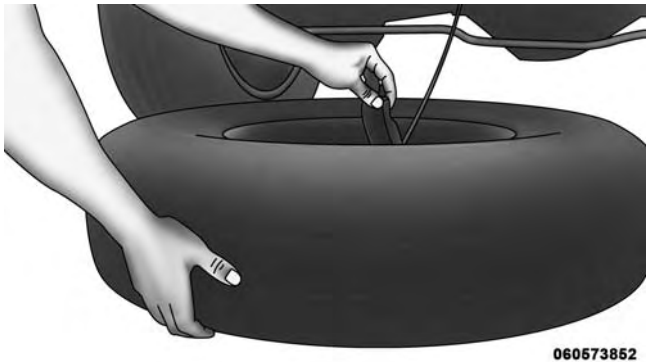
A loose tire thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure the occupants in the vehicle. Have the deflated (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.

1. Turn the wheel so that the valve stem is facing the ground and toward the rear of the vehicle for convenience in checking the spare tire inflation. Slide the wheel retainer through the center of the wheel.



Reinstalling The Retainer

2. Lift the spare tire with one hand to give clearance to tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and position it properly across the wheel opening.



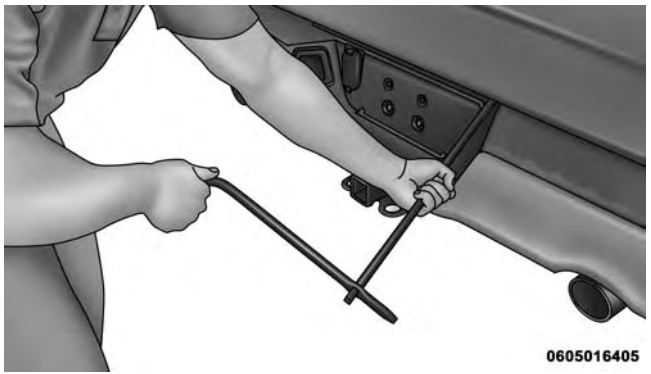
Pushing The Retainer Through The Center Of The Wheel And Positioning It

3. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack extension tube with the curved angle facing away from the vehicle. Insert the tube through the access hole between the lower tailgate and the top of the bumper and into the winch mechanism tube.

Wheel Wrench And Jack Extension Tube Assembled And In Position

4. Rotate the wheel wrench handle clockwise until the wheel is drawn into place against the underside of the vehicle. Continue to rotate until you feel the winch

mechanism slip, or click three or four times. It cannot be overtightened. Push against the tire several times to ensure it is firmly in place.



Rotating The Wheel Wrench Handle

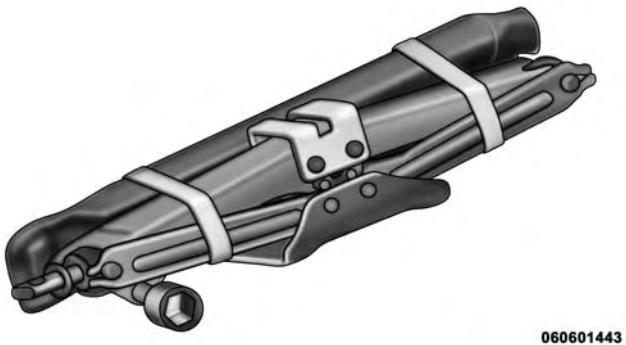
NOTE: The winch mechanism is designed for use with the jack extension tube only. Use of an air wrench or other power tools is not recommended and can damage the winch.

Reinstalling The Jack And Tools (1500 Series)

1. Tighten the jack all the way down by turning the jack turn-screw counterclockwise until the jack is snug.
2. Position the jack and tool bag. Make sure the lug wrench is under the jack near the jack turn-screw.

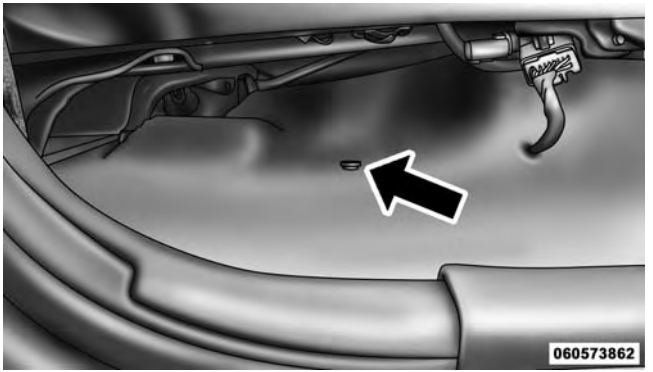
Jack And Tool Bag

3. Secure the tool bag straps to the jack.



Jack And Tools Tied

4. Place the jack and tools in the storage position holding the jack by the jack turn-screw, slip the jack and tools under the seat so that the bottom slot engages into the fastener on the floor.



Jack Hold Down Fastener

NOTE: Ensure that the jack slides into the front hold down location.

5. Turn the wing bolt clockwise to secure to the floor pan. Reinstall the plastic cover.

Jack And Tools (1500 Series)

WARNING!

After using the jack and tools, always reinstall them in the original carrier and location. While driving you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration or sharp turns. A loose jack, tools, bracket or other objects in the vehicle may move around with force, resulting in serious injury.

Jacking And Tire Changing 2500 And 3500 Series Trucks

WARNING!

- **Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

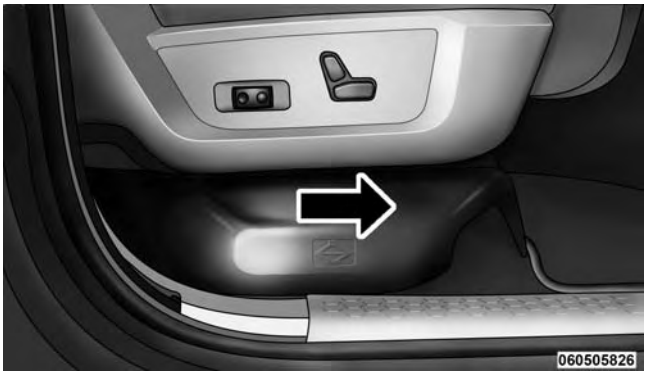
- **Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.**
- **The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.**

Jack Location

The jack and jack tools are stored under the front passenger seat.

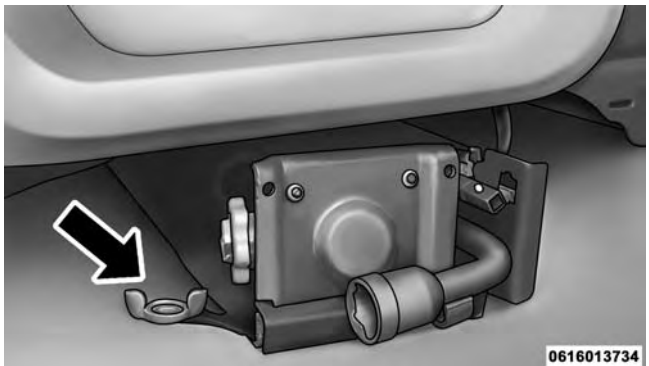
Removal Of Jack And Tools (2500, 3500 Series)

To access the jack and jack tools you must remove the plastic access cover, located on the side of the front passengers seat. To remove the cover, pull the front part of the cover (closest to the front of the seat) toward you to release a locking tab. Once the front of the cover is loose, slide the cover toward the front of the seat until it is free from the seat frame.



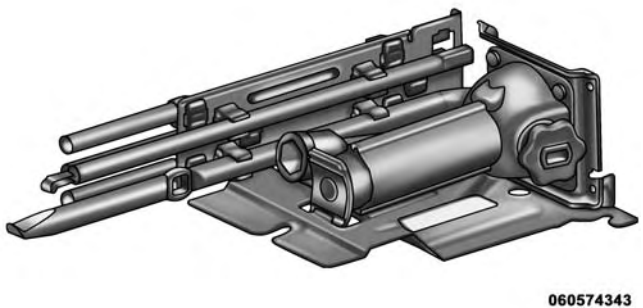
Jack Access Cover

Remove the jack and tools by turning the wing bolt counterclockwise, remove the wing bolt and then slide the assembly out from under the seat.



Wing Bolt/Jack And Tools (2500/3500 Series)

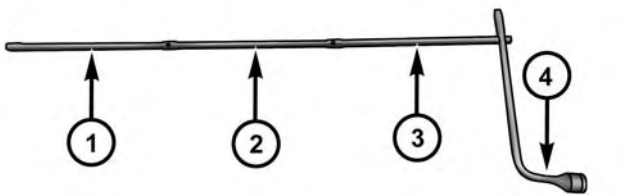
Remove the jack and tools from the bracket assembly. Turn the jack-turn-screw counterclockwise to release jack from bracket assembly.



Jack And Tools Bracket Assembly

There are 2 ways to assemble the tools:

Assembled For Spare Tire Lowering/Raising



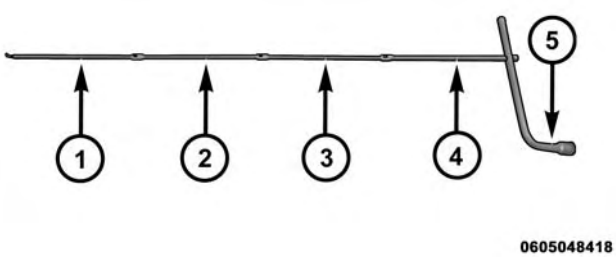
Assembled For Spare Tire Lowering/Raising

1 — Extension 1
2 — Extension 2
3 — Extension 3
4 — Wheel Wrench

CAUTION!

- **The wheel wrench can only be attached to extension 3.**
- **When attaching the tool to the winch mechanism be sure the large flared end opening on extension 1 is positioned correctly over the winch mechanism adjusting nut.**
- **Damage to the wheel wrench, extensions and winch mechanism may occur from improper tool assembly.**

Assembled For Jack Operation



Assembled For Jack Operation

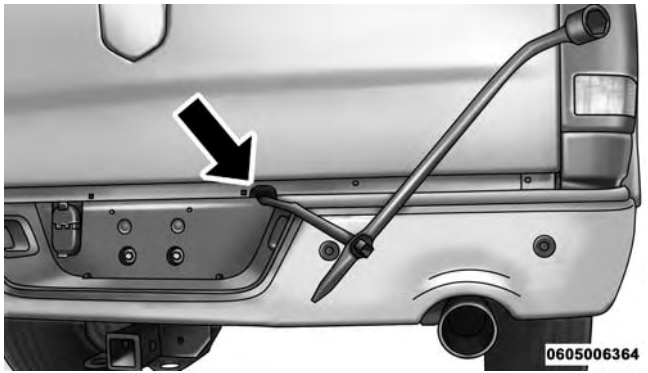
1 — Extension With Jack Hook
2 — Extension 2
3 — Extension 3
4 — Extension 4
5 — Wheel Wrench

WARNING!

After using the jack and tools, always reinstall them in the original carrier and location. While driving you may experience abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration or sharp turns. A loose jack, tools, bracket or other objects in the vehicle may move around with force, resulting in serious injury.

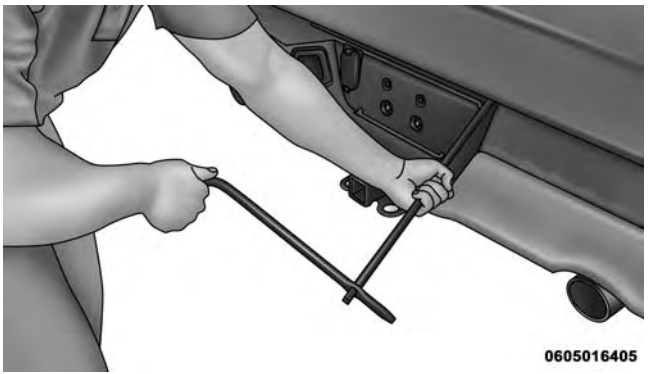
Removing The Spare Tire

1. Remove the spare tire before attempting to jack up the truck. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack extension tube with the curved angle facing away from the vehicle. Insert the tube through the access hole between the lower tailgate and the top of the bumper and into the winch mechanism tube.



Inserting The Jack Extension Tube Into The Access Hole

2. Rotate the wheel wrench handle counterclockwise until the spare tire is on the ground with enough cable slack to allow you to pull it out from under the vehicle.

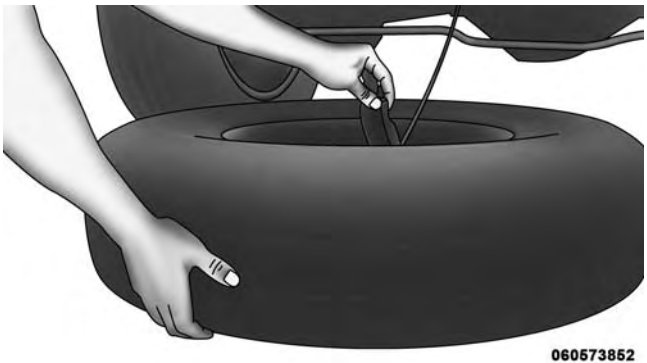


Rotating The Wheel Wrench Handle

3. Pull the spare tire out from under the vehicle to gain access to the spare tire retainer.

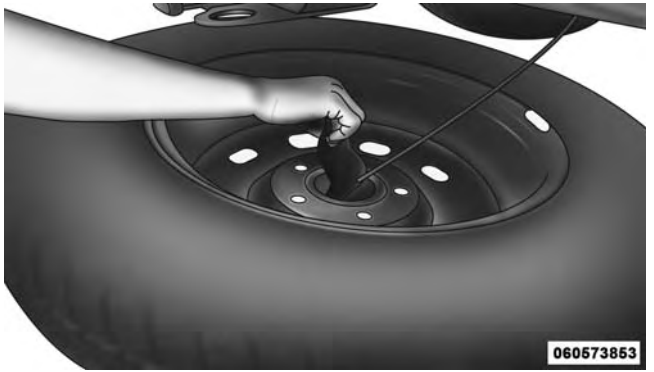
Pulling The Spare Tire Out

4. Lift the spare tire with one hand to give clearance to tilt the retainer at the end of the cable.



Gaining Access To The Retainer

5. Pull the retainer through the center of the wheel.



Pulling The Retainer Through The Center Of The Wheel

NOTE: The winch mechanism is designed for use with the jack extension tube only. Use of an air wrench or other power tools is not recommended and can damage the winch.

Preparations

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic, pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

2. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Place the gear selector into PARK. On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the 4L position.
5. Turn the ignition OFF.

Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.

NOTE: Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

Jack Instructions (2500, 3500 Series)

WARNING!

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- **Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.**
- **Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.**
- **Set the parking brake firmly and set an automatic transmission in PARK; a manual transmission in REVERSE.**
- **Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.**
- **Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.**

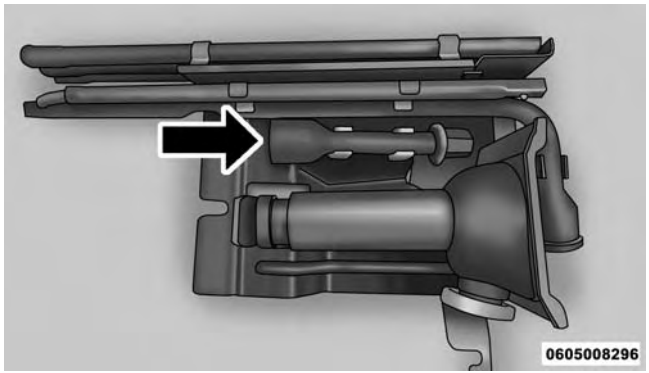
(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

- **If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.**
- **To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.**

060600714

Jack Warning Label



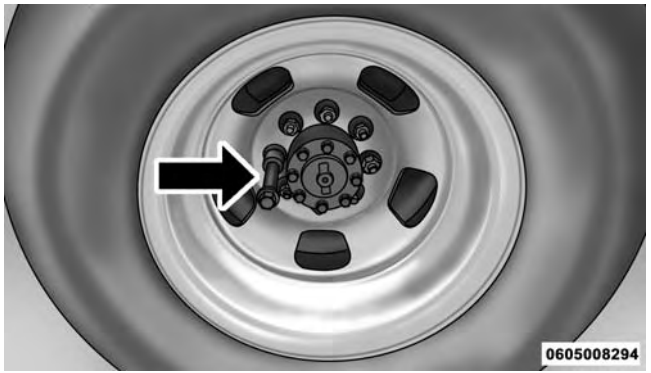
Lug Wrench Adaptor Shown In Jack And Tools Assembly

CAUTION!

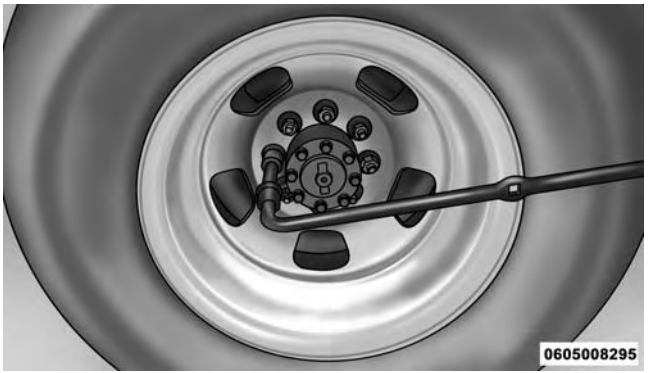
Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

1. Remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.
2. Using the lug wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground. Changing a dually tire requires the lug wrench adapter.

NOTE: If your vehicle is equipped with hub caps/wheel covers they must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground. Refer to "Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped" in this section.



Lug Wrench Adapter

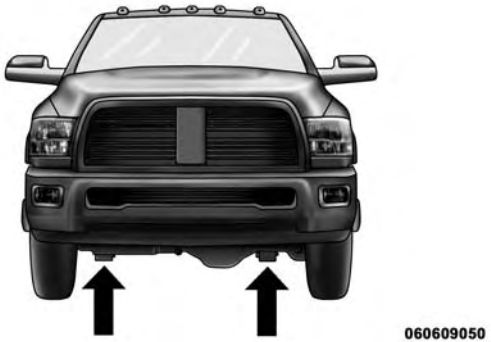


Lug Wrench Adapter And Wrench

3. Placement of the jack:

Front Jacking Location

When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the drive tubes extending to the front. Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.



Front Jacking Location

Rear Jacking Location

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle between the spring and the shock absorber with the drive tubes extending to the rear.

Rear Jacking Location

Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.

CAUTION!

Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.

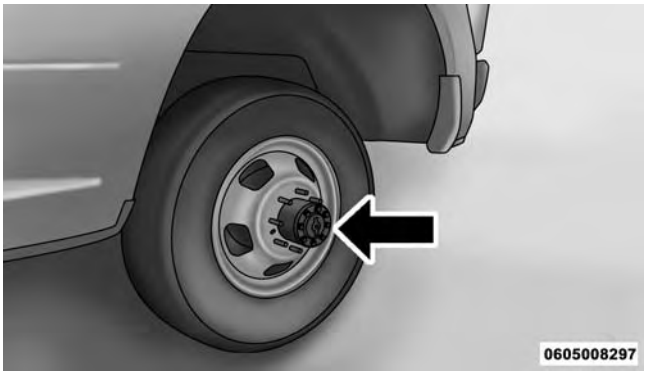
NOTE: If the bottle jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack.

4. By rotating the wheel wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

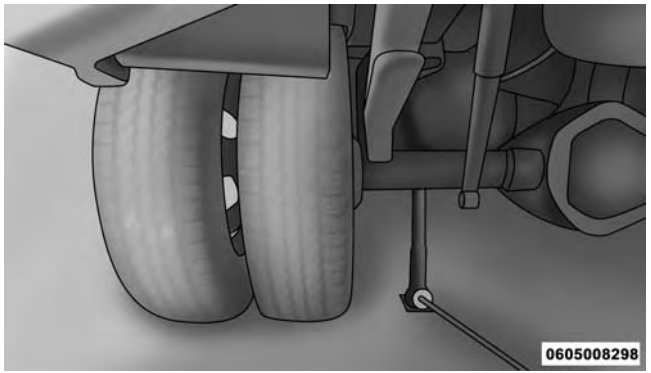
WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. On single rear-wheel (SRW) trucks, install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the wheel nuts toward the wheel. On 3500 dual rear-wheel models (DRW) trucks, if the outer tire is being replaced then leave the inner wheel on the vehicle. If the inner wheel is being replaced remove the outer wheel and replace the inner wheel. The wheel nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the wheel nuts. To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the wheel nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.



Rear Inner Wheel Proper Placement (Dual Rear Wheel Equipped)



Dual Rear Wheel Placement

6. Finish tightening the lug nuts. Push down on the wrench while at the end of the handle for increased leverage. Tighten the lug nuts in a star pattern until each nut has been tightened twice. For the correct lug nut torque refer to "Torque Specifications" in this section. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by you authorized dealer or service station.

WARNING!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.

7. Install the wheel center cap and remove the wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.
8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.

NOTE: If the bottle jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack.

9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

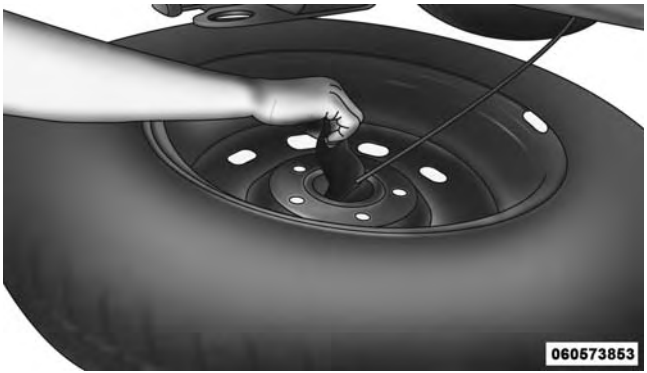
To Stow The Flat Or Spare

NOTE: Have the flat tire repaired or replaced immediately.

WARNING!

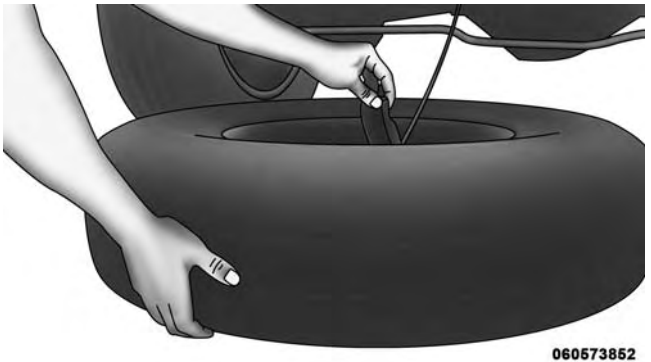
A loose tire thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure the occupants in the vehicle. Have the deflated (flat) tire repaired or replaced immediately.

1. Turn the wheel so that the valve stem is facing the ground and toward the rear of the vehicle for convenience in checking the spare tire inflation. Slide the wheel retainer through the center of the wheel.



Reinstalling The Retainer

2. Lift the spare tire with one hand to give clearance to tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and position it properly across the wheel opening.



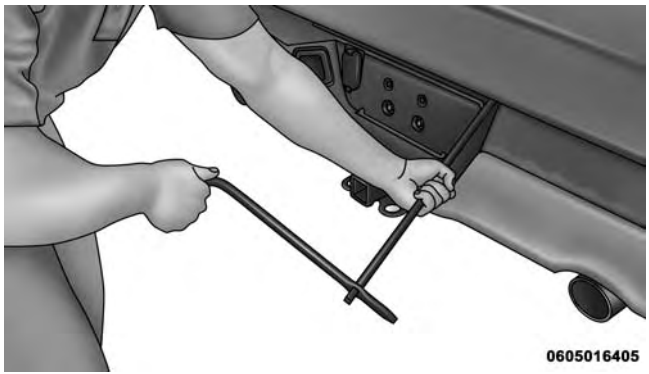
Pushing The Retainer Through The Center Of The Wheel And Positioning It

3. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack extension tube with the curved angle facing away from the vehicle. Insert the tube through the access hole between the lower tailgate and the top of the bumper and into the winch mechanism tube.

Wheel Wrench And Jack Extension Tube Assembled And In Position

4. Rotate the wheel wrench handle clockwise until the wheel is drawn into place against the underside of the vehicle. Continue to rotate until you feel the winch

mechanism slip, or click three or four times. It cannot be overtightened. Push against the tire several times to ensure it is firmly in place.

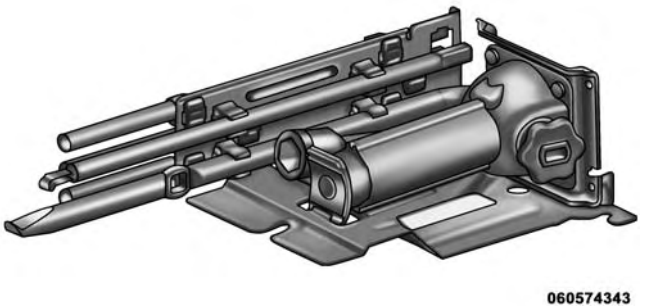


Rotating The Wheel Wrench Handle

NOTE: The winch mechanism is designed for use with the jack extension tube only. Use of an air wrench or other power tools is not recommended and can damage the winch.

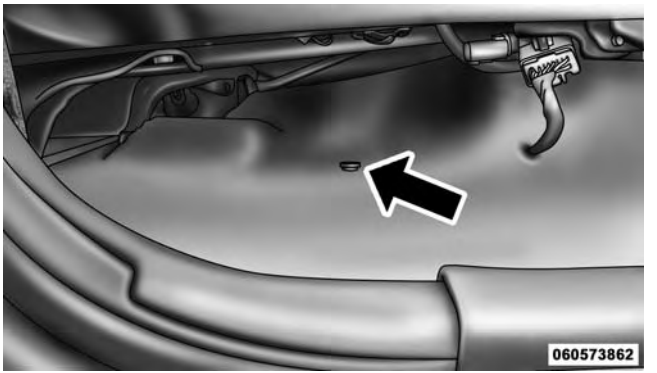
Reinstalling The Jack And Tools (2500 And 3500 Series)

1. Tighten the jack all the way down by turning the jack turn-screw counterclockwise until the jack is snug.
2. Position the jack and tools into bracket assembly. Make sure the lug wrench is under the jack near the jack turn-screw. Snap tools into bracket assembly clips. Install the jack into bracket assembly and turn the jack-turn-screw clockwise until jack is snug into bracket assembly.



Jack And Tools Bracket Assembly

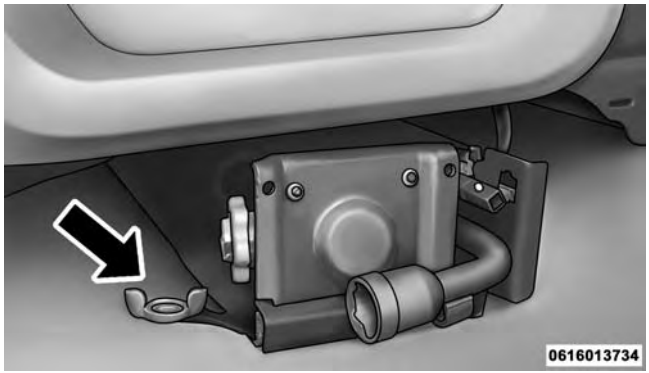
3. Place the jack and tool bracket assembly in the storage position holding the jack by the jack turn-screw, slip the jack and tools under the seat so that the bottom slot engages into the fastener on the floor.



Jack Hold Down Fastener

NOTE: Ensure that the jack and tool bracket assembly slides into the front hold down location.

4. Turn the wing bolt clockwise to secure to the floor pan. Reinstall the plastic cover.



Wing Bolt/Jack And Tools (2500/3500 Series)

Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

CAUTION!

Use extreme caution when removing the front and rear center caps. Damage can occur to the center cap and/or the wheel if screwdriver type tools are used. A pulling motion, not a pry off motion, is recommended to remove the caps.

For single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pull off notch and carefully pull the hub cap off with a back and forth motion.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a hook at one end that will fit in the pull off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull straight out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap, use the

flat blade on the end of the lug wrench to pull the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

CAUTION!

- **Use a pulling motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap; finish may occur.**
- **The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pull off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.**

You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pull off the wheel skins. Locate the hub cap pull notches (2 notches on each cap). Insert the flat tip completely and using a back and forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lug nut bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts of the underbody.

CAUTION!

Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.

JUMP-STARTING PROCEDURES

If your vehicle has a discharged battery it can be jump-started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump-starting can be dangerous if done improperly so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.

NOTE: When using a portable battery booster pack follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

WARNING!

Do not attempt jump-starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.

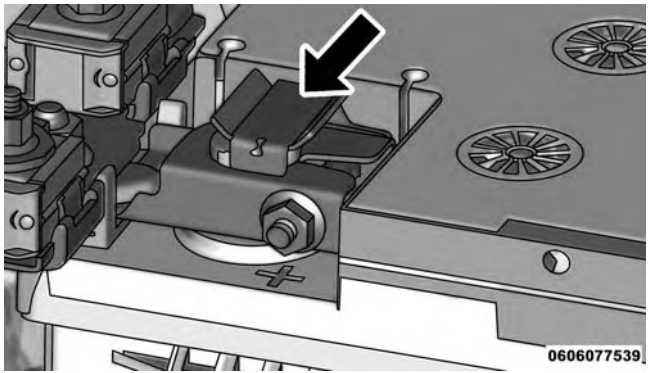
CAUTION!

Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

Preparations For Jump-Start

The battery in your vehicle is located in the front of the engine compartment, behind the left headlight assembly.

NOTE: The positive battery post is covered with a protective cap. Lift up on the cap to gain access to the positive battery post. Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.



Correct Positive Jumping Location

WARNING!

- **Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is ON. You can be injured by moving fan blades.**
- **Remove any metal jewelry such as rings, watch bands and bracelets that could make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.**
- **Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.**

(Continued)

1. Set the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition to LOCK.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.

3. If using another vehicle to jump-start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables reach, set the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

WARNING!

Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

Jump-Starting Procedure

WARNING!

Failure to follow this jump-starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.

Connecting The Jumper Cables

1. Connect the positive **(+)** end of the jumper cable to the positive **(+)** post of the discharged vehicle.

NOTE: Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.

2. Connect the opposite end of the positive **(+)** jumper cable to the positive **(+)** post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative **(-)** end of the jumper cable to the negative **(-)** post of the booster battery.
4. Connect the opposite end of the negative **(-)** jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of

the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.

WARNING!

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

CAUTION!

Do not connect jumper cable to any of the fuses on the positive battery terminal. The resulting electrical current will blow the fuse.

6. Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

Disconnecting The Jumper Cables

1. Disconnect the negative **(-)** end of the jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Disconnect the opposite end of the negative **(-)** jumper cable from the negative **(-)** post of the booster battery.
3. Disconnect the positive **(+)** end of the jumper cable from the positive **(+)** post of the booster battery.

4. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive **(+)** jumper cable from the positive **(+)** post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump-starting is required to start your vehicle you should have the battery and charging system inspected at your authorized dealer.

CAUTION!

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular devices, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud, sand, or snow, it can often be moved using a rocking motion. Turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around the front wheels. Then shift back and forth between DRIVE and REVERSE (with automatic transmission) or 2nd gear and REVERSE (with manual transmission), while gently pressing the accelerator. Use the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure that will maintain the rocking motion, without spinning the wheels or racing the engine.

NOTE: For trucks equipped with 8-speed automatic transmission: Shifts between DRIVE and REVERSE can only be achieved at wheel speeds of 5 mph (8 km/h) or less. Whenever the transmission remains in NEUTRAL for more than two seconds, you must press the brake pedal to engage DRIVE or REVERSE.

CAUTION!

Racing the engine or spinning the wheels may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of clutch or transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

NOTE: Push the "ESC Off" switch, to place the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system in "Partial Off" mode, before rocking the vehicle. Refer to "Electronic Brake Control" in "Starting And Operating" for further information. Once the vehicle has been freed, push the "ESC Off" switch again to restore "ESC On" mode.

WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause damage, or even failure, of the axle and tires. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

CAUTION!

- **When "rocking" a stuck vehicle by shifting between DRIVE/2nd gear and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).**

EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

NOTE: For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Do not use a chain for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.**
- **Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps may become disengaged, causing serious injury.**

CAUTION!

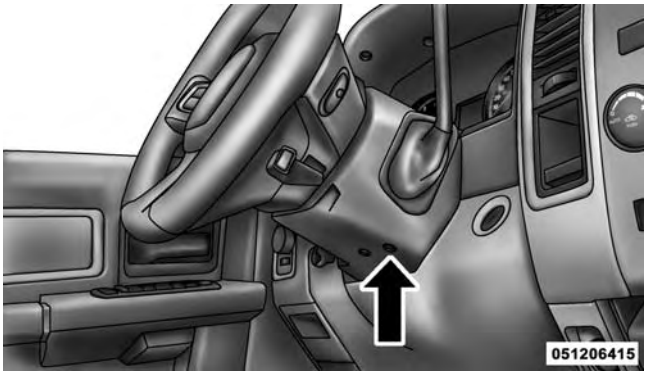
Tow hooks are for emergency use only to rescue a vehicle stranded off-road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE — 6-SPEED TRANSMISSION

If a malfunction occurs and the gear selector cannot be moved out of the PARK position, you can use one of the following procedures to temporarily move the gear selector:

Column Shifter — If Equipped

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Tilt the steering wheel to the full up position.
4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Insert a screwdriver or similar tool, into the access port (ringed circle) on the bottom of the steering column and push and hold the override release lever up.

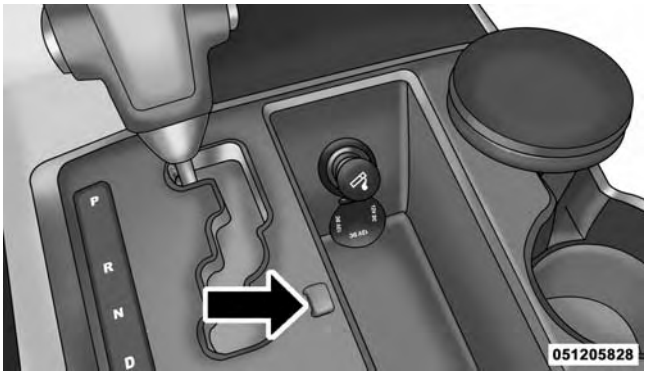


Gear Selector Override Access Port

6. Move the gear selector to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.

Center Console Shifter — If Equipped

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Using a small screwdriver or similar tool, remove the gear selector override access cover (located to the right of the gear selector).
4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Insert the screwdriver or similar tool into the access hole, and push and hold the override release lever down.



Gear Selector Override Access Cover

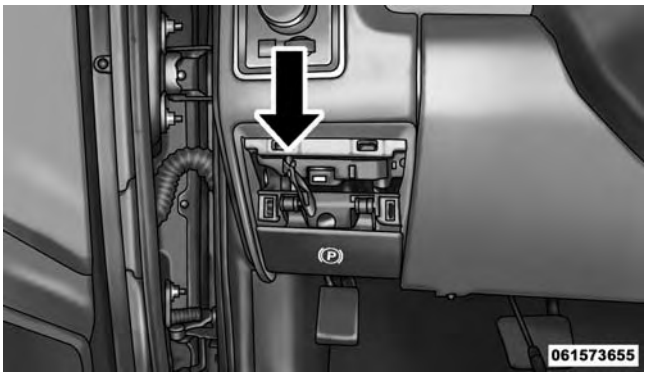
6. Move the gear selector to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.
8. Reinstall the gear selector override access cover.

MANUAL PARK RELEASE — 8 SPEED TRANSMISSION

WARNING!

Always secure your vehicle by fully applying the parking brake, before activating the Manual Park Release. Activating the Manual Park Release will allow your vehicle to roll away if it is not secured by the parking brake or by proper connection to a tow vehicle. Activating the Manual Park Release on an unsecured vehicle could lead to serious injury or death for those in or around the vehicle.

In order to push or tow the vehicle in cases where the transmission will not shift out of PARK (such as a dead battery), a Manual Park Release is available.



Manual Park Release Pull Strap

Follow these steps to activate the Manual Park Release:

1. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Using a small screwdriver or similar tool, remove the Manual Park Release access cover, which is just above the parking brake release handle, below and to the left of the steering column.
3. Using the screwdriver or similar tool, push the Manual Park Release lever locking tab (just below the middle of the lever) to the right.
4. While holding the locking tab in the disengaged position, pull the tether strap to rotate the lever rearward, until it locks in place pointing towards the driver's seat. Release the locking tab and verify that the Manual Park Release lever is locked in the released position.
5. The vehicle is now out of PARK and can be towed. Release the parking brake only when the vehicle is securely connected to a tow vehicle.

To Reset The Manual Park Release:

1. Push the locking tab to the right, to unlock the lever.
2. Rotate the Manual Park Release lever forward to its original position, until the locking tab snaps into place to secure the lever.
3. Pull gently on the tether strap to confirm that the lever is locked in its stowed position.
4. Re-install the access cover.

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service. If the transmission and drivetrain are operable, disabled vehicles may also be towed as described under "Recreational Towing" in the "Starting And Operating" section.

NOTE: Vehicles equipped with air suspension must be placed in Transport mode, before tying them down (from the body) on a trailer or flatbed truck. Refer to ″Air Suspension″ in ″Starting And Operating″ for more information. If the vehicle cannot be placed in Transport mode (for example, engine will not run), tie-downs must be fastened to the axles (not to the body). Failure to follow these instructions may cause fault codes to be set and/or cause loss of proper tie-down tension.

Towing Condition	Wheels OFF the Ground	2WD Models	4WD Models
Flat Tow	NONE	**If transmission is operable:** • Transmission in **NEUTRAL** • 30 mph (48 km/h) **max speed** • 15 miles (24 km) **max** distance (6–speed transmission) • 30 miles (48 km) **max** distance (8–speed transmission)	**See instructions in "Recreational Towing" under "Starting and Operating"** • Automatic Transmission in **PARK** • Manual Transmission in gear (**NOT** NEUTRAL) • Transfer Case in **NEUTRAL (N)** • Tow in **forward** direction
Wheel Lift or Dolly Tow	Front		**NOT ALLOWED**
	Rear	OK	**NOT ALLOWED**
Flatbed	**ALL**	**BEST METHOD**	**BEST METHOD**

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for this purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to main structural members of the vehicle, not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws regarding vehicles under tow must be observed.

If you must use the accessories (wipers, defrosters, etc.) while being towed, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN position, not the ACC position.

If the key fob is unavailable or the vehicle's battery is discharged, refer to "Manual Park Release" or "Gear Selector Override" in this section for instructions on shifting the automatic transmission out of PARK for towing.

CAUTION!

- **Do not use sling type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.**
- **When securing the vehicle to a flat bed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.**

Two-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** the ground using a flatbed.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transmission is operable, this vehicle may be towed (with rear wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- The transmission must be in NEUTRAL.
- The towing speed must not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- The towing distance must not exceed 15 miles (24 km) for 6-speed transmission, or 30 miles (48 km) for 8-speed transmission.

If the transmission is not operable, or the vehicle must be towed faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or farther than 15 miles (24 km) for 6-speed transmission, or 30 miles (48 km) for 8-speed transmission, tow with the rear wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed, or with the front wheels raised

and the rear wheels on a towing dolly, or (when using a suitable steering wheel stabilizer to hold the front wheels in the straight position) with the rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground.

CAUTION!

Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe engine and/or transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Four-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transfer case is operable, the vehicle may be towed (in the forward direction, with **ALL** wheels on the ground), **IF** the transfer case is in NEUTRAL (N) and the transmission is in **PARK** (for automatic transmissions) or in gear (NOT in NEUTRAL, for manual transmissions). Refer to "Recreational Towing" in "Starting And Operating" for further information and detailed instructions.

CAUTION!

- **Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used. Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.**
- **Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.**

MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 3.6L 804
- ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 5.7L 805
- ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 6.4L 806
- ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM (OBD II) . . .807
  - Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity 807
  - Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message 808
- EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS 809
- REPLACEMENT PARTS 810
- DEALER SERVICE 810
- MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES 811
  - Engine Oil 812
  - Engine Oil Filter 816
  - Engine Air Cleaner Filter 816
  - Accessory Drive Belt Inspection 820
  - Maintenance-Free Battery 821
  - Air Conditioner Maintenance 822
  - Front Driveshaft Lubrication — 2500/3500 (Four-Wheel Drive Models Only) 824

- Body Lubrication 825
- Windshield Wiper Blades 825
- Adding Washer Fluid 828
- Exhaust System 829
- Cooling System 832
- Brake System 839
- Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level 841
- Transfer Case 843
- Automatic Transmission 843
- Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion 847

■ FUSES 856

- Power Distribution Center 857

■ VEHICLE STORAGE 867

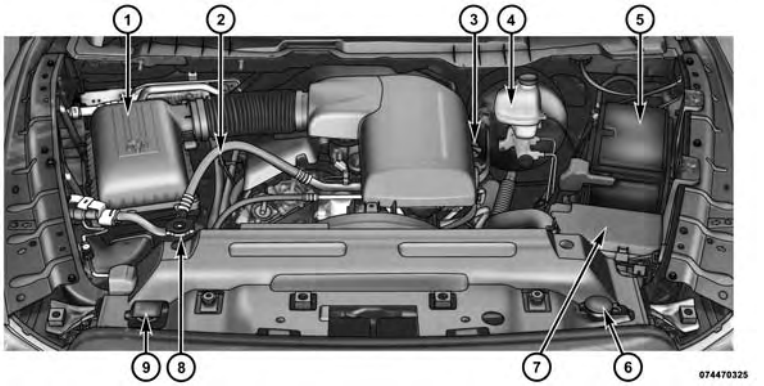
■ REPLACEMENT BULBS 868

■ BULB REPLACEMENT 869

- Base Quad / Premium Bi-Halogen: Low Beam Headlamp, High Beam Headlamp, Front Park And Turn — If Equipped 870
- Fog Lamps — If Equipped 872
- Rear Tail/Stop, Turn Signal And Backup Lamps 873
- Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) With Cargo Lamp 874
- Cab Top Clearance Lamps — If Equipped 876
- Rear Lamp Bar ID Marker (Dual Rear Wheels) — If Equipped. 878

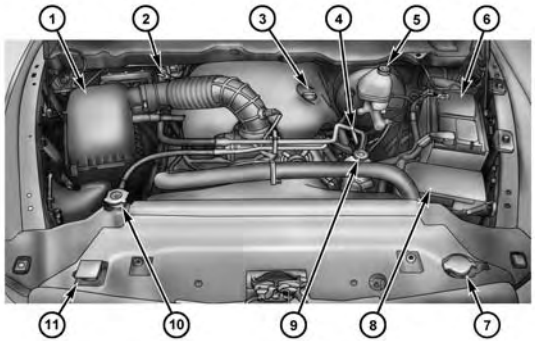
- □ Side Marker Lamps (Dual Rear Wheels) — If Equipped 879
- ■ FLUID CAPACITIES 880
- ■ FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS, AND GENUINE PARTS 882
- □ Engine 882
- □ Chassis 885

ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 3.6L



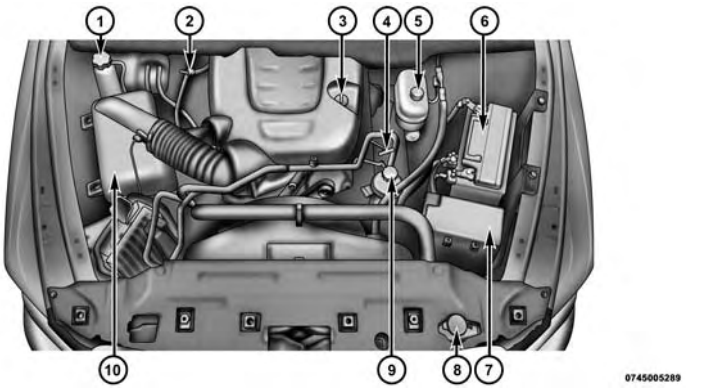
1 — Air Cleaner Filter
2 — Engine Oil Dipstick
3 — Engine Oil Fill
4 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
5 — Battery
6 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
7 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
8 — Coolant Pressure Cap
9 — Engine Coolant Reservoir

ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 5.7L



1 — Air Cleaner Filter
2 — Automatic Transmission Dipstick (6-Speed Trans Only)
3 — Engine Oil Fill
4 — Engine Oil Dipstick
5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
6 — Battery
7 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
8 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
9 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (2500/3500 Models Only)
10 — Coolant Pressure Cap
11 — Engine Coolant Reservoir

ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 6.4L



1 — Coolant Pressure Bottle
2 — Transmission Dipstick
3 — Engine Oil Fill
4 — Engine Oil Dipstick
5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir
6 — Battery
7 — Power Distribution Center (Fuses)
8 — Washer Solvent
9 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
10 — Air Cleaner Filter

ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM (OBD II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated onboard diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and automatic transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)." It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

- **Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.**
- **If the MIL is flashing, while the engine is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity

Your vehicle is required to have an Onboard Diagnostic system (OBD II) and a connection port to allow access to information related to the performance of your emissions controls. Authorized service technicians may need to

access this information to assist with the diagnosis and service of your vehicle and emissions system.

WARNING!

- **ONLY an authorized service technician should connect equipment to the OBD II connection port in order to diagnose or service your vehicle.**
- **If unauthorized equipment is connected to the OBD II connection port, such as a driver-behavior tracking device, it may:**
  - **Be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.**
  - **Access, or allow others to access, information stored in your vehicle systems, including personal information.**

For further information, refer to "Privacy Practices — If Equipped With Uconnect 8.4 Radio" and "Uconnect CyberSecurity" in "All About Uconnect Access" in your Owner's Manual Radio Supplement and "Cybersecurity" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel".

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message

If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a loose gascap indicator will display in the EVIC/DID telltale display area. Refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and push the SELECT button to turn off the message. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

A loose, improperly installed, or damaged fuel filler cap may also turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL).

EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an inspection of your vehicle's emissions control system. Failure to pass could prevent vehicle registration.

For states that require an Inspection and Maintenance (I/M), this check verifies the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" is functioning and is not on when the engine is running, and that the OBD II system is ready for testing.

Normally, the OBD II system will be ready. The OBD II system may **not** be ready if your vehicle was recently serviced, recently had a dead battery or a battery replacement. If the OBD II system should be determined not ready for the I/M test, your vehicle may fail the test.

Your vehicle has a simple ignition actuated test, which you can use prior to going to the test station. To check if your vehicle's OBD II system is ready, you must do the following:

1. Cycle the ignition switch to the ON position, but do not crank or start the engine.

NOTE: If you crank or start the engine, you will have to start this test over.

2. As soon as you cycle the ignition switch to the ON position, you will see the "Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL)" symbol come on as part of a normal bulb check.

3. Approximately 15 seconds later, one of two things will happen:

- The MIL will flash for about 10 seconds and then return to being fully illuminated until you turn OFF

the ignition or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **not ready** and you should **not** proceed to the I/M station.

- The MIL will not flash at all and will remain fully illuminated until you place the ignition in the off position or start the engine. This means that your vehicle's OBD II system is **ready** and you can proceed to the I/M station.

If your OBD II system is **not ready,** you should see your authorized dealer or repair facility. If your vehicle was recently serviced or had a battery failure or replacement, you may need to do nothing more than drive your vehicle as you normally would in order for your OBD II system to update. A recheck with the above test routine may then indicate that the system is **now ready**.

Regardless of whether your vehicle's OBD II system is ready or not, if the MIL is illuminated during normal vehicle operation you should have your vehicle serviced before going to the I/M station. The I/M station can fail your vehicle because the MIL is on with the engine running.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine MOPAR parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to ensure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-MOPAR parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

DEALER SERVICE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

Besides those maintenance items specified in the fixed "Maintenance Schedule", there are other components which may require servicing or replacement in the future.

CAUTION!

- **Failure to properly maintain your vehicle or perform repairs and service when necessary could result in more costly repairs, damage to other components or negatively impact vehicle performance. Immediately have potential malfunctions examined by an authorized dealer or qualified repair center.**
- **Your vehicle has been built with improved fluids that protect the performance and durability of your vehicle and also allow extended maintenance intervals. Do not use chemical flushes in these components as the chemicals can damage your engine,**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

transmission, or air conditioning. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. If a flush is needed because of component malfunction, use only the specified fluid for the flushing procedure.

Engine Oil

Checking Oil Level

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. Check the oil level at regular intervals, such as every fuel stop. The best time to check the engine oil level is about five minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Always maintain the oil level within the SAFE zone on the dipstick. Adding one quart of oil when the reading is at the bottom of the SAFE zone will result in a reading at the top of the safe zone on these engines.

CAUTION!

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.

Change Engine Oil

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance. Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for further information.

1500 Models Only

NOTE: Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 10,000 miles (16,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

2500 – 3500 Models Only

NOTE: Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

Engine Oil Selection

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends engine oils that are API Certified and meet the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-6395.

American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacturer only recommends API Certified engine oils.

This symbol certifies 0W-20, 5W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 and 10W-30 engine oils.

CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your engine oil as the chemicals can damage your engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Engine Oil Viscosity — 3.6L Engines (1500 Models Only)

MOPAR SAE 5W-20 engine oil approved to FCA Material Standard MS-6395 or equivalent Pennzoil or Shell Helix is recommended for all operating temperatures. This engine oil improves low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy.

The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your vehicle. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to "Engine Compartment" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

NOTE: MOPAR SAE 5W-30 engine oil approved to FCA Material Standard MS-6395 may be used when SAE 5W-20 engine oil meeting MS-6395 is not available.

Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade) — 5.7L Engine (1500/2500/3500 Models)

MOPAR SAE 5W-20 engine oil approved to FCA Material Standard MS-6395 such as Pennzoil, Shell Helix or equivalent is recommended for all operating temperatures. This engine oil improves low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy.

The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to the "Engine Compartment" illustration in this section.

NOTE: For 2500/3500 trucks with a 5.7L engine operating under a gross combined weight rating of 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg) or greater, SAE 5W-30 meeting FCA Material Standard MS-6395 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures.

Lubricants which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade) — 6.4L Engine

Use MOPAR SAE 0W-40 engine oil approved to FCA Material Standard MS-12633 such as Pennzoil Ultra equivalent is recommended for all operating temperatures.

The engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your engine. For information on engine oil filler cap location, refer to the "Engine Compartment" in this section.

Lubricants which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

Synthetic Engine Oils

You may use synthetic engine oils provided the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

Synthetic engine oils which do not have both the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

Disposing Of Used Engine Oil And Oil Filters

Care should be taken in disposing of used engine oil and oil filters from your vehicle. Used oil and oil filters, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact your authorized dealer, service station or governmental agency for advice on how and where used oil and oil filters can be safely discarded in your area.

Engine Oil Filter

The engine oil filter should be replaced with a new filter at every engine oil change.

Engine Oil Filter Selection

This manufacturer's engines have a full-flow type oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. MOPAR engine oil filters are a high quality oil filter and are recommended.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" in the "Maintenance Schedules" section for the proper maintenance intervals.

WARNING!

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter Selection

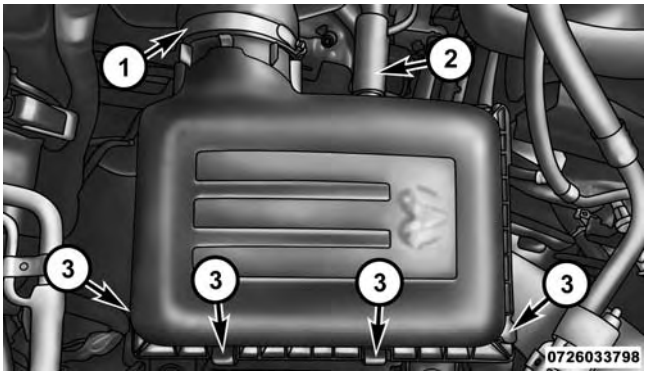
The quality of replacement engine air cleaner filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. MOPAR engine air cleaner filters are a high quality filter and are recommended.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter Inspection and Replacement

Inspect engine air cleaner filter for dirt and or debris, if you find evidence of either dirt or debris you should change your air cleaner filter.

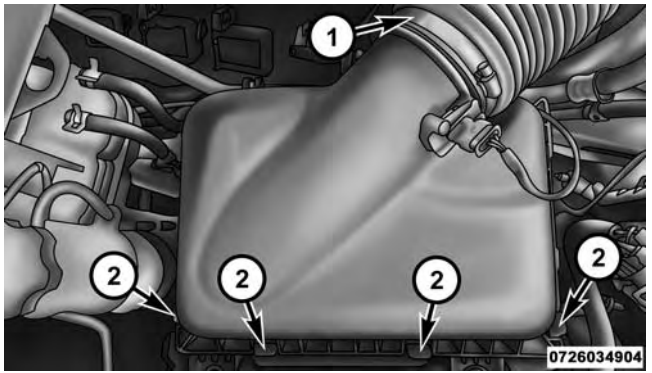
Engine Air Cleaner Filter Removal

1. Release the spring clips from the air cleaner cover.



3.6L/5.7L Air Cleaner Filter Cover

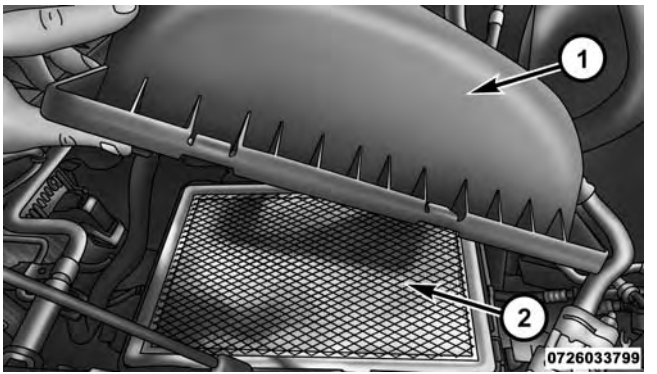
1 — Clean Air Hose Clamp
2 — Air Hose
3 — Spring Clips



6.4L Air Cleaner Filter Cover

1 — Clean Air Hose Clamp
2 — Spring Clips

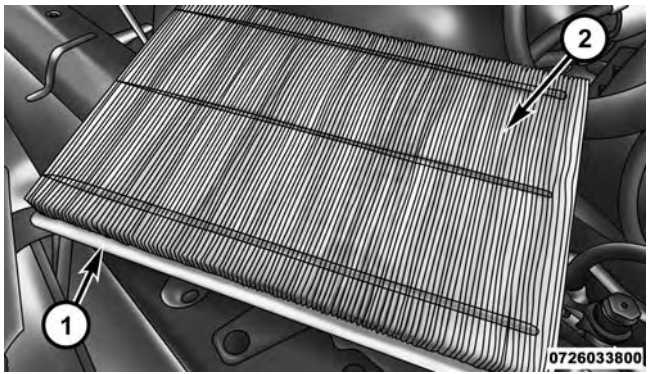
2. Lift the air cleaner cover to access the air cleaner filter.



Open Air Cleaner Filter Assembly

1 — Air Cleaner Cover
2 — Air Cleaner Filter

3. Remove the air cleaner filter element from the housing assembly.



Air Cleaner Filter

1 — Air Cleaner Filter
2 — Air Cleaner Filter Inspection Surface

Engine Air Cleaner Filter Installation

NOTE: Inspect and clean the housing if dirt or debris is present before replacing the air filter element.

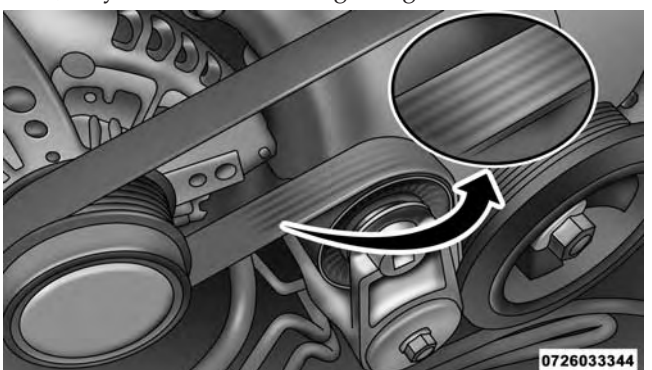
1. Install the air cleaner filter element into the housing assembly with the air cleaner filter inspection surface facing downward.
2. Install the air cleaner cover onto the housing assembly locating tabs.
3. Latch the spring clips and lock the air cleaner cover to the housing assembly.

Accessory Drive Belt Inspection

WARNING!

- **Do not attempt to inspect an accessory drive belt with vehicle running.**
- **When working near the radiator cooling fan, disconnect the fan motor lead. The fan is temperature controlled and can start at any time regardless of ignition switch position. You could be injured by the moving fan blades.**
- **You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.**

When inspecting accessory drive belts, small cracks that run across ribbed surface of belt from rib to rib, are considered normal. These are not a reason to replace belt. However, cracks running along a rib (not across) are not normal. Any belt with cracks running along a rib must be replaced. Also have the belt replaced if it has excessive wear, frayed cords or severe glazing.



Accessory Belt (Serpentine Belt)

Conditions that would require replacement:

- Rib chunking (one or more ribs has separated from belt body)
- Rib or belt wear
- Longitudinal belt cracking (cracks between two ribs)
- Belt slips
- "Groove jumping" (belt does not maintain correct position on pulley)
- Belt broken (note: identify and correct problem before new belt is installed)
- Noise (objectionable squeal, squeak, or rumble is heard or felt while drive belt is in operation)

Some conditions can be caused by a faulty component such as a belt pulley. Belt pulleys should be carefully inspected for damage and proper alignment.

Belt replacement on some models requires the use of special tools, we recommend having your vehicle serviced at an authorized dealer.

Maintenance-Free Battery

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

WARNING!

- **Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Do not allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin, or clothing. Do not lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water. Refer to**

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

"Jump-Starting Procedures" in "What To Do In Emergencies" for further information.

- **Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output greater than 12 Volts. Do not allow cable clamps to touch each other.**
- **Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

CAUTION!

- **It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

the negative post. Battery posts are marked positive (+) and negative (-) and are identified on the battery case. Cable clamps should be tight on the terminal posts and free of corrosion.

- **If a "fast charger" is used while the battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to the battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.**

Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an authorized dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

WARNING!

- **Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Warranty Information Book, located on the DVD, for further warranty information.**
- **The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced technician.**

CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your air conditioning system as the chemicals can damage your air conditioning components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling R134a — If Equipped

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-saving product. However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealer or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

NOTE: Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil and refrigerants.

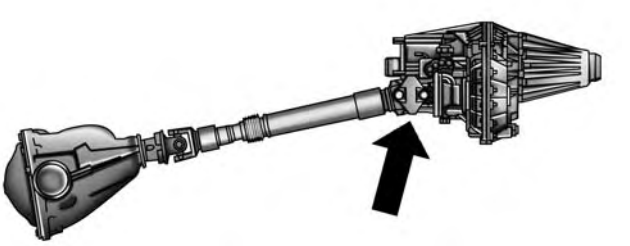
Refrigerant Recovery And Recycling R1234yf — If Equipped

R-1234yf Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluoolefine HFO that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-saving product with a low GWP (Global Warming Potential). However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by authorized dealer or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

NOTE: Use only manufacturer approved A/C system PAG compressor oil and refrigerants.

Front Driveshaft Lubrication — 2500/3500 (Four-Wheel Drive Models Only)

Lubricate the front driveshaft grease fitting at each oil change. The grease fitting is located at the rear of the front driveshaft, near the centering mechanism of double cardan joint. Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals. Use MOPAR Type MS-6560 (lithium-based grease), or equivalent.



Front Drive Shaft Double Cardan Joint

Body Lubrication

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, door hinge pivot points and rollers, liftgate, tailgate, decklid, sliding doors and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically with a lithium based grease, such as MOPAR Spray White Lube to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit; after lubricating excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should also be given to hood latching components to ensure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated.

The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the Fall and Spring. Apply a small amount of a high quality lubricant, such as MOPAR Lock Cylinder Lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

Windshield Wiper Blades

Clean the rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

NOTE: Life expectancy of wiper blades varies depending on geographical area and frequency of use. Poor performance of blades may be present with chattering, marks, water lines or wet spots. If any of these conditions are present, clean the wiper blades or replace as necessary.

The wiper blades and wiper arms should be inspected periodically, not just when wiper performance problems are experienced. This inspection should include the following points:

- Wear Or Uneven Edges
- Foreign Material
- Hardening Or Cracking
- Deformation Or Fatigue

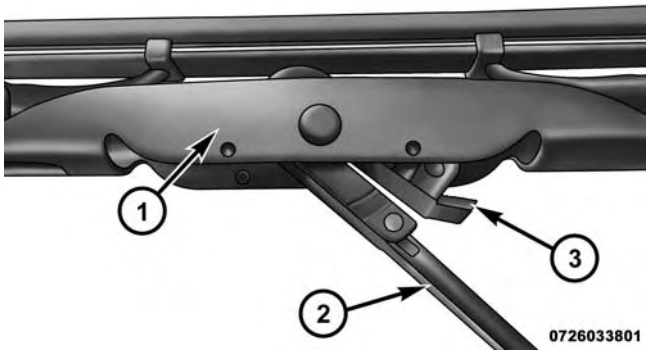
If a wiper blade or wiper arm is damaged, replace the affected wiper arm or blade with a new unit. Do not attempt to repair a wiper arm or blade that is damaged.

Wiper Blade Removal/Installation

CAUTION!

Do not allow the wiper arm to spring back against the glass without the wiper blade in place or the glass may be damaged.

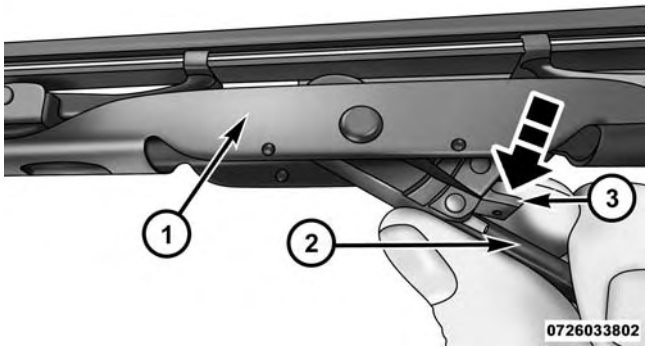
1. Lift the wiper arm to raise the wiper blade off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.



Wiper Blade With Release Tab In Locked Position

1 — Wiper Blade
2 — Wiper Arm
3 — Release Tab

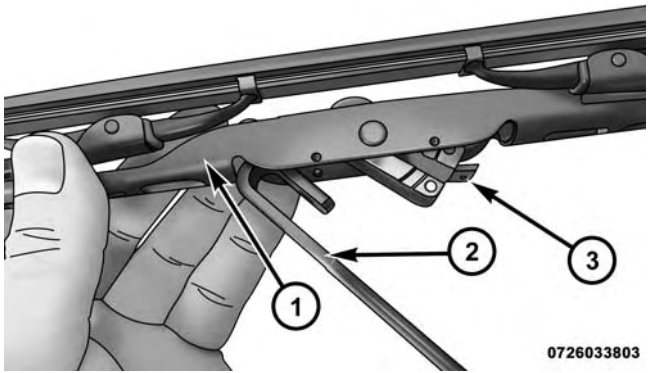
2. To disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm, press the release tab on the wiper blade and while holding the wiper arm with one hand, slide the wiper blade down towards the base of the wiper arm.



Wiper Blade With Release Tab In Unlocked Position

1 — Wiper Blade
2 — Wiper Arm
3 — Release Tab

3. With the wiper blade disengaged, remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm.



Wiper Blade Removed From Wiper Arm

1 — Wiper Blade
2 — Wiper Arm
3 — Release Tab

4. Gently lower the wiper arm onto the glass.

Installing The Front Wipers

1. Lift the wiper arm off of the glass, until the wiper arm is in the full up position.
2. Position the wiper blade near the hook on the tip of the wiper arm.
3. Insert the hook on the tip of the arm through the opening in the wiper blade.
4. Slide the wiper blade up into the hook on the wiper arm, latch engagement will be accompanied by an audible click.
5. Gently lower the wiper blade onto the glass.

Adding Washer Fluid

The fluid reservoir is located under the hood and should be checked for fluid level at regular intervals. Fill the

reservoir with windshield washer solvent only (not radiator antifreeze). When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe the wiper blades clean. This will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

WARNING!

Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.

After the engine has warmed up, operate the defroster for a few minutes to reduce the possibility of smearing or freezing the fluid on the cold windshield. Windshield washer solution used with water as directed on the container, aids cleaning action, reduces the freezing point to avoid line clogging, and is not harmful to paint or trim.

Exhaust System

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

If you notice a change in the sound of the exhaust system; or if the exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle; or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged; have an authorized technician inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, have the

exhaust system inspected each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

WARNING!

- **Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, refer to "Safety Tips/Exhaust Gas" in "Things To Know Before Starting Your Vehicle" for further information.**
- **A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.**

CAUTION!

- **The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emissions control device and may seriously reduce engine performance and cause serious damage to the engine.**
- **Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and vehicle.**

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may suggest severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and allow it to cool. Service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

To minimize the possibility of catalytic converter damage:

- Do not shut off the engine or interrupt the ignition, when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idle or malfunctioning operating conditions.

Cooling System

WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator is hot.

Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh coolant. Check the front of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or radiator for any accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the A/C condenser (if equipped) or the back of the radiator core.

Check the engine cooling system hoses for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts and tightness of the connection at the coolant recovery bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

With the engine at normal operating temperature (but not running), check the cooling system pressure cap for proper vacuum sealing by draining a small amount of engine coolant (antifreeze) from the radiator drain cock. The radiator drain cock is located in the lower radiator tank. If the cap is sealing properly, the engine coolant (antifreeze) will begin to drain from the coolant expansion bottle. DO NOT REMOVE THE COOLANT PRESSURE CAP WHEN THE COOLING SYSTEM IS HOT.

Cooling System — Drain Flush And Refill

If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty or contains a considerable amount of sediment, clean and flush with a reliable cooling system cleaner. Follow with a thorough rinsing to remove all deposits and chemicals. Properly dispose of old engine coolant (antifreeze).

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

Selection Of Coolant

Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

CAUTION!

- **Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any "globally compatible" coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**
- **Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional**

(Continued)

CAUTION! ***(Continued)***

rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the engine coolant and may plug the radiator.

- **This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.**

Adding Coolant

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant (OAT coolant conforming to MS.90032) that allows extended maintenance intervals. This engine coolant (antifreeze) can be used up to ten years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same engine coolant (OAT coolant conforming to MS.90032) throughout the life of your vehicle.

Please review these recommendations for using Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032. When adding engine coolant (antifreeze):

- We recommend using MOPAR Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology) that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032.
- Mix a minimum solution of 50% OAT engine coolant that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032 and distilled water. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below –34°F (–37°C) are anticipated. Please contact your authorized dealer for assistance.
- Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant

(antifreeze) solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

NOTE:

- It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.
- Some vehicles require special tools to add coolant properly. Failure to fill these systems properly could lead to severe internal engine damage. If any coolant is needed to be added to the system, please contact your local authorized dealer.
- Mixing engine coolant (antifreeze) types is not recommended and can result in cooling system damage. If HOAT and OAT coolant are mixed in an emergency, have a authorized dealer drain, flush, and refill with OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) as soon as possible.

Cooling System Pressure Cap

The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of engine coolant (antifreeze), and to ensure that the engine coolant (antifreeze) will return to the radiator from the coolant expansion bottle.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

WARNING!

- **Do not open hot engine cooling system. Never add engine coolant (antifreeze) when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.**
- **Do not use a pressure cap other than the one specified for your vehicle. Personal injury or engine damage may result.**

Disposal Of Used Engine Coolant

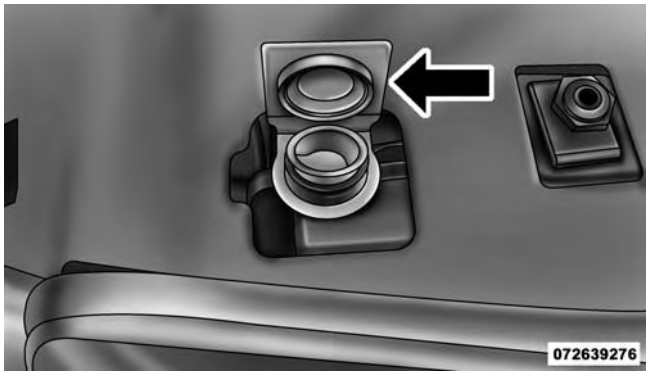
Used ethylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. To prevent ingestion by animals or children, do not store ethylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. If ingested by a child or pet, seek emergency assistance immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

Checking Coolant Level — 3.6L and 5.7L Engines

With the engine OFF and cold, the level of the engine coolant should be between the ADD and SAFE range on the dipstick.

To check the coolant level:

1. Open the coolant reservoir.



Opening The Coolant Reservoir

2. Lift and remove the plastic dipstick from the reservoir neck.

Coolant Reservoir Dipstick

3. Check the coolant level on the dipstick.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the radiator cap unless checking for engine coolant (antifreeze) freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant

of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month.

When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

Checking Coolant Level — 6.4L Engine

The level of the coolant in the pressurized coolant bottle should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" range on the bottle when the engine is cold.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the cap unless checking for coolant freeze point or replacing engine coolant (antifreeze). Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month. When additional engine coolant (antifreeze) is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

Points To Remember

NOTE: When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles/kilometers of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot engine coolant (antifreeze) to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

- Do not overfill the coolant expansion bottle.

- Check the coolant freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant expansion bottle. If engine coolant (antifreeze) needs to be added, the contents of the coolant expansion bottle must also be protected against freezing.
- If frequent engine coolant (antifreeze) additions are required, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.
- Maintain engine coolant (antifreeze) concentration at a minimum of 50% OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine which contains aluminum components.
- Make sure that the coolant expansion bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean.
- Do not change the thermostat for Summer or Winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory engine coolant (antifreeze) performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

Brake System

In order to assure brake system performance, all brake system components should be inspected periodically. Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

WARNING!

Riding the brakes can lead to brake failure and possibly a collision. Driving with your foot resting or riding on the brake pedal can result in abnormally

(Continued)

WARNING! *(Continued)*

high brake temperatures, excessive lining wear, and possible brake damage. You would not have your full braking capacity in an emergency.

Brake Fluid Level Check

The fluid level of the master cylinder should be checked when performing under the hood service or immediately if the brake system warning lamp indicates system failure.

The brake master cylinder has a translucent plastic reservoir. On the outboard side of the reservoir, there is a "MAX" dot and an "MIN" dot. The fluid level must be kept within these two dots. Do not add fluid above the MAX mark because leakage may occur at the cap.

With disc brakes the fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake linings wear. However, an unexpected drop in fluid level may be caused by a leak and a system check should be conducted.

Use only the manufacturer's recommended brake fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

WARNING!

- **Use only manufacturer's recommended brake fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. Using the wrong type of brake fluid can severely damage your brake system and/or impair its performance. The proper type of brake fluid for your vehicle is also identified on the**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

original factory installed hydraulic master cylinder reservoir.

- **To avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture, use only new brake fluid or fluid that has been in a tightly closed container. Keep the master cylinder reservoir cap secured at all times. Brake fluid in a open container absorbs moisture from the air resulting in a lower boiling point. This may cause it to boil unexpectedly during hard or prolonged braking, resulting in sudden brake failure. This could result in a collision.**
- **Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts, causing the brake fluid to catch fire. Brake fluid can also damage painted and vinyl surfaces, care should be taken to avoid its contact with these surfaces.**

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **Do not allow petroleum based fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Brake seal components could be damaged, causing partial or complete brake failure. This could result in a collision.**

Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level

For normal service, periodic fluid level checks are not required. When the vehicle is serviced for other reasons the exterior surfaces of the axle assembly should be inspected. If gear oil leakage is suspected inspect the fluid level. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. This inspection should be made with the vehicle in a level position.

For 1500 Model axles, the fluid level should be even with the bottom of the fill hole (within 1/4 in (6.4 mm) of edge of hole) for the FDU215 HD front axle and C235FE rear axle.

For all 2500/3500 Model axles, the fluid level should be 1/4 in ± 1/4 in (6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the 9.25 in front and 3/4 in ± 1/4 in (19 mm ± 6.4 mm) on 10.5 in rear axles. The 11.5 in rear axle level should be 1/4 in ± 1/4 in (6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole.

Drain And Refill

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

Lubricant Selection

Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

NOTE: The presence of water in the gear lubricant will result in corrosion and possible failure of differential components. Operation of the vehicle in water, as may be encountered in some off-highway types of service, will require draining and refilling the axle to avoid damage.

Limited-Slip Differentials

1500 Model rear axles equipped with a Limited Slip Differential require that 5 oz. (148 ml) MOPAR Limited Slip Additive be added to the gear lubricant. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information. The MOPAR Limited Slip Additive should be added to the gear lubricant whenever a fluid change is made to an axle equipped with a Limited Slip Differential.

2500/3500 Model axles **DO NOT REQUIRE** any limited slip oil additive (friction modifiers).

NOTE: When refilling an axle with a Limited Slip Differential, (which requires a Limited Slip Additive), the Limited Slip Additive should be added before the gear lubricant is added to insure proper additive fill.

Transfer Case

Drain And Refill

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

Lubricant Selection

Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in "Maintaining Your Vehicle" for further information.

Fluid Level Check

This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the filler plug hole with the vehicle in a level position.

Automatic Transmission

Selection Of Lubricant

It is important to use the proper transmission fluid to ensure optimum transmission performance and life. Use only the manufacturer's specified transmission fluid. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in this section for fluid specifications. It is important to maintain the transmission fluid at the correct level using the recommended fluid. No chemical flushes should be used in any transmission; only the approved lubricant should be used.

CAUTION!

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturer's recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

shudder, and will require more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" in this section for fluid specifications.

Special Additives

The manufacturer strongly recommends against using any special additives in the transmission. Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) is an engineered product and its performance may be impaired by supplemental additives. Therefore, do not add any fluid additives to the transmission. Avoid using transmission sealers as they may adversely affect seals.

CAUTION!

Do not use chemical flushes in your transmission as the chemicals can damage your transmission components. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Fluid Level Check — Eight-Speed Transmission

The fluid level is preset at the factory and does not require adjustment under normal operating conditions. Routine fluid level checks are not required, therefore the transmission has no dipstick. Your authorized dealer can check your transmission fluid level using special service tools.

If you notice fluid leakage or transmission malfunction, visit your authorized dealer immediately to have the transmission fluid level checked. Operating the vehicle

with an improper fluid level can cause severe transmission damage.

CAUTION!

If a transmission fluid leak occurs, visit your authorized dealer immediately. Severe transmission damage may occur. Your authorized dealer has the proper tools to adjust the fluid level accurately.

Fluid Level Check — Six-Speed Transmission

It is best to check the fluid level when the transmission is at normal operating temperature (170-180°F / 77-82°C). This normally occurs after at least 15 miles (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips. You can read the transmission sump temperature in the EVIC/DID screen (refer to "Electronic Vehicle Information Center [EVIC]" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" for further information).

Use the following procedure to check the transmission fluid level properly:

1. Monitor the transmission temperature using the EVIC/DID screen, and operate the vehicle as required to reach the normal operating temperature. If the transmission is not functioning properly, or the vehicle cannot be driven, see the NOTE and CAUTION below about checking the fluid level at colder temperatures.
2. Park the vehicle on level ground.
3. Run the engine at normal idle speed for at least 60 seconds, and leave the engine running for the rest of this procedure.
4. Fully apply the parking brake, and press the brake pedal.

5. Place the gear selector momentarily into each gear position (allowing time for the transmission to fully engage in each position), ending with the transmission in PARK.
6. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.
7. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level reading is only valid if there is a solid coating of oil on both sides of the dipstick. Note that the holes in the dipstick will be full of fluid if the actual level is at or above the hole. The fluid level should be between the "HOT" (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. If the fluid level is low, add fluid through the dipstick tube to bring it to the proper level. **Do not overfill.** Use ONLY the specified fluid (see "Fluids, Lubricants, And Genuine Parts" for fluid specifications). After adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

NOTE: If it is necessary to check the transmission **below** the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two "COLD" (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at 60-70°F / 16-21°C. Only use the COLD region of the dipstick as a rough reference when setting the fluid level after a transmission service or fluid change. Re-check the fluid level, and adjust as required, once the transmission reaches normal operating temperature.

CAUTION!

If the fluid temperature is below 50 °F (10 °C) it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading. Run the engine at idle, in PARK, to warm the fluid.

8. Reinsert the dipstick. Check for leaks. Release the parking brake.

NOTE: To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make sure that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

Fluid And Filter Changes — Eight-Speed Transmission

Under normal operating conditions, the fluid installed at the factory will provide satisfactory lubrication for the life of the vehicle.

Routine fluid and filter changes are not required. However, change the fluid and filter if the fluid becomes contaminated (with water, etc.), or if the transmission is disassembled for any reason.

Fluid And Filter Changes — Six Speed Transmission

Refer to the "Maintenance Schedule" for the proper maintenance intervals.

In addition, change the fluid and filter(s) if the fluid becomes contaminated (with water, etc.), or if the transmission is disassembled for any reason.

Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion

Protection Of Body And Paint From Corrosion

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme

hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse effect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

What Causes Corrosion?

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using MOPAR Car Wash, or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar, or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use MOPAR Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover to remove.
- Use a high quality cleaner wax, such as MOPAR Cleaner Wax to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

CAUTION!

- **Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder that will scratch metal and painted surfaces.**
- **Use of power washers exceeding 1,200 psi (8 274 kPa) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.**

Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels, and trunk be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to a collision or similar cause that destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.
- Use MOPAR Touch Up Paint on scratches as soon as possible. Your authorized dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.

NOTE: Many aftermarket wheel cleaners contain strong acids or strong alkaline additives that can harm the wheel surface.

CAUTION!

Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. These products and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, MOPAR Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels. Do not use any products on Dark Vapor or Black Satin Chrome Wheels. They will permanently

damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

CAUTION!

Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, MOPAR Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

NOTE: If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. Driving the vehicle and applying the brakes when stopping will reduce the risk of brake rotor corrosion.

Dark Vapor Or Black Satin Chrome Wheels

CAUTION!

If your vehicle is equipped with Dark Vapor or Black Satin Chrome wheels DO NOT USE wheel cleaners, abrasives or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. USE ONLY MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH. Used on a regular basis this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

Stain Repel Fabric Cleaning Procedure — If Equipped

Stain Repel seats may be cleaned in the following manner:

- Remove as much of the stain as possible by blotting with a clean, dry towel.

- Blot any remaining stain with a clean, damp towel.
- For tough stains, apply MOPAR Total Clean, or a mild soap solution to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- For grease stains, apply MOPAR Multi-Purpose Cleaner to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- Do not use any harsh solvents or any other form of protectants on Stain Repel products.

Interior Care

Use MOPAR Total Clean to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Use MOPAR Total Clean to clean vinyl upholstery.

MOPAR Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and MOPAR Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia-based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

WARNING!

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

CAUTION!

Direct contact of air fresheners, insect repellents, suntan lotions, or hand sanitizers to the plastic, painted, or decorated surfaces of the interior may cause permanent damage. Wipe away immediately.

CAUTION!

Damage caused by these type of products may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

CAUTION!

Do not use Alcohol and Alcohol-based and/or Keton based cleaning products to clean leather seats, as damage to the seat may result.

Cleaning Headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlights and fog lights that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other aggressive material to clean the lenses.

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with MOPAR Glass Cleaner, or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type

cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or windows equipped with radio antennas. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instrument that may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or cloth that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft cloth. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp cloth.
2. Dry with a soft cloth.

Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the vehicle to wash them. Dry with a soft cloth.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

WARNING!

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt

(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.).

Tri-Fold Soft Tonneau Cover Care

For cleaning and protecting the vinyl Tri-Fold Tonneau cover, use MOPAR Whitewall & Vinyl Top Cleaner and MOPAR Leather and Vinyl Conditioner/Protectant.

Spray-On Bedliner – If Equipped

During ownership, the shine and luster of the Spray-On Bedliner can fade from oxidation, road dirt, heavy-duty hauling and hard water stains. Weathering and UV exposure will lead to fading, dulling, and loss of gloss over time.

To help maintain the appearance of your Spray-On Bedliner, the manufacturer recommends you periodically rinse all loose dirt from your truck bed and clean your truck at least twice per year using the MOPAR Spray-On Bedliner Conditioner available at your local authorized dealer.

To Help Maintain The Appearance Of Your Spray-On Bedliner, Follow The Steps Below:

1. Rinse your truck bed out with water to remove any loose dirt and debris.
2. Mix a mild soap or detergent with water with a soft cloth or brush.
3. Rinse bedliner with water.
4. Once dry, apply a small amount of MOPAR Spray-On Bedliner Conditioner to a moist towel or sponge and wipe over the entire surface of the truck bedliner.

WARNING!

Do not use silicon-based protection products to clean your bedliner. Silicon-based products can become slippery and may result in personal injury.

Spray-On Bedliners are chemically-resistant to many different types of chemicals (including gasoline, oil, hydraulic fluids) for short periods of time. If a spill occurs on your Spray-On Bedliner, rinse the truck out as soon as possible to avoid permanent damage.

Repairing The Spray-On Bedliner

While extremely tough, it is possible to damage a Spray-On Bedliner. One common condition is when loading a heavy pallet and dragging that pallet across the floor of the bed. If a nail or sharp point is exposed under the weight of the pallet a scratch or tear is possible. While not covered by your new vehicle warranty, a cosmetic fix to cover the metal exposed by the scratch is required. To repair a tear or gouge, follow the directions provided in the MOPAR Quick Repair Kit.

FUSES

WARNING!

- **When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.**

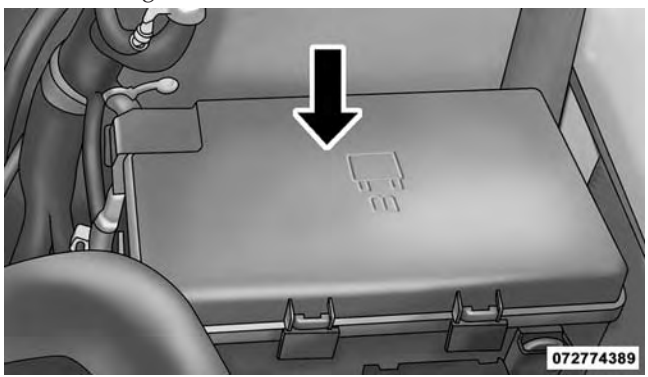
(Continued)

WARNING! ***(Continued)***

- **Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.**
- **If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.**
- **If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, gearbox system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.**

Power Distribution Center

The Power Distribution Center is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, micro fuses, relays, and circuit breakers. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



Power Distribution Center Location

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F01	80 Amp Black	–	Rad Fan Control Module – If Equipped
F03	60 Amp Yellow	–	Rad Fan – If Equipped
F05	40 Amp Green	–	Compressor for Air Suspension – If Equipped
F06	40 Amp Green	–	Antilock Brakes/Electronic Stability Control Pump
F07	40 Amp Green	–	Starter Solenoid
F08	20 Amp Blue (1500 LD/Cummins Diesel)	–	Emissions Diesel – If Equipped
F09	40 Amp Green (Special Services Vehicle & Cummins Diesel)	–	Diesel Fuel Heater – If Equipped
F10	40 Amp Green	–	Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F10	50 Amp Red	–	Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2 – If Equipped with Stop/Start
F11	30 Amp Pink	–	Integrated Trailer Brake Module – If Equipped
F12	40 Amp Green	–	Body Controller #3 / Power Locks
F13	40 Amp Green	–	Blower Motor
F14	40 Amp Green	–	Body Controller #4 / Interior Lighting
F16	30 Amp Pink	–	Smart Bar – If Equipped
F19	20 Amp Blue (1500 LD Diesel) 30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel)	–	SCR – If Equipped
F20	30 Amp Pink	–	Passenger Door Module
F21	30 Amp Pink	–	Drive Train Control Module

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F22	20 Amp Blue 30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel)	–	Engine Control Module
F23	30 Amp Pink	–	Body Controller #1 / Interior Lighting
F24	30 Amp Pink	–	Driver Door Module
F25	30 Amp Pink	–	Front Wiper
F26	30 Amp Pink	–	Antilock Brakes / Stability Control Module / Valves
F28	20 Amp Blue	–	Trailer Tow Backup Lights – If Equipped
F29	20 Amp Blue	–	Trailer Tow Parking Lights – If Equipped
F30	30 Amp Pink	–	Trailer Tow Receptacle
F31	30 Amp Pink (1500 LD Diesel)	–	Urea Heater Control – If Equipped
F32	–	–	Spare Fuse
F33	20 Amp Blue	–	Special Services Vehicle Only

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F34	30 Amp Pink	–	Vehicle System Interface Module #2 – If Equipped
F35	30 Amp Pink	–	Sunroof – If Equipped
F36	30 Amp Pink	–	Rear Defroster – If Equipped
F37	30 Amp Pink	–	Cummins Diesel Fuel Heater #2 – If Equipped
F38	30 Amp Pink	–	Power Inverter 115V AC – If Equipped
F39	20 Amp Blue	–	Power Outlet – Special Services Only
F41	–	10 Amp Red	Active Grill Shutter – If Equipped
F42	–	20 Amp Yellow	Horn
F44	–	10 Amp Red	Diagnostic Port
F46	–	10 Amp Red	Upfitter – If Equipped
F49	–	10 Amp Red	Instrument Panel Cluster (except for fleet vehicles)

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F50	–	20 Amp Yellow	Air Suspension Control Module – If Equipped
F51	–	10 Amp Red	Ignition Node Module / Keyless Ignition (Instrument Panel Cluster – Fleet Vehicles Only)
F52	–	5 Amp Tan	Battery Sensor
F53	–	20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Tow – Left Turn/Stop Lights
F54	–	20 Amp Yellow	Adjustable Pedals
F56	–	15 Amp Blue	Additional Diesel Content – If Equipped
F57	–	20 Amp Yellow	Transmission
F58	–	20 Amp Yellow	Spare Fuse
F59	–	10 Amp Red	SCR Relay – If Equipped
F60	–	15 Amp Blue	Underhood Lamp

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F61	–	10 Amp Red (1500 LD Diesel & Cummins Diesel)	PM Sensor – If Equipped
F62	–	10 Amp Red	Air Conditioning Clutch
F63	–	20 Amp Yellow	Ignition Coils (Gas), Urea Heater (Cummins Diesel)
F64	–	25 Amp Clear	Fuel Injectors / Powertrain
F65	–	–	Spare Fuse
F66	–	10 Amp Red	Sunroof / Passenger Window Switches / Rain Sensor
F67	–	10 Amp Red	CD / DVD / Bluetooth Hands-free Module – If Equipped
F69	–	15 Amp Blue	Mod SCR 12V (Cummins Diesel) – If Equipped
F70	–	30 Amp Green	Fuel Pump Motor
F71	–	25 Amp Clear	Amplifier

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F72	–	10 Amp Red	PCM – If Equipped
F73	–	20 Amp Yellow	Fuel Transfer Pump (HD Only) – If Equipped
F74	–	20 Amp Yellow (Gas Engine & 1500 LD Diesel)	Brake Vacuum Pump Gas/Diesel – If Equipped
F75	–	10 Amp Red	Coolant Temperature Valve Actuator
F76	–	10 Amp Red	Antilock Brakes / Electronic Stability Control
F77	–	10 Amp Red	Drivetrain Control Module/Front Axle Disconnect Module
F78	–	10 Amp Red	Engine Control Module / Electric Power Steering
F79	–	15 Amp Blue	Clearance Lights
F80	–	10 Amp Red	Universal Garage Door Opener / Compass
F81	–	20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Tow Right Turn / Stop Lights

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F82	–	10 Amp Red	Steering Column Control Module / Cruise Control
F84	–	15 Amp Blue	Switch Bank / Instrument Cluster
F85	–	10 Amp Red	Airbag Module
F86	–	10 Amp Red	Airbag Module
F87	–	10 Amp Red	Air Suspension – If Equipped / Trailer Tow / Steering Column Control Module
F88	–	15 Amp Blue	Instrument Panel Cluster
F90/F91	–	20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet (rear seats) Customer Selectable
F93	–	20 Amp Yellow	Cigar Lighter
F94	–	10 Amp Red	Shifter / Transfer Case Module
F95	–	10 Amp Red	Rear Camera / Park Assist
F96	–	10 Amp Red	Rear Seat Heater Switch

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F97	–	25 Amp Clear	Rear Heated Seats & Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped
F98	–	25 Amp Clear	Front Heated Seats – If Equipped
F99	–	10 Amp Red	Climate Control
F100	–	10 Amp Red	Upfitters – If Equipped
F101	–	15 Amp Blue	Electrochromatic Mirror / Smart High Beams – If Equipped
F104	–	20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlets (Instrument Panel / Center Console)

CAUTION!

- **When installing the power distribution center cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the power distribution center and possibly result in an electrical system failure.**
- **When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.**

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the negative cable from battery.
- Any time you store your vehicle or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

REPLACEMENT BULBS

All of the inside bulbs are brass or glass-wedge base. Aluminum base bulbs are not approved.

Interior Bulbs

	Bulb Number
Overhead Console Lamps	TS 212–9
Dome Lamp	7679
For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions.	

Exterior Bulbs

	Bulb Number
Base Quad Headlamp – Low Beam	H11LL
Base Quad Headlamp – High Beam	9005LL
Front Turn Signal Lamp (Base Quad Headlamp)	3157NA
Premium Bi Halogen Projector Headlamp - Low Beam	9005Sl+
Premium Bi Halogen Projector Headlamp - High Beam	9005LL
Front Turn Signal Lamp (Premium Headlamp)	LED (Serviced at Authorized Dealer)

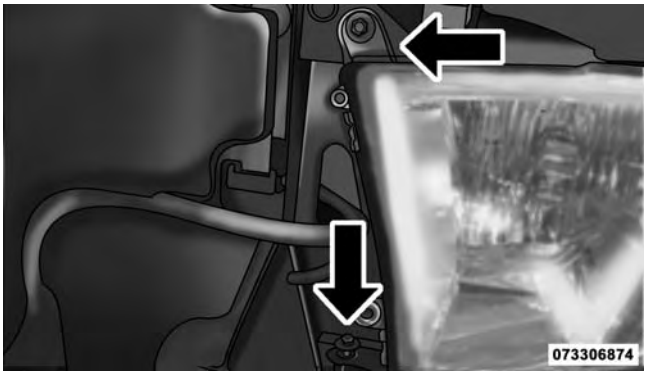
	Bulb Number
Fog Lamp (Horizontal shape)	9145
Fog Lamp (Vertical shape)	9006
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL)	921K
Rear Cargo Lamp	921
LED Center High Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL)/Cargo Lamp	LED (Serviced at Authorized Dealer)
Cab Roof Marker Lamps	194NA
Base Rear Tail/Turn and Stop Lamp	3157K
Premium Rear Tail/Turn and Stop Lamp	LED (Serviced at Authorized Dealer)
Premium Backup Lamp	7440/W21W
Rear Lamp Bar ID Marker Lamp	194
Side Marker Lamps (Dual Rear Wheels)	194
Backup Lamp	921
Rear License Plate Lamp	194

BULB REPLACEMENT

NOTE: Lens fogging can occur under certain atmospheric conditions. This will usually clear as atmospheric conditions change to allow the condensation to change back into a vapor. Turning the lamps on will usually accelerate the clearing process.

Base Quad / Premium Bi-Halogen: Low Beam Headlamp, High Beam Headlamp, Front Park And Turn — If Equipped

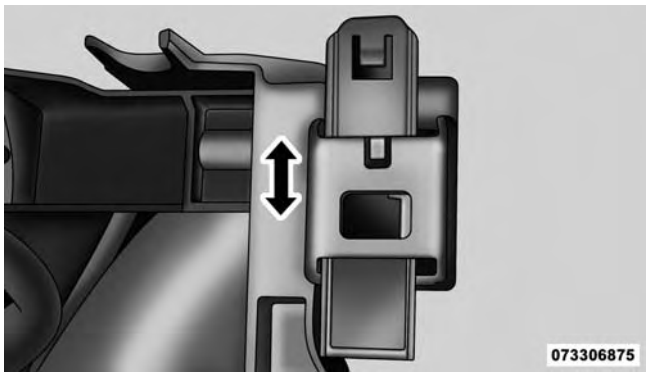
1. Open the hood.
2. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the six plastic push-in fasteners that secure the upper radiator seal to the grille support and both fender ledges.
4. Remove the two plastic push-in rivets that secure the upper radiator seal to the radiator.
5. Remove the upper radiator seal from the vehicle.
6. Remove the two headlamp assembly attachment screws.



Headlamp Assembly Attachment Screw Locations

7. Reach into the front wheel house ahead of the front wheel, remove the fastener, and lift the cover over the access hole in the front of the wheel house splash shield. Access to the rear of the lamp can be gained through this access hole.

8. Reach through the access hole of the wheel house splash shield and lift the slide lock upward far enough to disengage it from the lock post on the back of the front lamp unit housing.



Slide Lock

9. Remove the headlamp assembly. Grasp the outboard edge of the lamp and pull it straight forward to disengage the ball stud from the plastic grommet.
10. Disconnect the wiring harness connectors from the bulb socket.
11. Replace bulb(s) as necessary.

CAUTION!

- **Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.**
- **Always use the correct bulb size and type for replacement. An incorrect bulb size or type may overheat and cause damage to the lamp, the bulb socket, or the lamp wiring.**

NOTE: There are access covers over both headlamp bulb access holes in the quad front lamp unit housing (if equipped). These covers MUST be reinstalled after the bulb has been replaced.

Fog Lamps — If Equipped

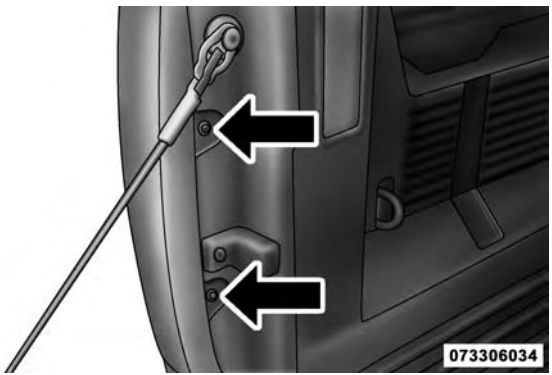
1. Reach under and behind the front bumper to access the back of the front fog lamp housing.
2. Disconnect the fog lamp wiring harness connector from the fog lamp bulb.
3. Rotate the bulb counterclockwise ¼ turn to unlock the bulb from the housing.
4. Pull the bulb straight out from the housing.

CAUTION!

Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.

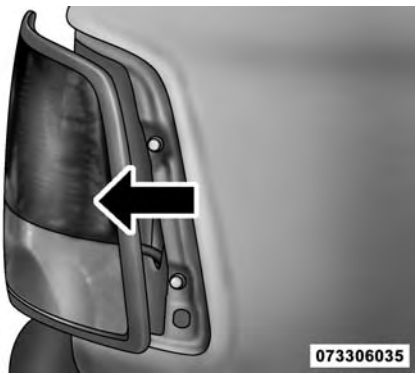
Rear Tail/Stop, Turn Signal And Backup Lamps

1. Remove the two screws that pass through the bed sheet metal.



Tail Lamp Screw Locations

2. Pull the outboard side of the lamp rearward far enough to unsnap the two receptacles on the outboard side of the lamp housing from the two plastic snap post retainers in the outer box side panel.



Pulling Out The Tail Lamp

3. Disconnect the wiring harness connectors from the bulb socket.
4. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise 1/4 turn to unlock it from the housing.

5. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

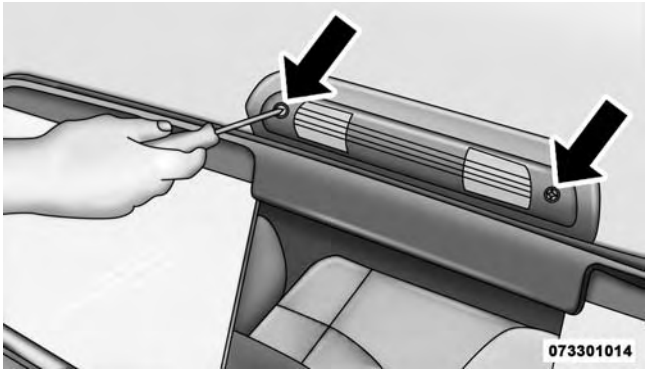
CAUTION!

Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.

6. Reverse the procedure to install the bulb and housing.

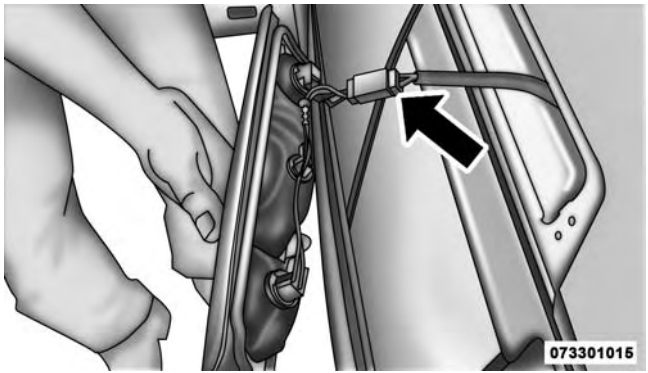
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) With Cargo Lamp

1. Remove the two screws holding the housing/lens to the body as shown.



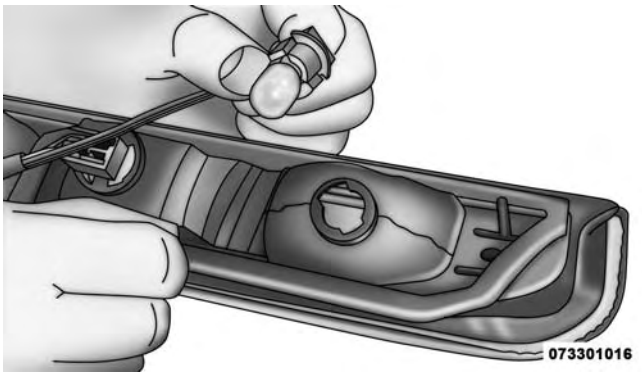
CHMSL Mounting Screw Locations

2. Separate the connector holding the housing and wiring harness to the body.



CHMSL Connector Location

3. Turn the desired bulb socket ¼ turn and remove the socket and bulb from housing.
4. Pull the desired bulb straight from the socket.



CHMSL Bulb And Socket

CAUTION!

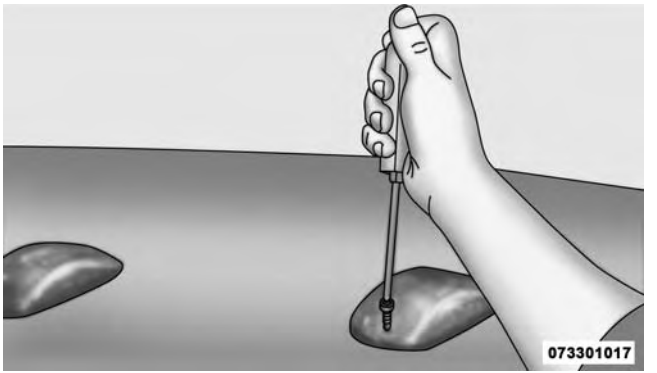
Do not contaminate the bulb glass by touching it with your fingers or by allowing it to contact other oily surfaces. Shortened bulb life will result.

- Outside Bulbs: Cargo Lamps
- Inside Bulb: Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp

5. Reverse the procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

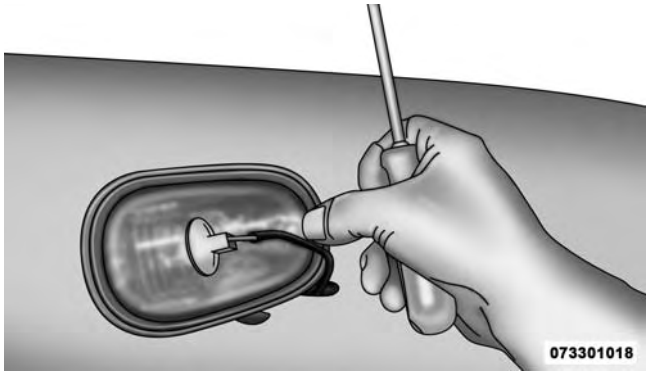
Cab Top Clearance Lamps — If Equipped

1. Remove the two screws from the top of the lamp.



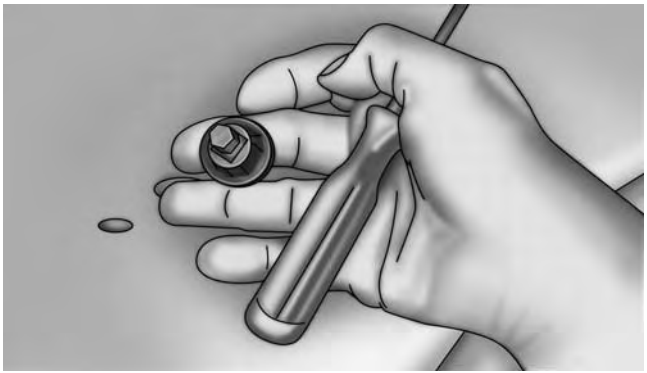
Removing Rear Screw From Clearance Lamp

2. Rotate the bulb socket ¼ turn and pull it from the lamp assembly.



Removing Bulb Socket From Clearance Lamp

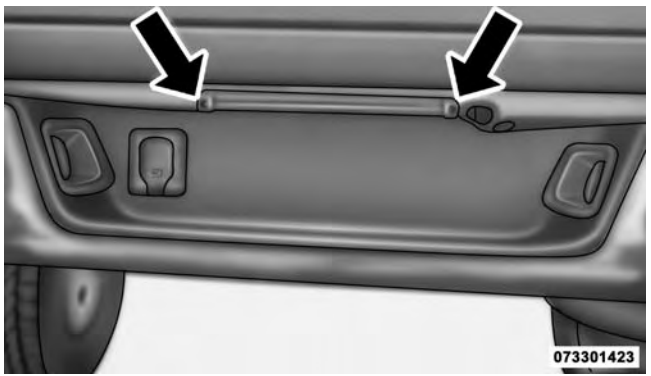
3. Pull the bulb straight from it's socket and replace.



Removing The Bulb From The Bulb Socket

Rear Lamp Bar ID Marker (Dual Rear Wheels) — If Equipped

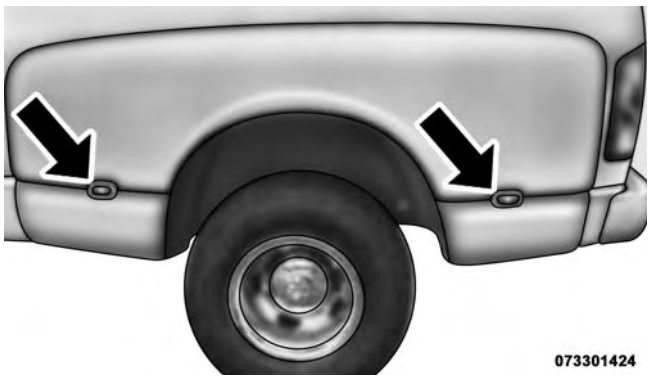
1. Loosen the two screws and the housing to gain access to the bulb sockets.



Screw Locations

2. Turn the socket ¼ turn counterclockwise to access the bulb.
3. Pull the bulb straight out from the socket.
4. Reverse the procedure for installation of the bulbs and housing.

Side Marker Lamps (Dual Rear Wheels) — If Equipped



Side Marker Lamp Locations

1. Push rearward on the side marker lamp assembly.
2. Pull the entire assembly from the fender.
3. Turn the socket ¼ turn counterclockwise and remove from assembly to access the bulb.
4. Pull the bulb straight out from socket.
5. Reverse the procedure for installation of the bulbs and housing.

FLUID CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
Fuel (Approximate)		
1500 Regular Cab Shortbed/Crew Quad Cab Models	26 Gallons	98 Liters
1500 Regular Cab Longbed/Crew Quad Cab Models (Optional)	32 Gallons	121 Liters
2500/3500 Shortbed Models	31 Gallons	117 Liters
2500/3500 Longbed Models	32 Gallons	121 Liters
Engine Oil With Filter		
3.6L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 5W-20, API Certified)	6 Quarts	5.6 Liters
5.7L Engines (We recommend you use SAE 5W-20, API Certified)	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters
5.7L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 5W-30, API Certified), for 2500/3500 trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating greater than 14,000 lbs (6 350 kg).	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters
6.4L Engines (We recommend you use SAE 0W-40 engine oil meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures.)	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters

	U.S.	Metric
Cooling System		
3.6L Engine (We recommend you use MOPAR Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032.)	13.7 Quarts	13 Liters
5.7L Engine – 1500 Models (We recommend you use MOPAR Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032.)	18.3 Quarts	17.3 Liters
5.7L Engine – 2500/3500 Models (We recommend you use MOPAR Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032.)	18.3 Quarts	17.3 Liters
6.4 Liter Engine – 2500/3500 Models (We recommend you use MOPAR Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula that meets the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS.90032.)	16.6 Quarts	15.7 Liters

FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS, AND GENUINE PARTS

Engine

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Coolant	We recommend you use MOPAR Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).
Engine Oil – 3.6L Engine	We recommend you use API Certified SAE 5W-20 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-6395 such as MOPAR, Pennzoil, and Shell Helix. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade. MOPAR SAE 5W-30 engine oil approved to FCA Material Standard MS-6395 may be used when SAE 5W-20 engine oil meeting MS-6395 is not available.
Engine Oil – 5.7L Engine	We recommend you use API Certified SAE 5W-20 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-6395 such as MOPAR, Pennzoil, and Shell Helix. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade.
Engine Oil – 5.7L Engine 2500/3500 trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **greater** than 14,000 lbs/(6,350 kg.)	We recommend you use API Certified SAE 5W-30 Engine Oil, meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-6395 such as MOPAR, Pennzoil, Shell Helix or equivalent. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for correct SAE grade.

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Oil – 6.4L	For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends full synthetic engine oils that meet the American Petroleum Institute (API) categories of SN. The manufacturer recommends the use of Pennzoil Ultra 0W-40 or equivalent MOPAR engine oil meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures.
Engine Oil Filter	We recommend you use MOPAR brand Engine Oil Filters.
Spark Plugs	We recommend you use MOPAR Spark Plugs.
Fuel Selection – 3.6L Engine	87 Octane, 0-15% Ethanol.
Fuel Selection – 3.6L Flex Fuel (E-85) Engine – If Equipped	87 Octane, Up To 85% Ethanol.
Fuel Selection – 5.7L/6.4L Engines	89 Octane Recommended - 87 Octane Acceptable, 0-15% Ethanol.

CAUTION!

- **Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any "globally compatible" coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

(Continued)

CAUTION! *(Continued)*

- **Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.**
- **This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.**

Chassis

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Automatic Transmission – Eight-Speed Automatic	Use only MOPAR ZF 8&9 Speed ATF Automatic Transmission Fluid, or equivalent. Failure to use the correct fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.
Automatic Transmission – Six-Speed Automatic with Gasoline Engine (For Diesel Engine see Diesel Supplement)	Use only ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid. Failure to use ATF+4 fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission. We recommend MOPAR ATF+4 fluid.
Transfer Case	We recommend you use MOPAR BW44–44 Transfer Case Fluid.
Front Axle – 1500 Four-Wheel Drive Models	We recommend you use MOPAR GL-5 Synthetic Axle Lubricant SAE 75W-85.

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Rear Axle – 1500 Models	We recommend you use MOPAR Synthetic Gear Lubricant SAE 75W-140 (MS-8985). Limited-Slip Rear Axles require the addition of 5 oz. (148 ml) MOPAR Limited Slip Additive (MS-10111).
Front and Rear Axle – 2500/3500 Models	We recommend you use SAE 75W-85 HD Ram GL-5 Synthetic Axle Lubricant. Limited slip additive is not required for Limited-Slip Rear Axles.
Brake Master Cylinder	We recommend you use MOPAR DOT 3. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable.
Power Steering Reservoir – 2500/3500 Models	We recommend you use MOPAR Power Steering Fluid +4 or MOPAR ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid.

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

CONTENTS

■ MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE 888
□ Maintenance Chart 890

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic oil change indicator system. The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

Based on engine operation conditions, the oil change indicator message will illuminate. This means that service is required for your vehicle. Operating conditions such as frequent short-trips, trailer tow, extremely hot or cold ambient temperatures, and E85 fuel usage will influence when the "Oil Change Required" message is displayed. Severe Operating Conditions can cause the change oil message to illuminate as early as 3,500 miles (5,600 km) since last reset. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

Your authorized dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If a scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your authorized dealer, the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" or "Driver Information Display (DID)" in "Understanding Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

1500 Models Only

NOTE: Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 10,000 miles (16,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

2500 – 3500 Models Only

NOTE: Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

Severe Duty All Models

NOTE: Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominantly at idle or only very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

Once A Month Or Before A Long Trip:

- Check engine oil level
- Check windshield washer fluid level
- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage. Rotate tires at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering (2500/3500 Models Only) and automatic transmission (six-speed only) and fill as needed
- Check function of all interior and exterior lights

Maintenance Chart

Required Maintenance

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules on the following pages for required maintenance.

At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:
• Change oil and filter.
• Rotate the tires. **Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.**
• Inspect battery and clean and tighten terminals as required.
• Inspect automatic transmission fluid if equipped with dipstick.

At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:
• Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, hoses and park brake.
• Inspect engine cooling system protection and hoses.
• Inspect exhaust system.
• Inspect engine air cleaner if using in dusty or off-road conditions.
• Lube the front drive shaft fitting (2500/3500 (4x4) models only).

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**
Or Kilometers:	**32,000**	**48,000**	**64,000**	**80,000**	**96,000**	**112,000**	**128,000**	**144,000**	**160,000**	**176,000**	**192,000**	**208,000**	**224,000**	**240,000**
Additional Inspections														
Inspect the CV/Universal joints.		X			X			X			X			X
Inspect front suspension, tie rod ends, and replace if necessary.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
1500 Models: Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing, change axle fluid.		X			X			X			X			X

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
2500/3500 Models: Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing, change axle fluid.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect the brake linings, replace as necessary.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Adjust parking brake as necessary.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect transfer case fluid.		X						X						X

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
Additional Maintenance														
Replace engine air filter.		X			X			X			X			X
Replace spark plugs. **									X					
Flush and replace the engine coolant at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) whichever comes first.									X					X
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (six-speed automatic only), if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.					X									

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) (six-speed automatic only).											X			
Inspect the transfer case fluid, change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.					X						X			
Change the transfer case fluid.											X			
Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.									X					

** The spark plug change interval is mileage based only, yearly intervals do not apply.

WARNING!

- **You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.**
- **Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.**

IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

CONTENTS

- SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE 899
  - Prepare For The Appointment. 899
  - Prepare A List 899
  - Be Reasonable With Requests 899
- IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE 899
  - FCA USA LLC Customer Center 900
  - FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center 900
  - In Mexico Contact 901
  - Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands 901
  - Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY). 901
  - Service Contract 901
- WARRANTY INFORMATION 903
- MOPAR PARTS 903
- REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS 903
  - In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.. 903
  - In Canada. 903
- PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS 904

■ DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES 905
□ Treadwear 905
□ Traction Grades 906
□ Temperature Grades 906

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

Prepare For The Appointment

If you are having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty. Discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many authorized dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the

facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealer name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

FCA USA LLC Customer Center

P.O. Box 21–8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004

Phone: (866) 726-4636

FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French

In Mexico Contact

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240

Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 5081-7568

Outside Mexico City: 1-800-505-1300

Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands

Customer Service Chrysler International Services LLC

P.O. Box 191857

San Juan 00919-1857

Tel.: (787) 782-5757

Fax: (787) 782-3345

Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada. For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited

Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

WARNING!

Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

WARRANTY INFORMATION

See the Warranty Information Booklet, located on the DVD, for the terms and provisions of FCA US LLC warranties applicable to this vehicle and market.

MOPAR PARTS

MOPAR fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from an authorized dealer. They are recommended for your vehicle in order to help keep the vehicle operating at its best.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your authorized dealer, and the manufacturer.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153), or go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety

defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/

PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.

NOTE: A street address is required when ordering manuals (no P.O. Boxes).

Service Manuals

These comprehensive Service Manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing FCA US LLC vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals

Diagnostic Procedure Manuals are filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations. These practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and drivability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

Owner's Manuals

These Owner's Manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific FCA US LLC vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call toll free at:

- **1-800-890-4038 (U.S.)**
- **1-800-387-1143 (Canada)**

Or

Visit us on the Worldwide Web at:

- www.techauthority.com

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart

significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature Grades

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.

WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

INDEX

Adding Engine Coolant (Antifreeze) 834
Adding Fuel 696
Additives, Fuel 691
Adjust
Down 149
Forward 148, 150
Rearward 148, 150
Up 149
Adjustable Pedals 190
Air Bag 70
Advance Front Air Bag 72
Air Bag Operation 73
Air Bag Warning Light 81
Enhanced Accident Response 80
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 83
Front Air Bag 70
If A Deployment Occurs 79
Knee Impact Bolsters 74
Maintaining Your Air Bag System 82
Side Air Bags 74
Transporting Pets 116
Air Bag Deployment 70
Air Bag Light 81, 119, 299
Air Bag Maintenance 82
Air Cleaner, Engine (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) 816
Air Conditioner Maintenance 822
Air Conditioning 424, 429
Air Conditioning Controls 424, 429
Air Conditioning, Operating Tips 444, 446
Air Conditioning Refrigerant 822, 823, 824
Air Conditioning System 424, 429, 443, 822
Air Pressure, Tires 661, 672
Air Suspension 556, 570
Alarm, Panic 29
Alarm (Security Alarm) 22, 302
Alarm System (Security Alarm) 22
Alterations/Modifications, Vehicle 7
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 833, 880

Disposal 836
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 632
Appearance Care 847
Ashtray 235
Assist, Hill Start 634
Auto Down Power Windows 49
Automatic Door Locks 41
Automatic Headlights 172
Automatic High Beams 175
Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) 443
Automatic Transmission 492, 847
Adding Fluid 845, 847
Fluid And Filter Changes 847
Fluid Change 847
Fluid Level Check 843, 844, 845
Fluid Type 843, 885
Shifting 501, 514
Special Additives 844
Axle Fluid 841, 885
Axle Lubrication 841

Back-Up Camera 212
Bar, Stabilizer/Sway System 580
Battery 304, 821
Charging System Light 304
Keyless Transmitter Replacement (RKE) 31
Belts, Seat 119
Body Builders Guide 6
Body Mechanism Lubrication 825
B-Pillar Location 654
Brake Assist System 634
Brake Control System, Electronic 631
Brake Fluid 840, 885
Brake System 630, 839
Fluid Check 840
Master Cylinder 840
Parking 628
Warning Light 300

Brake/Transmission Interlock 491
Bulb Replacement 868, 869
Bulbs, Light 121, 868

Cab Top Clearance Lights 876
Camera, Rear 212
Camper 271
Capacities, Fluid 880
Caps, Filler
  Oil (Engine) 814, 815
  Power Steering 627
  Radiator (Coolant Pressure) 835
Carbon Monoxide Warning 118, 692
Cargo Light 181
Car Washes 848
Center High Mounted Stop Light 874
Center Seat Storage Compartment 242
Certification Label 699
Chart, Tire Sizing 649
Check Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator Light) . . .809
Checking Your Vehicle For Safety 117
Checks, Safety 117
Child Restraint 84
Child Restraints
  Booster Seats 89
  Child Restraints 84
  Child Seat Installation 103, 105
  How To Stow An Unused ALR Seat Belt 101
  Infants And Child Restraints 87
  Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint 100
  Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt 102
  Locating The LATCH Anchorages 97
  Lower Anchors And Tethers For Children 92
  Older Children And Child Restraints 88
  Seating Positions 91
Cigar Lighter 235
Clean Air Gasoline 689

Cleaning
Wheels 850
Climate Control 424, 434
Automatic 434
Cold Weather Operation 482
Compact Disc (CD) Maintenance 421
Compact Spare Tire 666
Console, Overhead 215
Contract, Service 901
Coolant Pressure Cap (Radiator Cap) 835
Cooling System 832
Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) 834
Coolant Capacity 880
Coolant Level 832, 836, 838
Disposal Of Used Coolant 836
Drain, Flush, And Refill 833
Inspection 836, 838
Points To Remember 838
Pressure Cap 835
Radiator Cap 835
Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) 833, 880, 882
Corrosion Protection 847
Cruise Light 330, 332
Cupholders 237
Customer Assistance 899
Customer Programmable Features 399

Data Recorder, Event 83
Daytime Running Lights 174
Dealer Service 810
Defroster, Rear Window 248
Defroster, Windshield 119, 427
Delay (Intermittent) Wipers 184
Differential, Limited-Slip 601
Dipsticks
Power Steering 627
Disabled Vehicle Towing 796

Disposal
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 836
Door Ajar. 309
Door Ajar Light 309
Door Locks
Door Locks 38
Key Fob 38
Remote 38
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) 38
Door Locks, Automatic 41
Door Opener, Garage. 217
Driving
Off-Pavement 582
Off-Road 582
Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Standing Water 603
Dual Rear Wheels. 676, 741

E-85 Fuel 693
Electrical Power Outlets. 230
Electric Rear Window Defrost. 248
Electronically Shifted Transfer Case. . .529, 535, 543, 549
Electronic Brake Control System 631
Anti-Lock Brake System 632
Electronic Roll Mitigation 643
Traction Control System 638
Electronic Range Select (ERS) 499, 509, 521
Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) 191
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 638
Electronic Throttle Control Warning Light 306
Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) . .212, 334
Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) 334
Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) Setup Menu 334
EVIC Messages 334
Selectable Menu Items 340
Emergency Brake 628

Emergency, In Case Of
Freeing Vehicle When Stuck 789
Hazard Warning Flasher 739
Jump Starting 785
Tow Hooks 791
Emission Control System Maintenance 809
Engine. 805, 806
Air Cleaner 816
Block Heater 488
Break-In Recommendations 116
Compartment 804
Compartment Identification 804, 805, 806
Coolant (Antifreeze) 882
Exhaust Gas Caution 118, 692
Flooded, Starting 482
Fuel Requirements 687, 880
Jump Starting 785
Oil 812, 880, 882
Oil Filler Cap 814, 815
Oil Filter 816
Oil Selection 813, 880
Oil Synthetic 815
Overheating 739
Engine Oil Viscosity 814, 815
Engine Oil Viscosity Chart 814
Enhanced Accident Response Feature 80
Entry System, Illuminated 24
Ethanol 689, 693
Event Data Recorder 83
Exhaust Gas Caution. 118, 692
Exhaust System 118, 829
Exterior Lighting. 172
Exterior Lights 121

Filters
Air Cleaner 816
Engine Oil 816, 882
Engine Oil Disposal 815

10

Flashers
Turn Signal 121, 182, 329
Flat Tire Stowage 758, 779
Flexible Fuel Vehicles
Cruising Range 695
Engine Oil 695
Fuel Requirements 693, 694
Maintenance 696
Replacement Parts 695
Starting 695
Flooded Engine Starting 482
Fluid, Brake 885
Fluid Capacities 880
Fluid Leaks 121
Fluid Level Checks
Brake 840
Power Steering 627
Fluids, Lubricants And Genuine Parts 882
Fog Lights. 177, 319, 872
Fold Flat Load Floor 249
Four-Way Hazard Flasher 739
Four Wheel Drive 525
Freeing A Stuck Vehicle 789
Front Axle (Differential). 841
Fuel. 687
Adding 696
Additives 691
Clean Air 689
Ethanol 689, 693
Filler Cap (Gas Cap) 698
Gasoline 687
Light 317
Materials Added 691
Methanol 689
Octane Rating 687, 882
Requirements 687, 880
Tank Capacity 880
Fuel, Flexible 693

Fuses 856

Garage Door Opener (HomeLink) 217, 224
Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) 698, 808
Gasoline, Clean Air 689
Gasoline (Fuel) 687
Gasoline, Reformulated 689
Gear Ranges 502, 515
Gear Select Lever Override 792
General Information 686
Glass Cleaning 853
Grocery Bag Retainer. 247
Gross Axle Weight Rating 702
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. 701
Guide, Body Builders 6
GVWR. 699

Hazard
  Driving Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Standing Water 603
Hazard Warning Flasher 739
Headlights 870
  Automatic 172
  Cleaning 853
  High Beam 183
  High Beam/Low Beam Select Switch 183
  Passing 183
  Switch 172
Head Restraints 161
Heated Mirrors 144, 248
Heater. 424, 429
Heater, Engine Block 488
High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer) Switch 183
Hill Descent Control 644
Hill Descent Control Indicator 644
Hill Start Assist. 634

Hitches
Trailer Towing 709
Hoisting. 784
HomeLink (Garage Door Opener). 217
Hood Release 169
Hub Caps. 783

Ignition 16
Key 12, 16
Ignition Key Removal 16
Illuminated Entry 24
Immobilizer (Sentry Key) 19
Inflation Pressure Tires 672
Information Center, Vehicle 334, 355
Inside Rearview Mirror 130, 131, 138
Instrument Cluster. 291, 303, 329
Instrument Panel And Controls 290
Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning 854
Integrated Trailer Brake Controls 714
Interior Appearance Care. 852
Interior Lights 178
Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers). 184
Introduction 4
Inverter Outlet (115V) 235

Jack Location 743, 763
Jump Starting 785

Key Fob
Programming Additional Key Fobs 21
Programming Additional Transmitters 21
Key-In Reminder 18
Keyless Enter-N-Go 43, 480
Lock The Vehicle's Doors 389, 409
Passive Entry 43
Passive Entry Programming 43, 389, 409
Keyless Entry System 25
Key, Replacement 20

Keys 12
Key, Sentry (Immobilizer) 19

Lane Change And Turn Signals 182
Lane Change Assist 183
Lap/Shoulder Belts 55
Latches 121
Lead Free Gasoline 687
Leaks, Fluid 121
Life Of Tires 669
Light Bulbs 121, 868
Lights 121, 171
  Air Bag 81, 119, 299
  Automatic Headlights 172
  Brake Assist Warning 642
  Brake Warning 300
  Bulb Replacement 869
  Cap Top Clearance 876
  Cargo 181
  Center Mounted Stop 874
  Courtesy/Reading 179, 181, 215
  Cruise 330, 332
  Daytime Running 174
  Engine Temperature Warning 303
  Exterior 121
  Fog 177, 319, 872
  Four-Wheel Drive Indicator 529
  Hazard Warning Flasher 739
  Headlights 172
  High Beam 183
  High Beam/Low Beam Select 183
  Hill Descent Control Indicator 644
  Illuminated Entry 24
  Interior 178, 179, 181, 215
  Low Fuel 317
  Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 310
  Park 328, 330
  Passing 183

Seat Belt Reminder 298
Security Alarm 302
Service 868, 869
Side Marker 879
Tire Pressure Monitoring (TPMS) 314, 677
Traction Control 642
Transfer Case 529
Turn Signal 121, 182, 329, 870, 873
Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) . . .303, 329
Limited-Slip Differential 601, 842
Loading Vehicle 699
Tires 654
Locks 38
Automatic Door 41
Child Protection 42
Door 38
Power Door 40
Low Tire Pressure System 677
Lubrication, Body 825
Lug Nuts 740, 741

Maintenance Free Battery 821
Maintenance Procedures 811
Maintenance Schedule 888
Malfunction Indicator Light (Check Engine) . . .310, 809
Manual, Service 904
Manual Transmission
Fluid Level Check 843
Lubricant Selection 885
Memory Seat 164
Methanol 689
Mirrors 130
Electric Powered 143
Heated 144
Memory 164
Outside 138
Rearview 130, 131, 138
Trailer Towing 144

Modifications/Alterations, Vehicle 7
Monitor, Tire Pressure System 677
MOPAR Parts. 810, 903
MTBE/ETBE 689
Multi-Function Control Lever 182

Navigation System (Uconnect GPS). 212
New Vehicle Break-In Period 116

Occupant Restraints 52
Octane Rating, Gasoline (Fuel) 687
Off-Pavement Driving (Off-Road). 582, 605
Off-Road Driving (Off-Pavement). 582, 605
Oil, Engine 812, 882
  Capacity 880
  Change Interval 812
  Dipstick 812
  Disposal 815
  Filter 816, 882
  Filter Disposal 815
  Identification Logo 813
  Pressure Warning Light 305, 308
  Recommendation 813, 880
  Synthetic 815
  Viscosity 814, 815, 880
Oil Filter, Change 816
Oil Filter, Selection 816
Oil Pressure Light. 305, 308
Onboard Diagnostic System 807
Operating Precautions 807
Operator Manual (Owner's Manual) 4
Outside Rearview Mirrors 138
Overdrive 511, 522
Overdrive OFF Switch. 511, 522
Overhead Console. 215
Overheating, Engine 739
Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) 4, 904

Paint Care 847
Panic Alarm 29
Parking Brake 628
ParkSense System, Rear 195, 203
Passing Light 183
Passive Entry 43
Pedals, Adjustable 190
Personalized Menu Bar 447
Personal Settings 348, 374
Pets 116
Pickup Box 254, 257, 275
Placard, Tire And Loading Information 655
Power
  Distribution Center (Fuses) 857
  Door Locks 40
  Mirrors 143
  Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) 230, 235
  Seats 148
  Sliding Rear Window 248
  Steering 625, 626, 627
  Sunroof 226
  Windows 48
Power Seats
  Down 149
  Forward 148, 150
  Rearward 148, 150
  Recline 149
  Tilt 149
  Up 149
Power Steering Fluid 885
Pregnant Women And Seat Belts 66
Pretensioners
  Seat Belts 66
Programmable Electronic Features 348, 374
Programming Transmitters (Remote Keyless Entry) . .25

Radial Ply Tires 662
Radiator Cap (Coolant Pressure Cap) 832, 835

Radio Frequency
General Information 19, 21, 34, 38, 47
Radio Operation 422
Radio (Sound Systems) 418
Rain Sensitive Wiper System 186
Ramp Travel Index 583
Rear Axle (Differential) 841
Rear Cargo Area Utility Rails 269
Rear ParkSense System 195, 203
Rear Seat, Folding 158, 159
Rear Window Features 248
Rear Window, Sliding 249
Reclining Rear Seats 157
Recorder, Event Data 83
Recreational Towing 727
Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 730
Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) 733
Reformulated Gasoline 689
Refrigerant. 823, 824
Reminder, Seat Belt. 54
Remote Control
Starting System 34
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE). 25, 27
Programming Additional Key Fobs 21
Programming Additional Transmitters 21
Remote Sound System (Radio) Controls 420
Remote Starting
Uconnect Customer Programmable Features . .392, 412
Uconnect Settings 392, 412
Remote Starting System. 34
Replacement Bulbs 868
Replacement Keys 20
Replacement Parts. 810
Replacement Tires. 670
Reporting Safety Defects 903
Restraint, Head. 161
Restraints, Child. 84
Restraints, Occupant 52

Rotation, Tires 674

Safety Checks Inside Vehicle. 119
Safety Checks Outside Vehicle 121
Safety Defects, Reporting 903
Safety, Exhaust Gas 118
Safety Information, Tire 648
Safety Tips 117
Schedule, Maintenance 888
Seat Belt
  Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage 60
  Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) 67
  Energy Management Feature 67
  Lap/Shoulder Belt Operation 58
  Lap/Shoulder Belts 55
  Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting 60
  Pregnant Women 66
  Seat Belt Extender 65
  Seat Belt Pretensioner 66
  Seat Belt Reminder 54
  Seat Belt System 52
Seat Belt Maintenance 854
Seat Belt Reminder 54
Seat Belts. 53, 119
  Adjustable Shoulder Belt 60
  Adjustable Upper Shoulder Anchorage 60
  Child Restraint 84
  Extender 65
  Front Seat 53, 55, 58
  Inspection 119
  Operating Instructions 58
  Pregnant Women 66
  Pretensioners 66
  Rear Seat 55
  Reminder 298
  Untwisting Procedure 60
Seats 147, 148, 150, 156
  Adjustment 147, 148, 150

Easy Entry 168
Folding Floor 249
Memory 164
Power 148
Rear Folding 158, 159
Reclining Rear 157
Security Alarm. 22, 302
Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze) 882
SENTRY KEY
Key Programming 21
Sentry Key (Immobilizer) 19
Sentry Key Replacement 20
Service Assistance 899
Service Contract 901
Service Manuals 904
Settings, Personal 348, 374
Shifting 489
Automatic Transmission 492, 501, 514
Transfer Case 528
Transfer Case, Shifting Into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 730
Transfer Case, Shifting Out Of Transfer Case Neutral (N) 733
Shift Lever Override 792
Shoulder Belts 55
Signals, Turn 121, 182, 329
Sliding Rear Window
Power 248
Snow Chains (Tire Chains). 672
Snow Plow. 722
Snow Tires 664
Spare Tire 665, 666, 667
Spark Plugs 882
Speed Control
Accel/Decel 194
Cancel 193
Resume 193
Speed Control (Cruise Control). 191

Stabilizer/Sway Bar System 580
Starting 34, 479
Automatic Transmission 480
Cold Weather 482
Engine Fails To Start 482
Remote 34
Starting Procedures (Gas Engines) 479
Steering
Power 625, 626, 627
Wheel, Heated 188
Wheel, Tilt 187
Steering Wheel Audio Controls 420
Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls . . .420
Storage Compartment, Center Seat 242
Storage, Vehicle 445, 867
Storing Your Vehicle 867
Sun Roof 226
Supplemental Restraint System - Air Bag 70
Supplemental Tire Pressure Information 672
Suspension, Air 556, 570
Sway Control, Trailer 644
Synthetic Engine Oil 815
System, Remote Starting 34

Tailgate 271
Temperature Control, Automatic (ATC) 443
Tilt
Down 149
Up 149
Tilt Steering Column 187
Tip Start 480
Tire And Loading Information Placard 654, 655, 672
Tire Markings 648
Tires 121, 659, 665, 666, 905
Aging (Life Of Tires) 669
Air Pressure 659
Chains 672
Compact Spare 666

Dual 676, 741
General Information 659, 665, 666
High Speed 662
Inflation Pressures 661
Life Of Tires 669
Load Capacity 654, 655
Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) 677
Pressure Warning Light 314
Quality Grading 905
Radial 662
Replacement 670
Rotation 674
Safety 648, 659
Sizes 649
Snow Tires 664
Spare Tire 665, 666, 667
Spinning 668
Tread Wear Indicators 668
Tire Safety Information 648
Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight 710
Tonneau Cover 855
Tonneau Cover Cleaning 855
Torque Converter Clutch 513, 524
Tow Hooks, Emergency 791
Towing 701, 796
Disabled Vehicle 796
Guide 710
Recreational 727
Weight 710
Towing Vehicle Behind A Motorhome 727
Traction 602
Traction Control 638
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) 644
Trailer Towing 701
Cooling System Tips 722
Hitches 709
Minimum Requirements 711
Mirrors 144

Trailer And Tongue Weight 710
Wiring 719
Trailer Towing Guide. 710
Trailer Weight. 710
Transfer Case 843
Electronically Shifted 529, 535, 543, 549
Fluid 885
Transmission 492
Automatic 492, 501, 514, 843
Fluid 885
Maintenance 843
Shifting 489
Transmitter Battery Service (Remote Keyless Entry) . .31
Transmitter Programming (Remote Keyless Entry) . . .25
Transmitter, Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) 25
Transporting Pets 116
Tread Wear Indicators 668
Turn Signals 182, 329, 870, 873
Uconnect
Customer Programmable Features 392, 412
Operation 418
Uconnect Settings 381
Uconnect Settings 392, 412
Uconnect 8.4A/8.4AN Voice Recognition
Additional Information 470
Do Not Disturb 468
Siri Eyes Free 468
Uconnect 8.4 Settings
Customer Programmable Features — Units 402
Uconnect Access
Vehicle Health Alert 462
Uconnect Settings
Customer Programmable Features 43, 389, 409
Passive Entry Programming 43, 389, 409
Uconnect Settings 389, 409
Uconnect Voice Command 447
Uniform Tire Quality Grades 905

Universal Garage Door Opener (HomeLink)
Programming HomeLink 218, 219, 222, 223
Unleaded Gasoline 687
Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt 60
Utility Rails, Rear Cargo Area 269

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 6
Vehicle Loading 655, 699
Vehicle Modifications/Alterations 7
Vehicle Storage. 445, 867
Viscosity, Engine Oil 814, 815
Voice Recognition System (VR). 447

Warnings And Cautions 6
Warranty Information 903
Washers, Windshield. 185, 828
Washing Vehicle 848
Water
Driving Through 603
Wheel And Wheel Trim 850
Wheel And Wheel Trim Care 850
Wheel Cover 783
Winch 606
Accessories 610
Operation 611
Rigging Techniques 623
Usage 606
Wind Buffeting 51, 229
Window Fogging 445
Windows 48
Power 48
Rear Sliding 249
Reset Auto-Up 50
Wind Buffeting 51
Windshield Defroster. 119
Windshield Washers. 184, 185, 828
Fluid 184, 828
Windshield Wiper Blades. 825

Windshield Wipers 184
Wiper Blade Replacement 825
Wipers, Intermittent 184
Wipers, Rain Sensitive 186

INSTALLATION OF RADIO TRANSMITTING EQUIPMENT

Special design considerations are incorporated into this vehicle's electronic system to provide immunity to radio frequency signals. Mobile two-way radios and telephone equipment must be installed properly by trained personnel. The following must be observed during installation.

The positive power connection should be made directly to the battery and fused as close to the battery as possible. The negative power connection should be made to body sheet metal adjacent to the negative battery connection. This connection should not be fused.

Antennas for two-way radios should be mounted on the roof or the rear area of the vehicle. Care should be used in mounting antennas with magnet bases. Magnets may affect the accuracy or operation of the compass on vehicles so equipped.

The antenna cable should be as short as practical and routed away from the vehicle wiring when possible. Use only fully shielded coaxial cable.

Carefully match the antenna and cable to the radio to ensure a low Standing Wave Ratio (SWR).

Mobile radio equipment with output power greater than normal may require special precautions.

All installations should be checked for possible interference between the communications equipment and the vehicle's electronic systems.

RAM

STICK WITH THE SPECIALISTS®

16D241-126-AF
©2016 FCA US LLC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
RAM IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OF FCA US LLC.

SIXTH EDITION
PRINTED IN U.S.A.